

3 1761 07167547 4



PRINCIPAL
W. R. TAYLOR
COLLECTION

1951



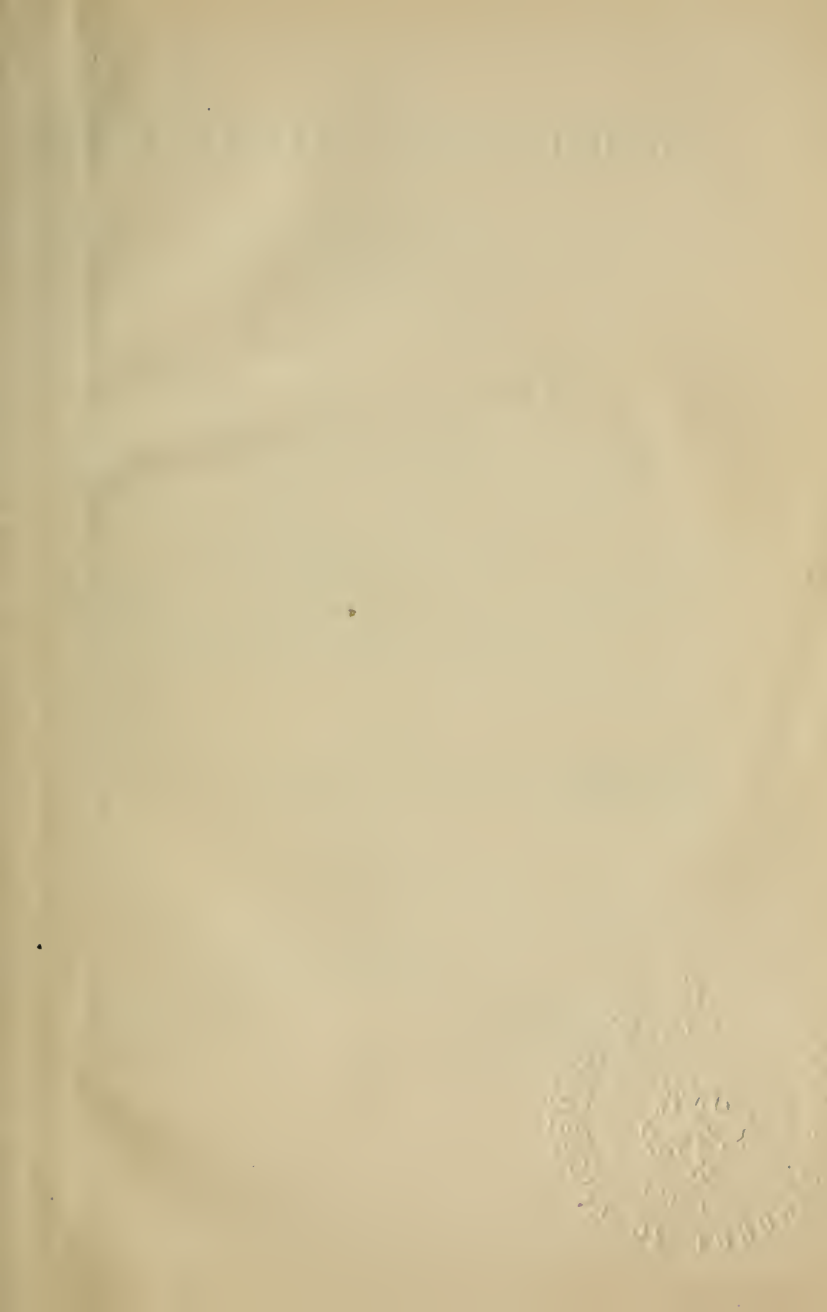
W. R. Taylor

24 original consents in Linnets group

28 consents in Arabic

for Arabic lacks a special letter
for the 3 :





PORTA LINGUARUM ORIENTALIUM

INCHOAVIT

J. H. PETERMANN

CONTINUAVIT

HERM. L. STRACK.

ELEMENTA LINGUARUM

Hebraicae, Phoeniciae, Biblico-Aramaicae,
Samaritanae, Targumicae, Syriacae, Arabicae,
Aethiopicae, Assyriacae, Aegyptiacae, Copticae,
Armeniacaе, Persicae, Turcicae, aliarum

studiis academicis accommodaverunt

*J. H. Petermann, H. L. Strack, E. Nestle, A. Socin, F. Praetorius,
A. Merx, Aug. Mueller, Friedr. Delitzsch, C. Salemann,
Ad. Erman, V. Shukovski, Th. Noeldeke,
G. Steindorff, R. Bruennow, Dav. H. Mueller, G. Jacob*

PARS IV.

521598

ARABIC GRAMMAR

BY

A. SOCIN.

SECOND EDITION.

BERLIN,
REUTHER & REICHARD
LONDON
WILLIAMS & NORGATE
14, HENRIETTA STREET
NEW YORK
B. WESTERMANN & CO.
812, BROADWAY.

1895.

La Arab. Gr
S 6785a
.Ek. 2


A R A B I C G R A M M A R

paradigms, literature, exercises
and
g l o s s a r y

by
Dr. A. S O C I N

Second English edition
Translated from the third German edition
by the
Rev. Arch.R.S. KENNEDY D.D.

B e r l i n
Reuther & Reichard
1895



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
University of Toronto

P R E F A C E

TO THE

SECOND ENGLISH EDITION.

The aim of the following pages is to furnish intending students of classical Arabic with the most important rules both of the Accidence and of the Syntax in the briefest possible form. The present edition, the second in English, is a translation of the third German edition of 1894, to which, save for a few corrections and additions, it in all respects corresponds. Its German counterpart has been considerably altered compared with the second edition because of the publishers' intention to issue a separate chrestomathy of Arabic prose. Professor R. Bruennow, a scholar of approved ability, was entrusted with the preparation of this work which appeared in the year 1894. The connected narratives which formerly composed the chrestomathy of the grammar were, according to arrangement, incorporated in Bruennow's work, and consequently had to be dropped from the new edition

of the grammar. On the other hand the latter was now extended, more particularly in the part dealing with the syntax, with the result that it will now be found, with few exceptions, to be sufficient for the understanding of the new chrestomathy. At the same time, the fact must again be emphasised that the present work does not pretend to take the place of any of the larger treatises; the English student who wishes to advance beyond the elements of Arabic must have recourse to the latest edition (the third) of Wright's excellent grammar. For this reason the author has deemed it his duty to adhere to his former view and to decline, in a book intended for beginners, to enter into the technical terminology of the Arab grammarians—which may safely be left to the larger grammars; still the Arabic specialist will easily discover that their views have been taken into account even in the present elementary work. The best introduction to this department of study will be found to be the reading of the *Ağrumīye*, which Bruennow has printed in his *Chrestomathy*.

In order to lighten the first lessons in grammar, the exercises consisting of short sentences and anecdotes have been increased by the addition of a few short stories, by means of which a sort of stepping stone is provided to the prose chrestomathy.

The passages for translation into Arabic have been retained unchanged along with the appropriate glossary. Experience has shown that this part of the chrestomathy has unquestionably been of service; and although I am strongly of opinion that this class of exercises is of real value in such systematic instruction as is necessary at first, I am in no wise blind to the difficulties which the correction of such exercises entails even on the teacher of Arabic. In order to meet such difficulties, I have selected single sentences and anecdotes from Arabic authors, and have so arranged both notes and glossary that the student, who in any case will have to make diligent use of grammar and dictionary, is so to say compelled to reproduce exactly the Arabic original. From what has just been said, it is clear that this part of the book, at least, presupposes a teacher, for I am convinced that the grammar of Arabic as a whole, and the syntax in particular, can only be mastered with extreme difficulty by self-instruction. I would add, however, that translation from English should be taken at first in the smallest possible doses, and even in this way only after the student has read a part of the Arabic texts.

The synopsis of Arabic literature has also been extended. Strictly speaking, this section is out of place in an elementary work; still it may afford a

stimulus to a beginner here and there, and supply an occasional hint to those pursuing the study of Arabic by themselves, or at a distance from the larger seats of learning.

The present English edition is an entirely new translation. This difficult and tedious work has been undertaken by Professor Archd. R. S. KENNEDY of Edinburgh University. To him and to his late assistant, Mr. W. B. STEVENSON B. D., Vans Dunlop Scholar in Semitic Languages of the same University, who has rendered us great assistance in the reading of the proofs, I cannot omit to express here my warmest thanks for their co-operation.

A. SOCIN.

NOTE BY THE TRANSLATOR.

I have] only to add to the foregoing, that my responsibility as translator does not extend to the English-Arabic exercises and the relative glossary. A few verbal changes excepted—chiefly where the “violence done to the Queen’s English” (p. 57*) was greater than seemed absolutely necessary—these have been reprinted from the first edition. I have also inserted an additional reference here and there, and in the bibliographical section I am responsible for one or two additional entries.

I wish also to express my personal indebtedness to Mr. Stevenson, without whose generous co-operation, owing to my absence in the East, the book would not have been ready in time for this winter’s work.

20th September 1895.

A. R. S. K.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

GRAMMAR.

I. ORTHOGRAPHY AND PHONOLOGY (§§ 1—11).

	Page
§ 1. Consonants	1
§ 2. Long Vowels	6
§ 3. Short Vowels, Nunation, Gezma	8
§ 4. Hamza	9
§ 5. Tešdīd	11
§ 6. Waşla	12
§ 7. Medda	15
§ 8. The Syllable	16
§ 9. The Tone	17
§ 10. Pause	18
§ 11. The Arabic Cyphers and Contractions	18

II. ACCIDENCE (§§ 12—96).

Chap. I. The Pronoun (§§ 12—15).

§ 12. Personal Pronouns	19
§ 13. Demonstrative Pronouns	21
§ 14. Relative Pronouns	23
§ 15. Interrogative Pronouns	24

Chap. II. The Verb (§§ 16—54).

§ 16. Groundform	24
§ 17. Conspectus of the derived Stems	24
§ 18. I. Stem	25
§ 19. II. Stem	26
§ 20. III. Stem	26
§ 21. IV. Stem	27

	Page
§ 22. V. Stem	27
§ 23. VI. Stem	28
§ 24. VII. Stem	28
§ 25. VIII. Stem	28
§ 26. IX. and XI. Stems	29
§ 27. X. Stem	29
§ 28. The Stems of the quadriliteral Verb	30
§ 29. The Passive	30
§ 30. The Tenses	30
§ 31. The Moods	31
§ 32. Imperative	32
§ 33. Inflexion for Person and Number	33
§§ 34—36. Verbs <i>mediae geminatae</i>	34
§§ 37—38. Verba <i>hamzata</i>	36
§ 39. Weak Verbs	38
§ 40. Verba <i>primae</i> و et ی	38
§§ 41—44. Verba <i>mediae</i> و et ی	39
§§ 45—48. Verba <i>ultimae</i> و et ی	41
§ 49. Doubly weak Verbs	44
§ 50. The Verb کِیسَ	45
§ 51. Verbs of Praise and Blame	46
§ 52. Forms of Admiration	46
§ 53. The Verb with Pronominal Suffixes	46
§ 54. Sign of the Accusative	47

Chap. III. The Noun (§§ 55—90).

a. Formation of Nouns.

§ 55. Primitive and derived Nouns	48
§ 56. Summary of the simple Nouns	49
§ 57. Nouns with Preformatives	49
§ 58. Nouns with Afformatives	50
§ 59. Quadriliteral Nouns	50
§ 60. Participles	50
§ 61. Infinitives	51
§ 62. Verbal Adjectives	53

	Page
§ 63. Intensive Forms	54
§ 64. Nomina loci, instrumenti, speciei	55
§ 65. Nomina relativa	56
§ 66. Nomina deminutiva	57
§ 67. Nouns from Stems <i>mediae geminatae</i>	57
§ 68. Nouns from Stems with Hamza	58
§ 69. Nouns from Stems <i>primae</i> و	58
§ 70. Nouns from Stems <i>med.</i> و and ی	59
§ 71. Nouns from Stems <i>ultimae</i> و and ی	60

b. Gender of Nouns.

§ 72. Masculine and Feminine Gender	62
§§ 73—74. Formation of the Feminine	63

c. Inflection of Nouns.

§ 75. Number and Case	65
§ 76. Formation of the Dual and Plural	66
§ 77. Case-endings of Singular. Triptote and Diptote Nouns	67
§ 78. Diptotes	68
§ 79. Inflection of the Determined Noun	68
§ 80. Shortening of Dual and Plural in the Construct State	69
§ 81. Inflection of Nouns in <i>in</i> and <i>an</i> from ult. و and ی	70
§ 82. The Noun with the Pronominal Suffixes	71
§ 83. Vowel Changes in the Pluralis Sanus	72
§ 84. Proper Names compounded with ابن	73
§ 85. Vocative	73
§ 86. Collective Nouns	74
§ 87. Broken Plurals	75
§ 88. List of the principal varieties of the Broken Plural .	76
§ 89. Broken Plurals from Quadriliteral Nouns	78
§ 90. Nouns of irregular Formation	80

Chap. IV. The Numerals (§§ 91—93).

§ 91. The Cardinal Numbers	83
§ 92. The Connection of the numeral with the thing numbered	85
§ 93. Ordinal Numbers and Fractions	86

Chap. V. Particles (§§ 94—96).

§ 94. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions	88
§ 95. Inseparable Particles	88
§ 96. Prepositions and Particles with Suffixes	89

III. SYNTAX (§§ 97—160).

Chap. I. Tenses and Moods (§§ 97—104).

§ 97. Perfect and Imperfect	90
§ 98. Use of the Perfect	91
§ 99. Use of the Imperfect	92
§ 100. Subjunctive	94
§ 101. Modus apocopatus	95
§ 102. Modus energicus	95
§ 103. Passive	96
§ 104. Participles	96

Chap. II. Government of the Verb (§§ 105—117).

§ 105. The Verb and its Compliment	97
§ 106. Accusative	97
§ 107. Accusative after verbs of coming &c.	97
§ 108. Verbs with two Accusatives	97
§ 109. The Absolute Object	98
§ 110. The Accusative as Predicate	99
§ 111. Accusative with √	100
§ 112. Accusative with ∫ of Concomitance	101
§ 113. Accusative of nearer Definition	101
§ 114* Accusative in Exclamations	102
§§ 114—116. The Verb with Prepositions	103
§ 117. ∫ in Dates	104

Chap. III. Government of the Noun (§§ 118—134).

§ 118. The Noun with the Article (Determination)	105
§ 119. Apposition	106
§§ 120—122. Qualifying Adjuncts	107
§§ 123—130. The Genitive Relation	109

	Page
§ 131. The Construction of the Infinitive	112
§ 132. The Participle and its Object	113
§ 133. The Nomen Regens undetermined	114
§ 134. Improper Annexation	114

Chap. IV. The Simple Sentence (§§ 135—151).

§ 135. Distinction bet. Nominal and Verbal Sentences	115
§ 136. The Verb in the Verbal Sentence	115
§§ 137—138. Indefinite Subject	117
§ 139. The Predicate in the Nominal Sentence	118
§§ 140—146. Connection bet. Subject and Predicate	119
§ 147. The Particles 'inna and 'anna	122
§ 148. Subordinate Sentences	123
§ 149. More than one Predicate	125
§ 150. Negative Sentences	125
§ 151. The Particle of Exception	126

Chap. V. Compound Sentences (§§ 152—161).

§ 152. Co-ordinate Sentences	127
§§ 153—156. The Relative Clause	128
§ 157. The Circumstantial Clause	131
§ 158. The Temporal Clause	132
§ 159. The Conditional Clause with the Perfect	133
§ 160. The Conditional Clause with the Apoc. Impf.	134
§ 161. The Particle ف in the Apodosis	134

APPENDIX.

Computation of Time (Names of the Days of the Week, the Months &c.)	136
---	-----

LITERATURE.

A. Bibliography	139
B. Introduction and general	144
C. Chrestomathies	144
D. Grammars	145

CONTENTS.

XV

Page

E. Lexicography	147
F. Koran, Islam, Life of Muhammed, Bible &c.	150
G. Jurisprudence	153
H. Philosophy	154
I. Natural Sciences and Medicine	156
K. History, Biographies	157
L. Cosmography, Geography, Ethnography, Travels	163
M. Poetry	166
N. Belles Lettres, Ethics, Romances	169

PARADIGMS.

I. Suffixes and Prefixes for the Conjugation of the Verb	3*
II. Strong triliteral Verb Act. I.	4*
III. Strong triliteral Verb Pass. I.	6*
IV. Quadriliteral Verb, derived Stems	7*
V. Strong triliteral Verb, derived Stems	8*
VI. Verbum mediae geminatae Act. I.	10*
VII. Verbum mediae geminatae Pass. I.	11*
VIII. Verbum mediae geminatae, derived Stems	12*
IX. Verba hamzata	13*
X. Verbum primae radicalis و et ي	14*
XI. Verbum mediae radicalis و Act. I.	15*
XII. Verbum mediae radicalis ي Act. I.	16*
XIII. Verbum mediae radicalis و vel ي Pass.	17*
XIV. Verbum med. radicalis و et ي, derived Stems	18*
XV. Verbum tertiae radicalis و (فَعَلَ) Act. I.	19*
XVI. Verbum tertiae radicalis ي (فَعَلَ) Act. I.	20*
XVII. Verbum tertiae radicalis و vel ي (فَعَلَ) Act. I.	21*
XVIII. Verbum tertiae radicalis و vel ي Pass. I.	24*
XIX. Verbum tertiae radicalis و vel ي, derived Stems	22*
XX. Nomen generis masculini	25*
XXI. Nomen generis feminini	26*
XXII. Nouns in "in" and "an"	27*
XXIII. The Noun with Pronominal Suffixes	28*

EXERCISES AND TEXTS.

I. Exercises on the Grammar	
A. For practice in Reading	30*
B. Exercises on the Accidence	32*
C. Exercises on the Syntax	35*
II. Connected Extracts	48*
III. For Translation into Arabic	57*

GLOSSARIES.

A. English-Arabic	79*
B. Arabic-English	104*

PART I.

G R A M M A R

AND

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

GRAMMAR.

I. THE ARABIC CHARACTERS. PHONOLOGY (§§ 1—11).

The Consonants. The Arabs at first used the Syriac characters and the Syriac alphabet, in which the order of the characters is the same as in Hebrew. A relic of this earlier order is still preserved, in the employment—afterwards seldom resorted to—of the letters of the alphabet as cyphers (cf. pages 4—5). At an early period, however, the Arabs distinguished by means of diacritical points a number of sounds which were not so distinguished in the older alphabet. By a process of curtailment, moreover, a number of characters became so like each other that they had to be distinguished by similar diacritical signs. The next step was to group together in the alphabet the characters which in this way had come to resemble each other. Hence the Arabic alphabet now consists of twenty-eight consonantal signs, the usual order and

	Names	Form				Value			
		Not joined.	Joined only to preceding cons.	Jointo precedg. and follg. cons.	Joined only to following cons.	Pronunciation	Transcription.	Numerical Value.	Hebrew.
- 1	اَلِف Alif*	ا	ا	—	—	cf. §§ 2 and 4		1	א
- 2	بَاء Bā	ب	ب	ب	ب	b	b	2	ב
- 3	تَاء Tā	ت	ت	ت	ت	t	t	400	ת
4	ثَاء Thā	ث	ث	ث	ث	English hard th as in <i>thing</i>	t	500	
- 5	جِيم Jīm	ج	ج	ج	ج	orig. g hard; later g in Italian <i>giorno</i> ; English j	ġ	3	ג
- 6	حَاء Hhā	ح	ح	ح	ح	strong h with friction of larynx as if wheezing	h h	8 600	ח
7	خَاء Khā	خ	خ	خ	خ	ch in Scotch <i>loch</i>	d	4	
- 8	دَال Dāl	د	د	—	—	d	d	700	ד
9	ذَال Dhāl	ذ	ذ	—	—	soft th, as in <i>this</i>	r	200	ז
- 10	رَاء Rā	ر	ر	—	—	r			
- 11	زَاي Zāi	ز	ز	—	—	z as in <i>zeal</i> ; soft s as in <i>rose</i>	z	7	ז
- 12	سَيْن Sīn	س	س	س	س	hard s	s	60	ס
- 13	شَيْن Šīn	ش	ش	ش	ش	sh	š	300	ש

* The termination s i. e. *un* (see § 3 b) is neglected in the transliteration, as in the modern Arabic pronunciation.

	Names	Form				Value			
		Not joined.	Joined only to preceding cons.	Join to precedg. and follg. cons.	Joined only to following cons.	Pronunciation	Transcription.	Numerical Value.	Hebrew.
14	صَادُ Ṣād	ص	ص	ص	ص	emphatic s	s	90	ז
15	ضَادُ Ḍād	ض	ض	ض	ض	emphatic d(tongue pressed against the gum)	ḍ	800	
16	طَاءُ Ṭā	ط	ط	ط	ط	emphatic t	ṭ	9	
17	ظَاءُ Ḍā	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	emphatic z	ẓ	900	
18	عَيْنُ ʿAin	ع	ع	ع	ع	produced by a tightening of the violently compressed glottis	ʿ	70	ע
19	غَيْنُ Ghain	غ	غ	غ	غ	guttural r	ġ	1000	
20	فَاءُ Fā	ف	ف	ف	ف	f	f	80	פ
21	كَافُ Kāf	ق	ق	ق	ق	deep emphatic k	ḳ	100	ק
22	كَافُ Kāf	ك	ك	ك	ك	k	k	20	כ
23	لَامُ Lām	ل	ل	ل	ل	l	l	30	ל
24	مِيمُ Mīm	م	م	م	م	m	m	40	מ
25	نُونُ Nūn	ن	ن	ن	ن	n	n	50	נ
26	هَاءُ Hā	ه	ه	ه	ه	h	h	5	ה
27	وَاوُ Wāw	و	و	—	—	w	w	6	ו
28	يَاءُ Yā	ي	ي	ي	ي	y	y	10	י

forms of which are exhibited on pp. 4—5. These signs are written and read from right to left. Some are joined, to the letters preceding or following, others are not, as indicated in the table referred to.

b. When \mathfrak{s} (No. 26), at the end of a word, indicates the feminine termination (§ 73), two dots are placed over it to show that it must be pronounced as t (Nr. 3); thus: \mathfrak{s} .

c. Very frequently, especially at the beginning of words, certain letters, instead of being written alongside of each other, are placed one above the other this is particularly the case with the letters $\mathfrak{ج} \mathfrak{ح} \mathfrak{خ}$ (Nos. 5—7), e. g. $\mathfrak{س}$ for $\mathfrak{سا}$ (Nos. 2 and 6), $\mathfrak{ظ}$ (Nos. 5 and 6) for $\mathfrak{جا}$, $\mathfrak{ف}$ (Nos. 18 and 5) for $\mathfrak{فا}$ &c. Instead of $\mathfrak{ل}$ (Nos. 23 and 1) the Arabs write $\mathfrak{ل}$ or $\mathfrak{ل}$ (the Lām in the latter form beginning at the left of Alif).

2. *The vowels, how indicated.* In the earliest times
 a. the Arabs indicated only the long vowels \bar{a} , \bar{i} , \bar{u} , and the diphthongs au , ai (whose second element they regarded as a consonant); this was done by employing the sign $\mathfrak{ا}$ (No. 1) for \bar{a} , $\mathfrak{و}$ (No. 27) for \bar{u} and (with a) au , $\mathfrak{ي}$ (No. 28) for \bar{i} and (with a) ai . In cases where $\mathfrak{و}$ and $\mathfrak{ي}$ indicate the sounds au and ai , which we pronounce as diphthongs, Sukūn (see § 3 c) is ordinarily placed

over these letters, to denote that they have no vowel of their own. Examples: قال *kāla*, سير *sīra*, سوق *sūkun*, بيع *baʿun*, نوم *naumun*.

In the oldest writing, the long *ā* was not uniformly represented by ا, but was occasionally left unrepresented. This omission has continued to be observed in a series of very common words; in such cases, however, an upright stroke is usually placed over the consonant that is to be pronounced with the long *ā*, e. g. هذا (for هاذا) *hādā*, الله *'ilāhun* (God), رحمن *rahmānu*. Frequently, however, in our printed editions, we find this long *ā* represented by a simple —, thus: هَذَا *hādā*.

In a few words a و after an ا does not indicate the pronunciation *au* but a long *ā*, originally no doubt an obscure *ā̄*; in this case, too, the upright stroke is the usual sign, e. g. حيوة (alongside of حياة) *hayātun* life (but ا with Suffixes: حياته *hayātuhu* his life).

At the end of many words ي is likewise employed to represent a long *ā*; in such cases (like the و in *c*) it does not receive the Sukūn (§ 3 *c*), e. g. رمى (or رمى) *ramā* (he has thrown); in the middle of a word, on the other hand, ا takes the place of this ي; thus with a suffix رماه *ramāhu* he has thrown it.

NOTE a. In a few rare cases, in the middle of a word, we find \bar{a} denoted by اَ , as in the foreign word تَوْرَاتِيَّة *taurātun* Torah.

NOTE b. Should يَ be preceded by a اَ , اَ is written for the former in order to prevent two يَ coming together; e. g. دُنْيَا *dunyā* world für دُنْيَا (§ 74 a).

e. Occasionally an اَ is added to a final \bar{u} or *au*, but it is entirely left out of account in the pronunciation; e. g. كَتَبُوا *katabū*, رَمَوْا *ramau* (§§ 33 and 53).

3. The short vowels were originally, as a rule, left
a. unrepresented¹; afterwards the following signs were employed to represent the short vowels, and (in conjunction with the signs discussed in § 2) the long vowels as well:

1) فَتْحَة *Fatḥa*² (also فَتْح *Fath*) ـَ for *a* (in certain cases to be pronounced like *e* in men, also like German *ä* in Männer), e. g. كَتَل *katala*, قَالَ *kāla*.

2) كَسْرَة *Kesra* (also كَسْر *Kesr*) ـِ for *i*, e. g. عَصَب *ḡaḍiba*, يَبِيعُ *yabīʿu*.

3) ضَمَة *Damma* (also ضَم *Damm*) ـُ for *u*, e. g. يَكْتُبُ *yaktubu*; يَفُوتُ *yafūtu*.

b. When these signs for the short vowels are written

¹ Many books, particularly those printed in the East, are printed without these vowel signs.

² The terminations ة , ة are here represented in the transliteration by *a*, as in modern Arabic.

twice at the end of a word, they are to be pronounced with a final *n* (called by the Arabs تَنْوِينٌ Tanwīn, by us frequently Nunation, from the letter nūn), e. g. شَمْسٌ šamsin, رَجُلٌ raǧūlun. The Nunation receives as an additional indication the letter |, but the pronunciation remains unaffected, e. g. مَالًا mālan. This | is omitted only when the Nunation accompanies the feminine termination َّة (see above § 1 b), e. g. مَرْكُوبَةٌ markūbatan, or in cases where the word already has a final |, or in its place a ي quiescing in *a*, e. g. رِبًّا riban, هُدًى hudan (§ 2 d). The same holds good in most cases after Hamza (§ 4). The vowel of the Nunation is always short.

Nunation
when 'nūn' is indefinite.

omitted

(1)

(2)

(3)

When a consonant has no vowel of its own, this is indicated by the sign ْ جَزْمَةٌ Ġezma (also called سُكُونٌ Sukūn [Rest]) e. g. سَافَرْتُ sāfartu, مَشَيْتَ ma-šaita (cf. § 2). On the omission of this sign see § 5. A consonant which is thus pronounced without a vowel following is said to be “resting”.

c. ✓

Ġezma

or

Sukūn

Hamza. In order to distinguish the cases in which | was employed to denote *ā* (§ 2), from those in which it had (as originally in Hebrew) its proper force as a consonant, the Arabs gave it the additional sign

4.

a.

Hamza

هَمْزَة Hamza ء (in form a modified ع 'Ain). ا̣ accordingly denotes the closure of the larynx by which the breath, engaged in voice production, is turned on or off, according as the Hamza precedes or follows a vowel. It is best heard in English before the second of such pairs of words as "sea eagle", "mine⁺ eyes". Its effect may also be noted by comparing the two following pronunciations of Ḳurān, viz: Ḳu-rān and Ḳur-'ān (the latter with Hamza). In the transliteration we indicate ا̣ by ' except at the beginning of a word where no indication is required. The sign ء is placed under the ا̣, when followed by an *i*-sound. Examples اَمْرٌ 'amrun, اَيْلٌ 'ibilun, اُمٌّ 'umamun; سَأَلَ sa'ala, رَأْسٌ ra'-sun; اِكْرَأْ ik-ra'. In the last two examples Hamza closes the syllable.

b. Before or after an *i*- or *u*-sound, the signs و and ی are generally employed instead of ا̣ as the bearers of the Hamza, in which case ی is written without the two dots: e. g. بَوْسٌ ba'usa, يُوْتَرُ yu'taru, يُوَاتَرُ yu'ātaru; جِئْتَ ġi'ta, صَائِبٌ ṣa'iba, يُبَارِي yubārīu.

c. After a long vowel, and in most cases after Sukūn, Hamza as a rule has no bearer, but is written on or above the line, thus: اِرْدَا'ُun, بَرَّ (or بَرَأ) bar'un. After a vowelless consonant in the middle of

a word, Hamza with its vowel is placed over the connecting stroke (except, of course, when no such connection is possible, as after و in مَمْلُوءٌ *mamlū'atun*), thus: حَاطِيَّةٌ *ḥaṭī'atun*; in the same way شَايَا *šai'an*; On the other hand, in cases like اِمْدَا *'imḍā'an* no Alif is written at the end, cf. § 3 b.

Tešdīd. That a consonant is to be sounded twice 5. is indicated by the sign of doubling ٔ, named تَشْدِيدٌ *a.* *Tešdīd* or شَدُّ *Šedd* (from the initial ش of this word the sign ٔ has been derived), e. g. سَبَّ *sabba*, تَرَحَّلْ *tarahḥulun*. This doubling of a consonant is either due—as in the examples just given—to the essential nature of the form, nominal or verbal (as for example the verbal forms corresponding to the Hebrew *Pi'el* § 19), or is the result of assimilation.

When one consonant is assimilated to another, the assimilation is further graphically represented by the removal of the Sukūn from the assimilated consonant.

This applies to the *l* of the article اَلْ, when the latter precedes one of the following consonants: د, ث, ت, ذ, ز, ر, ن (that is, dentals, sibilants and *r, l, n*). Examples: اَلتَّاجِرُ *attāḡiru*, اَلثَّلَجُ *attalḡu*, اَلشَّمْسُ *aššamsu*, (the sun), but اَلْقَمَرُ *alḡamaru* (the moon). From the fact that the two last examples

3. or was, a
express
(1) essential
nature of
a. result of
assimila

dentals
Sibilants
r. l. n.

Solans
lunar

are stereotyped those consonants that may be assimilated are technically called *solar* letters, those that do not admit of assimilation, *lunar* letters. ††

NOTE a. The word ⁶¹ٱللَّهُ 'ilāhun, God, when joined to the article drops the first syllable and becomes ٱللَّهُ (§ 2b) *allāhu*.

NOTE b. The words مِنْ *min*, عَنْ *an*, اَنْ *'an* (and اِنْ *'in*), when followed by a few words beginning with م *m* or ل *l* are usually combined with them into one word, the final ن *n* being at the same time assimilated to the following consonant, e. g. مِمَّا *mimmā* from مِنْ مَّ *min mā*, اَلَّا *'allā* from اَنْ لَّا *'an lā*.

6. Waṣla ~. A word beginning with two consonants
- a. receives in Arabic either a full helping-vowel preceded by Hamza in accordance with § 4 a (e. g. اَفْلَاطُونُ *afḷāṭūn* Plato), or merely a vowel which is heard only when the word is standing *alone*, but which must be given up when the word in question comes to stand after another word in the sentence. Thus in the latter case we find اُقْتُلْ *uḳṭul* instead of قَتْلْ *ḳṭul*. The ا which is prefixed in this and similar cases is, however, still written although the helping vowel accompanying it is given up, and it then receives over it the sign وَصَلَة *waṣla* e. g. بِنْتُ الْوَزِيرِ *bintulwazīri*. The two words thus united together are also to be pronounced as if they formed a single word. Such an *Alif Waṣlatum* or Waṣla-bearing Alif is called a *connective* Alif in

contradistinction to a *disjunctive* Alif, that is, an *Alif hamzatum* or Hamza-bearing Alif (cf. § 4).

NOTE. The sign ^{◌◌} is a modification of ^{◌◌}; waṣla or ṣila denotes "close connection".

When a connective Alif has to be employed at the beginning of a sentence, a full vowel must be pronounced, but, as written, only the proper vowel sign may accompany the Alif, never a Hamza. Thus we have ^{الرَّسُولُ} *arrasūlu*, ^{أَخْرَجَ} *uḥruġ* but ^{قَالَ} *qāla* ^{أَخْرَجَ} *uḥruġ*.

In the last example the division of the syllables is now *kā-laḥ-ruġ*. If the vowel preceding a connective Alif is long, it must now be pronounced as a short vowel, since it stands in a shut syllable (see § 8). Thus ^{فِي الْفُلِّ} *fī-lfulki*, has now the following syllables *fīl-ful-ki*; so too ^{رَضِيَ اللَّهُ} *riḍa-llāhi* (§ 2d) = *ri-ḍal-lā-hi*, ^{ذَبَحُوا الْأَوَّزَ} (§ 2e) *ḍa-ba-ḥul-'iwazza*.

If the word before a connective Alif ends in a consonant which has no vowel of its own, the consonant receives a helping-vowel. The most natural vowel in such a case is *i*, e. g. ^{ضَرَبَتِ الْعَبْدَ} *ḍarabati-l'abda* (for ^{ضَرَبَتْ}); so ^{اسْتَقْبَالَ} *istikbālu* with the article ^{الْ} *alistikbālu*, in syllables thus: *a-lis-tik-bā-lu*. In certain cases original final vowels that

have been dropped reappear before the connective Alif, e. g. هُمُ الْكَافِرُونَ *hu-mul-kā-fi-rū-na*. The first word is otherwise uniformly هُمْ *hum* (§ 12 a). — The Nunation (§ 3 b) is also treated as if it ended in a consonant; the favourite vowel in this case is *i*, e. g. رَجُلٌ أَسْمُهُ *rağū-lunismuhu*, in syllables: *ra-ğū-lu-nis-mu-hu*.

NOTE. Before a connective alif the preposition عَنْ "away from" becomes عَنِ, the preposition مِنْ "from" becomes مِّنْ, but before the article مِّنْ.

- e. The same rule applies to a word ending in a so-called diphthong (cf. § 2); the consonant (و or ي) forming the second part of the diphthong must receive a helping vowel before a connective Alif, which vowel is *u* or *i* according as the consonant in question is و or ي. Thus we have مُصْطَفَوُ اللَّهِ *muṣ-ṭa-fa-wul-lā-hi* in place of مُصْطَفَى اللَّهِ, رِجْلِي الْبَقَرَةِ *riğ-la-yil-ba-ka-ra-ti* for رِجْلِي الْبَقَرَةِ. (So, too, with the termination وَ — § 2 e).

NOTE. The particles أَوْ "or" and لَوْ "would that!" take *i* as helping vowel.

- f. The connective Alif is altogether omitted in the following cases:

1) In the article *āl*, when it receives as prefixes the particles *l* *li* or *lā* *la*; e. g. *لِلْحَقِّ*, *li-l-ḥaḳ-ki* for *لَاَلْحَقِّ*, *lāl-mağ-du* for *لَاَلْمَجْدُ*.

2) In *ابْن* *son*, in apposition to the proper name of the son and followed in the genitive by the name of the father; e. g. *مُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ* *mus-li-mub-nul-wa-lī-di* Muslim, the son of al-Walīd. At the beginning of a line, however, even in this case we must write *آبْن*.

3) In the word *إِسْم* *ismun*, name, after the preposition *ب* *bi* in the oft recurring formula *بِسْمِ اللَّهِ* *bis-mil-lā-hi*, in the name of God.

Medda. Inasmuch as the Arabic orthography 7. cannot tolerate two Alifs side by side, in such a case ^{a.} only a single Alif is written, over which is placed a *Medda* or *Medd* ~ (a sign derived from *مد*). At the beginning of a word or syllable the Medda carries with it the force of a Hamza; the vowel sign Fath is then also dropped, e. g. *أَكَلْ* *ā-ki-lun* for *أَكَلَ*, *قُرْآنْ* *kur-ā-nun* for *قُرْآنٌ*; so *آمَنْ* *ā-ma-na* for *آمَنَ*, since the Hamza of the second Alif disappears as explained § 38 a.

NOTE. رَاى ^{رَاى} *ra'ā* may be taken as an example of the rule just given. With suffixes it ought to appear, according to § 2*d*, as رَاىْ, which, however, is written رَاىْ in syllables *ra-ā-hū*.

- b. Since a ء after a long ā (—) is written on the line (§ 4*c*) without receiving an Alif as bearer, the ء preceding the Hamza in such cases likewise receives Medda, as a rule, although the latter has no effect on the pronunciation of the word, e. g. جَاءَ *ǧā-'a* (for جَاءَ), تَفَاءَلُوا *ta-fā-'a-lū*; and the same where ي, or ى appears as the bearer of Hamza اَحْبَبَا *a-ḥib-bā-'u-hu*, قَاتِلْ *ḳā-'i-lun*.

NOTE. Arabic orthography has also an objection to two Waws appearing side by side, if the first has a Damma (even though the first may be only the bearer of a Hamza, as explained in § 4*b*).

Thus رُوْسٌ ^{رُوْسٌ} *ru'ūsun* is often written رُوْسٌ.

8. *The Syllable.* An open syllable ends in a vowel short or long; a shut syllable ends in a consonant. Every syllable begins with a single consonant, not with two or more (cf. § 6). A short syllable consists of a consonant with a short vowel, as in the second syllable of مَاتَ *mā-tā* (with two open syllables); a long syllable consists either ① of a consonant with a long vowel, like the open syllable *mā* in the above example, or ② of a consonant, a short vowel and a consonant (shut syllable) e. g. both the syllables of

قَتَلَ *kat-lun* (so too مَوْتُ *mau-tun* § 2 a) شَرًّا *šar-ran*, or ③ of a shut syllable with a long vowel. This last variety, however, is only found (exclusive of pausal effects § 10) when the following consonant has been doubled (§ 5) and is preceded by a long *ā*, as in دَابَّةٌ *dāb-ba-tun* (rarely after *ai* as in دُوَيْبَةٌ *du-waib-ba-tun* which is derived according to § 66 from *dābbatun*). Such a syllable may be described as doubly long. Other syllables of this sort are shortened as يَقُلُّ *yaḡul* from يَقُولُ *yaḡūl*; رَمَتْ *ramat* from رَمَاتُ *ramāt*.

NOTE. A word consisting of but one short syllable, if it stands alone, either receives an addition at the end (see § 49 *ab*), or is joined to the following word. The latter method is adopted in a series of particles (see § 94), which notwithstanding the connection are still regarded as more or less independent words. The principal stress, however, rests on the words with which the particles are connected.

The Accent or Tone. The accent in Arabic is thrown 9. backwards towards the beginning of the word till it meets a *long* syllable, or if there is no such syllable, till it reaches the first syllable of the word. A simple long syllable at the end of a word, however, does not receive the accent. Examples of words with a final short syllable: ضَارَبَ *dāraba*, اسْتَنَكَرَ *istānkara*; with a final long syllable: تَمَّتُمْ *tamāmtumā*, فَرْدٌ *fārdun*, مَمْلَكَةٌ *māmlakatun*, ضَرَبُوا *dārabū*, لِدَةٌ *lidatun*.

Exceptions: A syllable with a connective Alif (§ 6), as in أَقْتُلْ (see § 6 *a*), cannot receive the accent; the pronunciation is therefore uqtúl. In the same way monosyllabic inseparable particles, like وَ and فَ (cf. § 94), prefixed to words, do not affect the accentuation of the latter; e. g. فَمَشَى *famáša*.

10. In *pause* final short vowels are dropped. Also *in dropped* the Nunation *un* and *in*; the Nunation *an* is changed
 = ā (2) to ā, the feminine termination ä to ä (with the *h*
 = ä (3) sounded): thus نَازِلُونَ *nāzilūn* for نَازِلُونَا *nāzilūna*;
رَاجُلٌ *rağul* for رَاجُلُونَ *rağulun*; مَرْحَبَا *marḥabā* for مَرْحَبَانَا *marḥaban*;
فَاطِمَةٌ *Fāṭimah* for فَاطِمَتُنَا.

11. *Numerical Signs and Abbreviations.* The usual Arabic cyphers are the following:

٠, ١, ٢, ٣, ٤, ٥, ٦, ٧, ٨, ٩
 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.

The tens, hundreds &c., are written to the left of the units &c. as ١٩ 19, ١٨٩٥ 1895.

The following are a few of the most frequently occurring abbreviations:

| عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ = عَم *‘alaihi-ssalāmu* Peace be upon him!
صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ = صَلَم *ṣalla-llāhu ‘alaihi*
wasallama God bless him and give him peace (said of Mohammed).

II. ETYMOLOGY (§§ 12—96).

Chapter I. The Pronoun. (§§ 12—15.)

The personal pronouns are either independent or ^a12 suffixed. The *independent* or *separate* personal pronouns have the following forms:

	Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	أَنَا	نَحْنُ	
II. Pers.	{ masc. أَنْتَ fem. أَنْتِ	{ أَنْتُمْ (أَنْتُمْ) أَنْتُنَّ	أَنْتُمَا
III. Pers.	{ masc. هُوَ fem. هِيَ	{ هُمْ (هُمْ) هُنَّ	هُمَا

NOTE 1. The second syllable of the pronoun of the first pers. singular, although written with l, is short. — The forms in parentheses (2nd and 3rd pers. plural) are used particularly before Waṣla (§ 6 d); these final vowels are originally long.

NOTE 2. When joined to و and فَ (see § 95) the pronouns of the 3rd pers. sing. may lose their first vowel e. g. وَهُوَ, فَهُيَ.

The *suffixed personal pronouns*, which joined to a ^bnoun indicate the genitive, joined to a verb, the accusative, are the following:

		Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	{ with nouns with verbs	—ى —نى	—نا	
II. Pers.	{ masc. fem.	—كَ —كِ	{ —كُمْ —كُنَّ }	—كُما
III. Pers.	{ masc. fem.	—هُ —هَا	{ —هُمْ —هُنَّ }	—هُما

c. ① Before a connective Alif (§ 6 *d*) the suffix pron. of the 1. pers. singular may receive as helping-vowel the a which belonged to it originally; thus we may write أَعْطَانِي or أَعْطَانِي الْكِتَابَ. After ā, i and

② ai the nominal suffix of the 1. pers. sing. has the form يَ ya. Occasionally (in the *Kur'ān* particularly) the suffix of the 1. pers. sing. is indicated by a simple *i*, of which the sign is Kesr —, as رَبِّ my lord! In the same way the corresponding verbal suffix may be only ن *ni*.

d. After an immediately preceding *i* or *ai* the suffixes هُ, هُمَا, هُمْ substitute the vowel *i* for *u*, thus assuming the forms هِ, هِمَا, هِنَّ; e. g. مَالِ instead of مَالِ. Before the connective Alif هُم generally becomes هِم. — The suffixes كُمْ and هُمْ resume

their original forms **كُم** and **عُم** before a connective Alif.

For further information regarding the affixing of these pronominal forms see § 82 and the table of paradigms No. XXIII.

The reflexive pronoun, when carrying a certain *e.* amount of emphasis with it, is generally expressed by the word **نَفْسٌ** *nafsun* soul, to which the proper suffixes are appended. In many cases, however, the personal pronoun suffices to express the reflexive.

The *demonstrative pronouns* are the following (with 13. their inflexion compare § 76 a).

The simple pronoun (rare)

a.

	Masc.	Fem.
Sing.	ذَا ذِي; ذِي; ذَا	
Dual	Nom. ذَانِ	تَانِ
	Gen. Acc. ذَيْنِ	تَيْنِ
Plur.	أُولَئِكَ (ūlā) or أُولَٰئِ (ūlā'i)	

This simple pronoun combines:

b.

(1) with the demonstrative particle **هَـ**, generally written defectively (**هَـ** or less correctly **هَـ** § 2 b). The result is the usual demonstrative pronoun to indicate that which is near at hand (*this, these*):

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		هَذَا	هَذِهِ (هَذِي)
Dual	Nom.	هَذَانِ	هَتَانِ
	Gen. Acc.	هَذَيْنِ	هَتَيْنِ
Plur.		هَؤُلَاءِ	

- c. The simple demonstrative combines (2) with a suffix of the second person. Only in the older Arabic, particularly that of the *Kur'ān*, however, does the suffix vary according to the number of persons addressed (e. g. plur. ذَلِكُمْ, dual ذَلِكُمَا), elsewhere it appears uniformly as *كَ*. There is also a form with *ل* before *كَ*. The result is two forms of the demonstrative pronoun to indicate that which is more remote (*that, those*):

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		ذَلِكَ (ذَالِكَ), ذَاكَ	تِلْكَ (تَيْكَ), تَاكَ
Dual	Nom.	ذَٰلِكَ, ذَاكَ	تَٰلِكَ, تَٰكَ
	Gen. Acc.	ذَٰلِكَ, ذَٰكَ	تَٰلِكَ, تَٰكَ
Plur.		أُولَٰئِكَ (أُولَٰكْ), rarely أُولَٰئِكَ	

- d. Among the demonstratives we must also place the article *أَلْ* (see § 5*b*). When the noun, in the circumstances

detailed in § 6 f 1, begins with a ل, this letter has a Tešdīd placed over it and the ل of the article is dropped. Thus we get لِّلَّيْلَةِ for لَيْلَةٍ; so too لِلِّهِ for لِّهِ (§ 5 note).

The *relative pronouns* are the following: 14.

الَّذِي who, which, that,—originally a compound *a*. demonstrative with the article as one of its elements (hence the connective Alif)—declined as follows:

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		الَّذِي	الَّتِي
Dual	Nom.	الَّذَانِ	الَّتَانِ
	Gen. Acc.	الَّذَيْنِ	الَّتَيْنِ
Plur.		الَّذِينَ	اللَّاتِي, اللَّوَاتِي

مَنْ (indeclinable) one who, such (a one) as, he *b*. who, those who.

مَا (indeclinable) that which, something which.

Among the relative pronouns may also be included *c*.

أَيُّ, fem. أَيَّةُ he who, she who. This word is declinable in the sing., but the masc. often takes the place of the fem. It also combines with the prons. in *b* above to form أَيُّمَنْ every one who, whosoever; and أَيُّمَا whatsoever.

15. The *interrogative pronouns* are:

مَنْ who?

مَا what? Frequently strengthened by the addition of the demonstrative مَاذَا what then?

أَيُّ, fem. أَيَّةٌ what sort of? which?

NOTE. مَا after prepositions is shortened to مَا e. g. لِمَ why? With this interrogative مَا is also connected the interrogative particle كَمْ how much? (كم) (فقط)

Chapter II. The Verb. (§§ 16—54.)

16. The great majority of Arabic verbs have three radical letters; only a small minority have four radicals. The ground-form of verbs, according to which they are arranged in grammar and dictionary, is the third person singular of the perfect. The verb فَعَلَ (to do) is used as a model paradigm.

NOTE. Since all Arabic dictionaries give the verbal and nominal derivatives under their respective root-forms, it is necessary, in order to find the three radicals with ease, to note carefully what consonants are employed in the formation of verbs and nouns as prefixes and affixes to, and as infixes in, the stem.

17. From this ground-form or root, which is named by grammarians the first stem, other stems are derived by a series of uniform changes, represented by

modifications of the verb **فَعَلَ**, but usually referred to by their respective numbers in the series. Thus we speak of “the eighth stem”, (indicated in the dictionary simply by VIII) not as in Hebrew and Syriac of the Piel, the Afel &c. The following stems, the order of which must be carefully noted, are those most frequently met with:

I فَعَلَ	IV اَفْعَلَّ	VII اِنْفَعَلَ	X اِسْتَفْعَلَ omit
II فَعَّلَ	V تَفَعَّلَ	VIII اِفْتَعَلَ	XI اِفْعَالَ omit
III فَاعَلَ	VI تَفَاعَلَ	IX اِنْفَعَلَّ omit	

NOTE a. Of these No. IX and especially No. XI are of less frequent occurrence; still more rare are XII **اِفْعَوَّلَ**, XIII **اِفْعَوَّلَ**, XIV **اِفْعَنَّ**, XV **اِفْعَنَّ**. Which of these derived stems are formed from any given verb, and to what extent the meaning of the ground-form is modified by them, will be found in the dictionary under each verb.

NOTE b. In many cases the verb is used to express the idea that some one wishes to do something or has something done; thus **قَتَلَهُ** “he killed him” may also signify “he wished to kill him”, and **ضَرَبَ عُنُقَهُ** “he cut off his head (prop. neck)” may mean “he had (*curavit*) his head cut off.”

The ground-form I, in the majority of verbs, takes 18. the form **فَعَلَ**, e. g. **قَتَلَ** to kill; there is also—mostly with intransitive verbs—a form **فَعِلَ** (cf. **جَدَرَ**), e. g. **حَزِنَ** to be sad, **عَمِلَ** to do (transitive), and also a

form **فَعَلَ** (cf. **فَعَّلَ**), confined to intransitive verbs, as **حَسُنَ** to be beautiful. Sometimes both the transitive and intransitive forms, **فَعَّلَ** and **فَعِلَ** or **فَعُلَ**, are found side by side in the same verb. One and the same verb, again, may have both the forms **فَعِلَ** and **فَعُلَ**.

19. The II. stem **فَعَّلَ** (corresponding to the Hebrew Pi'el) usually denotes a greater intensity of the action expressed by the simple verb. This intensification may affect the subject, object or qualifying adjunct, as **قَتَلَ** to kill many people, to massacre (intensification of the object). In the majority of verbs, however, the II. stem is causative as **عَلَّمَ** to know, **عَلَّمَ** cause to know, to teach. It is also declarative—as in **كَذَّبَ** to lie, **كَذَّبَ** to take one for, declare one to be, a liar—and denominative, as in **جَيَّشَ** to collect an army (**جَيْشٌ**).

20. The III. stem **فَاعَلَ** expresses an attempt or effort to perform the action of the simple verb on some person, to influence some person or thing. Thus **قَاتَلَ** to kill, but **قَاتَلَ** to try to kill, to fight with; **كَتَبَ** to write, **كَتَبَ** to correspond with (with accusative of

the person corresponded with). This stem also means to exercise some abstract quality on a person or thing, e. g. لَانَ to be soft, gentle, لَايِنَ to exercise gentleness on some one, to treat one kindly.

The IV. stem أَفْعَلَ (the Hebrew Hiph'il) has a²¹. causative signification, as صَلَحَ to be in good condition, أَصْلَحَ to bring into good condition. Very frequently we find, with this stem, denominative verbs which appear to us as intransitive, but to the Arab as possessing an implicit transitive force, and which express the idea of action in a certain definite direction, as أَحْسَنَ to do good. Frequently, too, verbs of this stem convey the idea of going to a place, of entering upon a certain period or condition; e. g. أَغْرَبَ to go towards the West, أَصْبَحَ to enter upon the period of the morning, to be something in the morning, أَشْرَفَ to reach the top, to be high; أَقَامَ (from قَامَ rise up, stand) to halt, to stay.

The V. stem تَفَعَّلَ (Hebrew Hithpa'el), a sort of²². middle voice is formed from the II. stem and has both a reflexive and a reciprocal meaning, e. g. تَكَبَّرَ to make one's self great, تَعَلَّمَ to let one's self be taught, to learn. Sometimes a verb in the V. stem conveys the

idea of giving one's self out as something, e. g. **تَنَبَّأَ** to give one's self out for, to conduct one's self as, a prophet.

23. The VI. stem **تَفَاعَلَ**, derived from the III. stem, is the reflexive form of the latter, and has a reflexive or reciprocal signification, as **تَجَاسَرَ** to show one's self bold; **تَقَاتَلَ** to fight one another (usually in the plural). Another signification is seen, for example, in **تَعَالَى**, VI form of **عَلَا** to be high, which means to exalt one's self and then simply: to be exalted.
24. The VII. stem **اِنْفَعَلَ** (the Hebrew Niph'al with the connective Alif acc. to § 6a), derived in most cases from the I. stem, is a middle or reflexive form of the latter. Its signification may also be described as quasi-passive, e. g. **كَسَرَ** to break **اِنكَسَرَ**, to break or be broken in pieces.
25. The VIII. stem **اِفْتَعَلَ**, (with connective Alif § 6a) is likewise a middle and reflexive form, for the most part of the I. stem, as **اِعْتَرَضَ**, to oppose one's self, object to; sometimes also with reciprocal signification as **اِخْتَصَمَ**, to dispute, contend with each other.

NOTE. In the case of verbs whose first radical is **ض**, **ص**, **ط** or **ظ**, the **ت** of the VIII. stem is changed to the emphatic **ظ**, and

is even assimilated to the first radical, when that letter is a dental as اِصْطَبَغَ, instead of اِصْطَبَغَ from صَبَغَ; اِظْلَمَ or اِظْلَمَ for اِظْلَمَ from ظَلَمَ; اِظْلَمَ is sometimes assimilated also to a preceding ث, e. g. اِظْلَمَ or اِظْلَمَ from ثَبَّتَ properly اِثْبَتَ; after ذ, ذ and ز ت is changed into the soft د, e. g. اِذْنَدَ for اِذْنَدَ from زَانَ; اِذْنَدَ for اِذْنَدَ.

ط ص ب
ظ ي ت
ث
ز ر
د ن

The IX. stem اِفْعَلَّ (as also the XI. stem اِفْعَلَّ, 26. both with connective Alif) is used of verbs which denote the possession of inherent qualities such as colours or bodily defects, e. g. from the stem صفر: اِصْفَرَ to be or become yellow; from the stem عور: اِعْوَرَ to be one-eyed; from the stem حمر: اِحْمَرَ to be red.

The X. stem اِسْتَفْعَلَ, (with connective Alif) is 27. primarily a reflexive of the IV. اَفْعَلَّ (otherwise a reflexive, formed on the analogy of the VIII. stem, from a stem سَفْعَلَ with a prefixed s), as from the stem وحش IV. اَوْحَشَ to grieve: X. اِسْتَوْحَشَ to grieve (one's self). Very frequently the X. stem denotes also to wish or to beg something for one's self, e. g. from اغفر to pardon, X.: اِسْتَغْفَرَ to ask for pardon; or to think that something is so, as وَجَبَ to be necessary, IV.: اَوْجَبَ to make necessary, X.: اِسْتَوْجَبَ to consider something as necessary for one's self.

28. The quadriliteral stems are denoted, for the verbal and nominal forms, by the paradigm **فَعَّلَلَ** (that is by the addition of a fourth radical to **فَعَّلَ**), and consist for the most part of two stems, of which the first may be said to correspond to the second stem of the trilateral verb (for **فَعَّلَ** is in reality **فَعَّعَلَ**), and the second **تَفَعَّلَلَ** to the fifth, e. g. **كَبَّكَ** to overturn, cast down, **تَكَبَّكَ** fall down.

NOTE. The stems III **إِفْعَلَّلَ** and IV **إِفْعَلَّلَ** (the last corresponding to the IX. stem of the trilaterals) are rare e. g. **إِطْمَأَنَّ**, to be quiet, from a stem **طَمَأَنَّ**.

29. In addition to the *active*, the Arabic verb has a *passive* voice. This passive is formed in the perfect in such a way that in place of the *a*-vowels of the active we have the order *u-i-a* (*i* with the second, *a* with the third radical); thus the act. of stem I. is **فَعَّلَ**, the pass: **فُعِّلَ**. The additional formative syllables of the derived stems also receive the vowel *u*, e. g. pass. V. **تُفَعِّلُ**, VIII **أُفْتَعِّلُ** (with connective Alif).

30. The Arabic verb has two principal tenses, a *perfect*
a. which, generally speaking, denotes a completed action, and an *imperfect* which in general denotes an uncompleted action.

The imperfect is formed by adding the prefix يَ *ya* ^{b.} for the active of the I., V., VI., VII., VIII., IX. and X. stems, and the prefix يُ *yu* for the active of the II., III. und IV. stems, and for the passive of all the stems without exception.

In the case of verbs of which فَعَلَ is the type, the ^{c.} second radical, in the impf. act. of stem I., may receive one or other of the vowels *u*, *i*, *a*. Which of the three must be used for a particular verb will be found indicated in the dictionary under that verb (e. g. قَتَلَ impf. *u*) and should be taken careful note of. Those verbs, on the other hand, of which فَعِلَ (with *i*-vowel) is the type, together with all passives point their second radical with *a* only, thus impf. act. I. يَفْعَلُ ; pass. يُفْعَلُ . ^{(2) Radical a in act. Pass.} Those verbs, finally, of which فَعُلَ (with *u*-vowel) is the type, take *u* with the second radical for the imperfect. ^{Radical u in act. Pass.} As regards the active imperfect of the derived stems, the second radical takes *i* throughout, with the exception of stems V. and VI. ^{where it takes a}; thus impf. II. يَفْعِلُ but V. يَتَفَعَّلُ .

In the imperfect various *Moods* are distinguished, 31. namely the ordinary mood which we call the *indicative*, the dependent mood or *subjunctive*, and a *modus apocopatus* (sometimes called the jussive). These are

distinguished as follows: in the indicative the last radical, when final, always takes *u*, as impf. I **يَفْعَلُ** III. **يُفَاعِلُ**; in the subjunctive always *a*, as **يَفْعَلْ** while in the *apocopatus* the third radical is vowelless. In addition to the above there is a double modus energicus, which is formed by appending the syllables *anna* or *an* (in some forms only *n*) to the impf. as **يَفْعَلَنَّ** or **يَفْعَلَنْ**.

NOTE. As the modus energicus is of comparatively rare occurrence, it is given in the tables of paradigms only in the case of the ordinary strong verb. From the examples there given it may easily be formed for the other verbs.

32. The *imperative* agrees with the apocopated imperfect as regards vocalisation and termination, except that the prefixes *ya* or *yu* are wanting. In the imper. of the I. stem a helping vowel (therefore with connective Alif § 6*a*) is prefixed in all cases where the first consonant is without a vowel of its own. This vowel disappears, however, in pronunciation as soon as the word ceases to stand alone, e. g. **اقْعَلْ** but **قَالَ آخِرُجْ**. The same applies to stems VII.—X. The imperative has the same energetic bye-forms as the imperfect.

NOTE. In the imper. of stem I the prosthetic vowel is *u* when the second radical has *u*, as **اقْتُلْ**, but *i* when it is pointed with *a* or *i*, as **اِزْبِنْ**, **اِفْعَلْ**.

NOTE b. In the imper. of the IV. stem the prosthetic أ , which is characteristic of the stem, is retained, although it disappears after the prefixed ي of the impf. Hence impf. يُفَعِّلُ (for يُأَفَعِّلُ), but imper. أَفْعِلْ .

In the perfect, imperfect and imperative, there 33. are, in addition to the singular and plural, dual forms for the second and third persons. Verbs are inflected by the addition of modified and abbreviated forms of the personal pronouns, and of the dual and plural terminations of nouns, to the ground-forms فَعَّلَ and يَفْعِلُ (for the terminations $\bar{a}ni$ and $\bar{u}na$ of the impf. indic. vid. § 76 a). The terminations just named, along with the ending \bar{ina} of the 2. pers. fem. sing., drop the syllables ni and na in the subjunctive, the apocopated imperfect and the imperative. The ا , which appears in the paradigm after the final و in the perf. and in these shortened forms of the impf. and imper., has no phonetic value (cf. § 2 e).

As to the *prefixes* of the impf., it is to be noted that in place of the prefix ي of the 3. pers. masc., we have ت as the prefix of the 2. pers. sing. and plur., and of the 3. pers. fem. of the sing., ا to indicate the 1. pers. sing., and ن the 1. pers. plur.

The *affixes* employed in the inflexion of the verb are given in paradigm I.

NOTE a. In the V. and VI. forms of verbs whose first letter is a dental or a sibilant, the formative prefix occasionally drops its vowel and is assimilated to the first radical of the verb, in which case the perf. and imper. have a helping vowel (§ 6) prefixed e. g. ^{اِدْتَرَّ} wrap one's self up, impf. ^{يَدْتَرُّ}.

NOTE b. In the impf. of these two stems, the prefix ^ت may be treated in such a way that instead of the two syllables ^{تَتَقَتِّلُ} only ^ت remains, e. g. from ^{قَتَلَ} 2. pers. msc. impf. V. ^{تَقَتِّلُ} for ^{تَتَقَتِّلُ}.

NOTE c. In the impf. VII. and VIII. stems the tone remains on the same syllable on which it falls in the perf., contrary to the rule laid down in § 9; thus ^{يَنْقَتِّلُ} ^{يَقَتِّلُ} *yankátilu, yaqtátilu*.

For the conjugation of the strong verb with three radicals see paradigms II, III and V, for that of the quadriliteral verbs see paradigm IV. In the paradigms the participles and infinitives are also given, although the discussion of these forms has been deferred to §§ 60 and 61.

34. Among the ordinary strong verbs must also be reckoned the so-called verbs *mediae geminatae*, i. e. verbs whose second and third radicals are identical.

A contraction of these last two radicals takes place in all those cases in which

- a. 1) the first, second and third radicals have each a short vowel; in this case the vowel of the second radical is always dropped, e. g. ^{فَرَّ} (to flee) contracted from ^{فَرَر} (which statement is not to be understood as implying that a form ^{فَرَر} once really existed in Arabic) 3. p. perf. pass. I. ^{فُرِّ} from ^{فَرَر}; 3. p. impf. VII. ^{يَنْفَرُّ} from ^{يَنْفَرَر};

2) When the first two radicals have each a short, b. and the third a long, vowel, e. g. 3. p. dual masc. perf. فَرَرَا from فَرَرَا;

3) Generally also when the first radical has a long e. ā, e. g. 3. s. m. perf. of the III. stem فَارَّ contracted from فَارَّر (which is also found), passive فُورَر.

When the first radical is vowelless and the second 35. has a short vowel, then contraction takes place and the vowel of the second radical passes over to the first. Thus 3. pers. impf. act. يَفْرُرُ for يَفْرُ; pass. يُفَرُّ from يُفَرُّ.

When the third radical is vowelless, there is no 36. contraction in the body of the word: e. g. 2. pers. sing. masc. perf. act. فَرَرْتَ; 3. pers. plur. fem. impf. act. يَفْرَرْنَ. But when the third radical stands at the end of a verbal form with no vowel following, as in various forms of the apocopated impf. and the 2. pers. sing. masc. of the imper., we find the full forms اَفْرُرُ, يَفْرُرُ only in the dialects. As a rule contraction takes place and an additional vowel is assumed at the end in order to preserve the doubling of the radical; thus we have يَفْرِ, فَرِ, from فَرَّ imper. رُدَّ.

NOTE. In the case of verbs of the forms *فَعِلَ* and *فَعَّلَ* the vowel of the second radical appears only in the uncontracted form e. g. *مَلَّ* to loathe, 1. pers. perf. *مَلَلْتُ*; hence the vowel *a* of the impf. *يَمَلُّ*.

For the conjugation of verbs *mediae geminatae* see paradigms Nos. VI—VIII; model verb *فَرَّ* to flee.

37. Those verbs that have a Hamza *ء* as first, second or third radical are for the most part regular, as *أَثَرَ* to make an impression, impf. *يَأْثُرُ*; *قَرَأَ* to read, impf. *يَقْرَأُ*. In certain cases we find, according to § 4*b*, *و* or *ي* (without points) as bearers of the Hamza, or *ء* may stand without a bearer, thus 3. s. m. perf. act. *كَيْبَ* to be sad, *بَوَّسَ* to be brave; 3. s. m. impf. passive of *أَثَرَ*; 3. sing. masc. perf. act. *خَطِئَ* to err, fem. *خَطِئَتْ*; 3. s. m. impf. act. of *سَأَلَ* to ask: *يَسْأَلُ*. Occasionally an *آ* takes the place of two Alifs, according to § 7; e. g. 3. s. m. perf. III. of *أَثَرَ* for *آثَرَ*; VI. of *لَامَ* (bind up a wound &c.) *تَلَاءَمَ*.

38. While in all these cases the *ء* may easily be distinguished as the third radical of the verb, there are a few forms in which the *verba hamzata* are more difficult to distinguish, inasmuch as the *ء* sometimes entirely disappears; from this point of view these verbs ought rather to be reckoned among the weak

verbs (§ 39 ff.). The most important of such cases are the following:

1) After ^ءا, ^ءأ, ^ءإ (also after a connective Alif ^ءأ, ^ءأ, ^ءإ a. at the beginning of a sentence) ^ء gives up its power as a consonant (cf. § 7); hence, in place of 'a', 'u', 'i' simply 'ā', 'ū', 'ī', e. g. 3. s. m. perf. IV. of أَثَرَ: أَثَرَ for أَثَرَ; 3. s. m. perf. pass. IV. of أَثَرَ is أُوثِرَ in place of أَثَرَ. So also imper. I. اِثْبِرْ for اِثْبِرْ.

2) In the imper. of the I. form the verbs أَخَذَ b. take, أَكَلَ eat, أَمَرَ order, drop the ^ء altogether: خَذْ, كَلْ, مَرْ; in the same way, from سَأَلَ to ask, the imperative is either اسْأَلْ or سَلْ &c.

NOTE. Should و or ف come to stand as inseparable particles (§ 87) before one of the imperatives under a, the prosthetic Alif is dropped and the radical Hamza reappears, receiving, as its bearer, an Alif on account of the preceding Fath, as in فَاتِرْ. The same holds good in the case of two separate words: thus أَرْتَمِنَ 3. s. m. perf. pass. VIII of أَمِنَ connected with a preceding word becomes أَرْتَمِنَ الَّذِي *elladi-tumina*.

3) In the VI. form the ^ء of verbs primae ^ء is c. sometimes changed to و, as تَوَامَرَ in place of تَأَمَرَ (for تَأَمَرَ).

4) In the VIII. form the ^ء of the verb أَخَذَ is d

assimilated to the following ز , the result being ز , as اِتَّخَذَ instead of an original اِئْتَخَذَ , impf. يَتَخَذُ , but from أَمَرَ , to order, أَيْتَمَرَ .

For the conjugation of the verba hamzata see paradigm IX.

The Weak Verbs.

39. The weak verbal stems are those having a , or a ي as first, second or third radical; under inflection these semivowels in some cases resolve themselves into full vowels, in others they are treated as consonants.
40. The *Verbs primae* , and ي differ from the strong verbs in the following points:
- a. 1) In the impf. and imper. of the I stem a number of verbs primae , surrender their first radical and take the vowel *i* with their second (cf. يَلِدُ), as وَلَدَ to bring forth, impf. يَلِدُ , imper. لِدْ .
 - b. 2) Under the influence of a guttural a few verbs take *a* in place of *i* with their second radical, dropping the , however, like the others, as وَضَعَ to lay, impf. يَضَعُ ; so وَقَعَ to fall, وَهَبَ to give and others (see the dictionaries).
 - c. 3) In verbs primae ي, يُ is changed to \bar{u} , e. g. the impf. IV of يَقُظْ to be awake, properly يُقِظُ , becomes يُورِظُ .

4) In the VIII. stem the first radical of verbs *d. primae* و and ی is assimilated to the following ت, e. g. from وَعَدَ to promise, اِتَّعَدَ for اَوْتَعَدَ (cf. § 38 *d*).

NOTE. A few verbs of the form فَعَلَ also give up the first radical in the imperf. as وَرِثَ to inherit, imperf. يَرِثُ (cf. § 18).

For the conjugation of the verbs *primae* و and ی see paradigm X where will be found the principal forms of the verbs وَصَلَ to arrive, وَدَعَ to leave, وَسَخَ to be dirty, وَجَلَ to be anxious, وَسَنَ to be sleepy, يَسَرَ to be easy.

Verbs mediae و and ی. In the II., III., V., VI. 41. and IX. stems, و and ی are treated as consonants, and the inflexion is the same as that of the strong verb; thus 3. s. m. perf. II of قَالَ (to say) med. و: سَايَرَ: 3. s. m. perf. III of سَارَ (to travel) med. ی. In the other stems these verbs are inflected according to the following rules:

Long *ā* takes the place of the middle radical: 42.

in the perf. active of the I., IV., VII., VIII. and *a.*

X. stems, as قَالَ, أَقَالَ, اِنْقَالَ, اِئْتَالَ, اِسْتَقَالَ;

in the imperf. passive of the same stems, as يُقَالُ, يُقَالُ, b. يُسْتَقَالُ, يُقْتَالُ, يُنْقَالُ;

in the imperf. active of VII. and VIII., as يُنْقَالُ, يُقْتَالُ; *c.*

in the imperf. active of the I. stem of verbs of the *d.* form فَعَلَ e. g. خَافَ to fear, imperf. يَخَافُ.

43. Long *ī* takes the place of the middle radical:
- in the perf. passive of the I., IV., VII., VIII. and X. stems as أَقْنِيْلَ, اُنْقِيْلَ, اُنْقِيْلَ, قِيْلَ;
 - in the impf. active of IV. and X., as يَسْتَقِيْلُ, يَقِيْلُ;
 - in the impf. active of verbs med. ى, as يَسِيْرُ.

The corresponding form of verbs med. و, on the other hand, takes long *ū*, as يَقُوْلُ.

NOTE. The nature of the phonetic changes just detailed will be more readily understood from the standpoint of the strong verb if it be noted that وَ, ى, ُ, ِ, َ; ُ, ِ, َ; ُ, ِ, َ pass into *ā*; ُ, ِ, َ; ُ, ِ, َ into *ī*; ُ into *ū*. It is not meant by this that the corresponding strong forms were ever really found, in these verbs, at any period of the language.

44. The whole of the long vowels mentioned in §§ 42—43 are shortened (§ 8) in a shut syllable, e. g.:

2. s. m. perf. act. IV. of قَال and سَار: أَقَلْتُ and أَسَرْتُ;

3. sing. masc. apoc. impf. pass. I يُقَلُّ, يُسَرُّ (with the tone on the last syllable as if contravening § 9).

2. pers. masc. sing. imper. I. of خَاف (§ 42 d): خَفْ (but plur. خَافُوا);

2. pers. masc. sing. perf. pass. قِلْتُ;

3. pers. sing. masc. apoc. impf. act. IV. يَقِلُّ;

2. pers. sing. masc. imper. I: قُلْ, سِرْ.

In the perf. active of I, verbs med. , take *ũ* where we should expect *ā*, (cf. قُلْتُ) as قُلْتُ, while verbs med. ی take *ĩ*, as سِرْتُ; *ĩ* is also found in verbs of the form فَعِلَ, as خِفْتُ from خَافَ (for a theoretical خَوِفَ).

NOTE a. Instead of the apocop. impf. يَكُنْ &c. from كَانَ, to be, we sometimes find the still shorter form يَكْ.

NOTE b. From a few verbs med. , and ی strong forms are found in stems I., IV., VIII., X.; e. g. IV. اَحْوَجَ compel; X. اِسْتَصَوَّبَ to find correct, a denominative form from صَوَّبَ correct.

For the conjugation of these verbs see paradigms XI—XIV.

Verbs ultimae , and ی. Verbs ultimae , pass into 45. ultimae ی in all the derived stems, and in the perf. and impf. passive of the I stem; thus from غَزَوْ we have 3 s. m. perf. II غَزَى. The same applies to the active of stem I of the form فَعِلَ; thus رَضَوْ becomes رَضَى (to have pleasure in).

If the second radical has *ā*, this vowel is changed 46. in every case into a long final *ā*. In order to distinguish ^a the stems ult. ی from those ult. , this final *ā* is in the former case indicated by ی, in the latter by ا (this applies only to the 3. s. m. perf. act. I). Thus رَمَى to throw, غَزَا carry on a war; but II. رَمَى, غَزَى &c. Similarly

in the imperfects (cf. § 45), e. g. indic. and subj. pass. II يُرْمَى (in place of a theoretical يُرْمَى and يُرْمَى); impf. act. I of رَضَى , يَرْضَى ; impf. act. V. يَتَرْمَى .

NOTE. With the same reservation as under § 43c note, we would call attention to the fact that the combinations و— , ى— , و— , ى— all pass into long \bar{a} .

b. In all the cases mentioned in the preceding subsection, a diphthong (§ 2a) appears before the inflectional additions that begin with a consonant. Thus:

2. sing. masc. perf. act. I رَمَيْتَ ; from عَزَا : عَزَوْتَ ; II رَمَيْتَ , عَزَيْتَ &c.

c. In the case also of the inflectional additions \bar{u} , $\bar{u}na$, $\bar{i}na$ (and its shortened form \bar{i}), the a of the second radical, (after the elision of the third radical) unites with their initial vowel to form a diphthong. Thus:

3. pers. masc. plur. perf. act. I. رَمَوْا , عَزَوْا , do. impf. pass. II. يُرْمَوْنَ , subj. يُرْمَوْا ; do. act. I. يَرْضَوْنَ , V. يَتَرْمَوْنَ ; 2. pers. fem. sing. of the last يَتَرْمَيْنَ , subj. يَتَرْمَيَ .

d. Before the dual terminations \bar{a} and $\bar{a}ni$ the last radical of this class of verbs is treated as a strong

letter, e. g. 3. pers. perf. act. I. رَمَيَا , عَزَيَا ; impf. pass. II. يُرْمَيَانِ &c. By the addition of the termination at ,

the 3. pers. fem. sing. of the perfect must originally have ended in *āt*; this ending, however, has now become *at* in accordance with § 8, as غَزَتْ; رَمَتْ. According to the analogy of the above is also formed the 3. pers. fem. of the dual; thus we find غَزَتَا, رَمَتَا (where we should expect غَزَاتَا, رَمَاتَا).

In the impf. active of stem I, verbs ult. , of the 47. form فَعَلَ take an *u*, those ult. ي an *i*, the third radical quiescing in these vowels. The ending *u* of the imperf. is lost, e. g. يَغْزُو, يَرْمِي. The imperfects active of the derived forms (with the exception of V and VI) are formed on the model of the last mentioned forms, as II يَغْزِي, يَرْمِي and so on. ^{a.}

NOTE. With the same reservation as under § 43c note, it may be pointed out that وُ passes into *ū*, يُ into *ī*.

Affixes beginning with a consonant are appended *b.* in every case to the *ī* or the *ū* just mentioned, as 3. pers. fem. plur. impf. I. يَغْزُونَ, يَرْمِينَ; similarly in the perf., e. g. 2. sing. masc. perf. pass. رُمِيتَ; do. from سَرُوتَ I فَعَلَ I. رَضِيتَ; from سَرُوتَ I فَعَلَ.

If the second radical has *i* or *u*, the third radical *c.* is dropped and the terminations *ū*, *īna*, *ina* added to the second, e. g. 3. plur. masc. perf. pass. رُمُوا (not *rumū*). ^{assumed radical here}
^{2nd / =}
^{assimilation.}

يَغْزُونَ, يَرْمُونَ; 3. plur. masc. impf. act. (رُمُوا, غَزُوا); 2. pers. fem. sing. impf. (not يَرْمِيُونَ, يَغْزُونَ); تَغْرِينَ, تَرْمِينَ.

- d. Before the dual endings *ā* and *āni*, as also before the terminations *a* of the 3. sing. masc. perf., *at* of the 3. sing. fem. perf., *atā* of the 3. fem. dual perf., and *a* of the subjunctive, the third radical is treated as a strong letter, if the second has *i* or *u*. Exx: 3. pers. masc. perf. act. سَرَوْ, رَضِيَ; do. pass. رُمِيَ, غَزِيَ; 3. pers. fem. perf. رَضِيَتْ, سَرَوَتْ; 3. pers. masc. dual رَضِيَا; 3. pers. fem. perf. رَضِيَتَا; 3. pers. subj. act. I يَغْزُو, يَرْمِي; 3. pers. dual impf. يَغْزَوَانِ, يَرْمِيَانِ.

48. In the apocopated impf. and in the imper. every final *ā*, *i* and *ū* is shortened, as 3. pers. sing. masc. apoc. impf. يَغْزُ, يَرْمُ, يَرَضُ; 2. imper. اَرِضْ, اَغْزُ.

For the conjugation of these verbs see paradigms XV—XIX where various forms are given of the verbs غَزَا to carry on war, رَمَى to throw, رَضَى to be content, قَضَى to carry out, accomplish.

49. Of verbs doubly weak the following are the principal varieties:

- a. Verbs primæ و and ultimæ ی, as وَثَى to take care of; impf. according to §§ 40 and 47 يَثِقِي, apoc. يَثِقِ.

The imper. is properly **قِي**, for which, however, when the word stands alone, i. e. in pause, we write **قُهُ**.

The verb **رَأَى** to see, which in the impf. elides *b.* the Hamza, throwing back its vowel *a* to the first radical. Thus **يَرَى** *yarā* for **يَرَى** *yar'ā*; 3. pers. pl. **يَرَوْنَ**; imper. **رَ** (acc. to *a* رَةً), fem. **رَى**. The IV. form in the sense of 'to show' is similarly inflected: **أَرَى** for **أَرَى**, impf. **يُرَى** for **يُرَى**; perf. pass. **أُرِيَ** for **أُرِيَ** and so on.

The verb **حَيَّ** to live, properly **حَيَّ**; impf. **يَحْيَا** (cf. *c.* § 2*d* note) like a verb ult. **يَحْيَى** or **يَحْيَى** like a verb mediae geminatae; perf. IV **أَحْيَا**, perf. X **إِسْتَحْيَا** or **إِسْتَحْيَا** also contracted **إِسْتَحْيَا** (be ashamed).

The verb **لَيْسَ** 'there is not' (compounded of the 50. negative **لَا** and an obsolete Arabic noun corresponding to the Hebrew **לֹא**) is inflected as follows:

	Sing.	Dual	Plural
3. masc.	لَيْسَ	لَيْسَا	لَيْسُوا
3. fem.	لَيْسَتْ	لَيْسَتَا	لَيْسْنَ
2. masc.	لَسْتَ	لَسْتُمَا	لَسْتُمْ
2. fem.	لَسْتِ		لَسْتُنَّ
1. com.	لَسْتُ		لَسْنَا

51. The verbs of praise and blame, نَعِمَ to be good and يَمَسُّ to be bad, which are rarely conjugated, are written as above.
52. The Arab grammarians adduce as special forms the so-called *admirative* forms, that is, forms expressive of admiration. These are strictly the 3. s. m. perf. and 2. pers. imper. of the IV. stem, but have assumed a special signification; so مَا أَفْضَلَ زَيْدًا properly 'what has made Zaid excellent', and أَفْضَلْ بِرَيْدٍ prop. 'make Zaid excellent' both mean: how excellent is Zaid! — The verbs mediæ و and ي may in these forms take the inflection of the strong stems (§ 44 note b) as مَا أَهْوَنَ هَذَا how easy this is!
53. The addition of the *pronominal suffixes* (§ 11 b) alters the form of the verb only to a slight extent.
- a. The 2. pers. fem. sing. perf. with a suffix receives a long final vowel as ضَرَبْتَيْنِي.
- b. The ا, standing after و ū (§ 2 e), is dropped as قَتَلُوْ from قَتَلُوا with the suff. of the 3. pers. sing. masc.
- c. The ending تُمْ of the 2. pers. pl. perf. becomes تُمُو (cf. § 12 a, note 1), as قَتَلْتُمُونِي from قَتَلْتُمْ with the suff. of the 1. pers. sing.
- d. Before the suffixes to the 1. pers. sing. and plur.,

نِي and نَا, the final *na* of the 2. fem. sing. and 3. and 2. masc. plur. impf. is sometimes dropped (so that these forms become identical with those of the subjunctive and apocopated moods). Ex.: تَضْرِبِينِي alongside of the more common تَضْرِبِينِي thou (fem.) strikest me; يَضْرِبُونَا alongside of the more common يَضْرِبُونَا they strike us.

When the object of an active verb consists of a 54. personal pronoun, and this object is, for the sake of ^{a.} emphasis, made to precede the verb, then instead of the ordinary suffixes appended to the verb the sign of the accusative اِيَّا (اِيَّا, اِيَّا) is employed with the suffixes of the noun (with the suff. of 1. pers. sing. اِيَّايَ); e. g. اِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ to *thee* we pray.

The Arabic verb may have two suffixes appended b. at the same time, in which case the pronoun of the 1. person precedes those of the 2. and 3. persons, and the pronoun of the 2. person that of the third, as اَعْطَانِيهِ he gave it me; frequently, however, in place of the second suffix—more particularly when both pronouns are of the third person — we find the above mentioned periphrasis with اِيَّا as زَوَّجَهُ اِيَّاهَا he married him to her.

Chapter III. The Noun. (§§ 55—90).

a. The Formation of Nouns.

55. Nouns in the wider sense comprise 1) substantives, 2) adjectives, 3) numerals (§§ 91—93), and 4) pronouns (§§ 12—14). The noun, in the narrower sense, is limited to substantives and adjectives.

Primitive substantives is the name given to such substantives as cannot be derived from a verb. According to the usual arrangement of Arabic dictionaries, it is true, the primitive noun رَأْسٌ, head (*un* affix) for example, is found under the verb رَأَسَ, but this verb is in all its significations denominative. On the other hand, it may fairly be maintained that a noun like رَأْسٌ goes back to a hypothetical trilateral root, س + أ + ر. — In contrast to these primitive nouns, we find a large number of nouns which are derived either from verbs or from other nouns, that is, which are either *deverbals* or *denominatives*. All the forms of the noun are indicated by paradigms from the root فَعَلَ (cf. § 15 ff.); thus we say of رَأْسٌ as 'of the deverbale infinitive فَعَّلَ killing, that it has the form فَعَّلَ.

NOTE. The numerous foreign words which have found their way into Arabic, adapted from Persian and Aramaic, and indirectly from Greek and Latin, have also, to some extent, been reduced to Arabic nominal forms.

A number of nouns do not show the full complement 56. of (three) consonants (see §§ 16 and 90), as دَم blood; ^a with the feminine termination (§ 73): أَمَّة a slave-girl; to this group belong also nouns with a prefixed vowel (connective Alif) as اِسْم name, which accordingly must be sought for in the dictionary under س.

Extremely common are the nominal forms with *b*. one short vowel, like فَعْل, فِعْل, فُعل, e. g. رَجُل foot, according to the form فِعْل. There are also nominal forms with *two short* vowels: فَعْل, فِعْل, فُعْل, فَعْل, فِعْل, فُعْل, e. g. رَجُل a man, NF. كِبَر old age NF. فَعْل.

Next in order we may put nominal forms with a *c*. long vowel either with the first radical فَاعِل or with the second فَعَال, فِعَال, فُعَال, فُعُول, فُعُول, فُعِيل, or with both فَاعُول.

Nominal forms with doubling of the second radical *d*. are such as حِمص chick-pea NF. فِعْل; فَعَال (§ 63 *a*); فُعِيل.

NOTE. By their mode of formation these nouns have been raised to the rank of quadrilaterals like those in §§ 57—58.

The *preformatives* employed in the formation of 57.

nouns are the following (whose vowels vary according to circumstances): a) ع cf. §§ 60 and 64. b) ز cf. § 61. c) ي as يَنْفُور fugitive NF. يَفْعُول from نَفَرَ to flee. d) أ (cf. §§ 62 c; 63 b), e. g. أَحْدُوثَةٌ story NF. أَفْعُولَةٌ from the stem حدث .

58. The *affirmatives* or formative additions used in the formation of nouns are: a) ـَى and ـَاءَ (see § 74). b) ـَان (for substantives) or ـَانُ (often to form adjectives) e. g. خَفَقَانَ palpitation of the heart NF. فَعْلَان from خَفَقَ ; سَكْرَانَ drunk NF. فَعْلَانُ from سَكِرَ . c) ـُوت (not originally Arabic) as مَلَكُوت kingdom NF. فَعْلُوت , which takes the masc. gend. in Arabic.

59. The *quadriliteral* nouns are denoted by the paradigm فَعْلَل (§ 28) as عَقْرَبٌ scorpion NF. فَعْلَلٌ ; صُنْدُوقٌ box NF. فُعْلُولٌ ; مُعَسْكَرٌ military camp NF. مُفْعَلَلٌ ; فُعْلَلَاءٌ a species of beetle NF. فُعْلَلَاءٌ .

60. From among the rich growth of nominal forms in Arabic a few deverbals and denominatives may be singled out for special attention. Such, of the former class, are the participles and infinitives, whose forms will be found among the paradigms of the verb.

The *participles* — the active is generally named *a.* *nomen agentis*, the passive *nomen patientis* — take the form ^{فَاعِلٌ} for the active of the I stem, and for the passive the form ^{مَفْعُولٌ}. In all the derived stems the participle is formed by prefixing the syllable ^{مَ}; in the active the second radical takes *i*, in the passive *a* (see below). As a rule, however, the active and passive participles of the derived stems take the vowels of the active and passive imperfs. with the exception of stems V and VI.

In addition to the participles there is a class of *b.* so-called *verbal adjectives*, which are in part treated as participles; they might be called quasi-participles, as ^{حَسَنٌ} beautiful, from ^{حَسُنَ}.

The Arabic participles do not in themselves convey *c.* any suggestion of time; hence ^{قَاتِلٌ}, for example, may mean 'one who has killed' as well as 'one who is killing', ^{مَقْتُولٌ} 'one who ought to be killed' i. e. *interficiendus* as well as *interfectus*.

The Infinitive (*nomen verbi*) assumes various forms *61.* in the I stem, and is therefore specially noted in the *a.* dictionaries under each verb. One of the most common forms is ^{فَعَلَ}, as ^{قَتَلَ} killing. The infinitives of ^{فَعَلَ}

verbs (§ 28), as a rule, take the form ^{فَعَلٌ}, e. g. from ^{غَضِبَ}, ^{غَضَبٌ} the being angry. ^{فُعُولٌ} and ^{فَعَالٌ} are also common forms from intransitive verbs, as ^{جُلُوسٌ} a sitting, from ^{جَلَسَ}; ^{سَلَامٌ} health, from ^{سَلِمَ}. Infinitives are also found with the prefix *ma*, as ^{مَدْخُولٌ} or ^{مَدْخَلٌ} (for the same verb has frequently more than one form of the infinitive, sometimes with different meanings) from ^{دَخَلَ} to enter.

- b. The infinitive of the II. stem has the form ^{تَفْعِيلٌ} or ^{تَفْعِلَةٌ} (cf. § 57*b*); the inf. of the III. stem the form ^{فِعَالٌ} or ^{مُفَاعَلَةٌ} (which last is identical with the fem. of the passive participle). The infinitives of IV., VII., VIII., IX. and X. are formed by the insertion of a long *ā* before the last radical; before this *ā* every short *a* of the perf. becomes *ī*, as in the IV. stem ^{إِفْعَالٌ}. The infinitives of V. and VI. take *u* after the second radical, as V. ^{تَفْعُلٌ}.

- c. The Arabic infinitives do not contain the idea of time and may be used both in an active and in a passive sense. Thus ^{قَتَلَ} denotes the circumstance that some one has killed or has been killed, the idea of killing or of being killed.

Synopsis of participles and infinitives

	Partep. Act.	Partep. Pass.	Infîn.
I.	فَاعِلٌ	مَفْعُولٌ	cf. § 61 a
II.	مُفْعِلٌ	مُفَعَّلٌ	تَفْعِيلٌ تَفْعِيلَةٌ
III.	مُفَاعِلٌ	مُفَاعَلٌ	فِعَالٌ مُفَاعَلَةٌ
IV.	مُفْعِلٌ	مُفَعَّلٌ	إِفْعَالٌ
V.	مُتَفَعِّلٌ	مُتَفَعَّلٌ	تَفَعُّلٌ
VI.	مُتَفَاعِلٌ	مُتَفَاعَلٌ	تَفَاعُلٌ
VII.	مُنْفَعِلٌ	مُنْفَعَّلٌ	إِنْفِعَالٌ
VIII.	مُفْتَعِلٌ	مُفْتَعَّلٌ	إِفْتِعَالٌ
IX.	مُفْعِلٌ	— —	إِفْعَالٌ
X.	مُسْتَفْعِلٌ	مُسْتَفَعَّلٌ	إِسْتِفْعَالٌ
Quadr. I.	مُفَعِّلٌ	مُفَعَّلٌ	فَعْلَلَةٌ فِعْلَالٌ
II.	مُتَفَعِّلٌ	مُتَفَعَّلٌ	تَفَعُّلٌ

As regards *Verbal Adjectives* (cf. § 60 c), the following forms may be specially noted: 62.

The form فَعِيلٌ, which occurs in both an active *a.* and a passive sense; as قَتِيلٌ killed, شَهِيدٌ a witness,

^sخَصِيم one who disputes with another (in the sense of ^sمُخَاصِم part. act. of III).

b. ^sفَعُول, e. g. ^sكَذُوب (often an intensive form) given to lying.

c. ^sأَفْعَل, a form denoting colours and physical defects, as ^sأَصْفَر yellow; ^sأَعْرَج lame; ^sأَعْوَر (with و as a strong letter) one-eyed. For the formation of the feminine, see § 74b.

63. Arabic has the means of expressing a heightened or intensive form of the root idea. Of such intensive forms the following are examples:

a. ^sفَعَّال intensive form of ^sفَاعِل and other verbal adjectives, as ^sكَذَّاب (habitually) given to lying. As a denominative this form is in frequent use to denote trades or professions (nomina opificum) as ^sخَبَّاز baker from ^sخُبز bread.

b. Very frequently there is derived from adjectives the form ^sأَفْعَل in the sense of an elative (generally so named because including both comparative and superlative), as ^sحَسَن beautiful, elative: ^sأَحْسَن more b., most b.; ^sصَغِير small, young, elative: ^sأَصْغَر smaller, younger; smallest, youngest. The elatives, when standing in the predicate, do not admit of inflection for

gender and number, as هُمْ أَفْضَلُ النَّاسِ they are the most excellent of men. When used in a comparative sense, they are mostly undetermined (§ 76 *bc*), and are followed by the preposition مِنْ in the sense of our "than" (properly 'at a distance from', 'measured from'). Used as superlatives, on the other hand, they are generally determined. For the feminine formation see § 74 *b*.

NOTE. No special elative is formed from the words خَيْرٌ good and شَرٌّ bad, which are used as elatives in the form just given. As a matter of fact, the positive of other adjectives as well must sometimes be rendered by our superlative; thus كَبِيرُ النَّاسِ signifies the (absolutely) greatest of men.

To the class of deverbal nouns belong further: 64.

Nouns of place and time formed with the prefix *a*.
 مَ ma, as مَكْتَبٌ the place where one writes, the school;
 also with the fem. termination as مَقْبَرَةٌ a buryingplace.

NOTE. Nouns of place and time from the derived stems take the form of the pass. participle, as مُخْرَجٌ (from the IV. stem of خَرَجَ to go out, of which IV. أُخْرِجَ caus.) the place to which or the time at which something is brought out; مُتَوَضَّأٌ (from V. stem) the place where the ritual washing is performed.

Nomina instrumenti, formed with the prefix مِ mi, b.
 as مِجْلَبٌ milk-pail, from حَلَبَ to milk; مِفْتَاحٌ key,
 from فَتَحَ to open.

c. Nomina speciei of the form فِعْلَةٌ, as كِتَبَةٌ the manner of writing, one's "calligraphy".

65. To the class of denominatives belong especially the nouns of relation and the diminutives.

a. By means of the termination ـِيّ (corresponding to the Hebrew יָ, fem. יָהּ and יָהּ) there is derived from nouns a group of other nouns which, following the example of the Arabic grammarians, we call *nomina* (adjectiva) *relativa*, i. e. nouns of relation. Thus أَرْضِيّ belonging to the earth (أَرْضٌ), earthly; شَامِيّ belonging to شَامٌ (i. e. Syria), a Syrian. The feminine termination is dropped when this ending is added, as مَكِّيّ (from مَكَّةُ) an inhabitant of Mecca; occasionally we meet with certain changes in the vowels of a word, e. g. مَدَنِيّ an inhabitant of Medina, from الْمَدِينَةُ Medina; قُرَشِيّ a Koreishite, one of the tribe قُرَيْشٌ.

b. By the addition of the feminine ending to nouns of relation there are formed feminines, as شَامِيَّةٌ a Syrian woman, but more frequently abstract nouns; as إِلَهِِيَّةٌ divinity from إِلَهِِيّ divine, (from إِلَهِ God); جَاهِلِيَّةٌ heathenism from جَاهِلِيّ heathenish, (from جَاهِلٌ ignorant).

NOTE. It is usual to indicate the nomina relativa also by paradigms from *فَعَلَ*; thus we say that *أَرْضِيَّ* is a form *جَاهِلِيَّةٌ*, *فَعِلِيٌّ* a form *قَاعِيَّةٌ*.

Diminutives from trilateral nouns take the form 66. *فُعَيْلٌ*, as *عُبَيْدٌ* a little slave, servulus, from *عَبْدٌ* slave. From quadrilateral nouns the form is *فُعَيْلِلٌ*, as *عُقَيْرِبٌ* a little scorpion, from *عَقْرَبٌ* (so *صُويْجِبٌ* diminutive from *صَاحِبٌ* companion). From quadrilateral nouns with a long vowel between the third and fourth radicals the corresponding form is *فُعَيْلِيلٌ*, as *صُنَيْدِيْقٌ* diminutive from *صُنْدُوقٌ* a box. Diminutives are not unfrequently derived also from proper names, as *عُبَيْدُ اللَّهِ* 'ubaidullāhi alongside of *عَبْدُ اللَّهِ* 'abdullāhi (Abdallah).

The formation of nouns from stems *mediae geminatae* and from those with a hamza or the semi-vowels presents many irregularities, for a general idea of which we must refer to the inflection of the corresponding verbal stems. In addition to what is there given the following particulars deserve attention.

For the formation of deverbal nouns from stems *mediae geminatae* (see § 34 ff.) the following points may be noted:

The second and third radicals are of course con- a.

tracted when the second is without a vowel of its own, as ^سفَر from ^سفَرَر.

b. If the first radical has *a*, and the second *i* or *a*, contraction takes place in the participles and infinitives, e. g. part. act. VII of ^سفَر : ^سمُفَرِّس contracted from ^سمُفَرِّس; pass. also ^سمُفَرِّس from ^سمُفَرِّس. There is no contraction, however, with nouns of the form ^سفَعَل, as ^سدَبَب inf. to be hairy.

c. According to the rule given in § 35 b, from ^سمُفَرِّس we get ^سمَفَر; from ^سمُفَرِّس : ^سمُفَرِّس.

d. The act. participle of I is ^سفَار from ^سفَارَر cf. § 8.

e. Contraction does not take place when a long vowel stands between the last two radicals e. g. ^سفِرَار, ^سمُفَرِّر, ^سفَرِير.

68. The orthographical rules which apply to the inflection of the verba hamzata (§§ 37 ff.) hold good for the formation of nouns, e. g. ^سسَوَّل something asked for; ^سسَوَال a question, from ^سسَال to ask; the part. act. I of ^سأَثَر, to make an impression, is ^سأَثَر for ^سأَثَر; ^سمِثْرَة NF. nomen instrumenti ^سمِثْرَة from ^سأَثَر &c.

69. The primae ٥ stems, which according to § 40 lose^a their first radical in the impf., lose it also, as a rule,

in the nomen verbi; as compensation the latter receives the feminine termination (§ 73), as from وَعَدَ to promise nomen verbi عِدَّةٌ; from وَدَعَ to allow: دَعَةٌ.

w after the vowel *i* (وِ—) coalesces with the latter *b*. to form *ī*, as inf. IV of وَقَعَ fall: اِيقَاعٌ for اَوْقَاعٌ; مِيلَادٌ time of one's birth NF. مِيفَعَالٌ, for مَوْلَادٌ from وَلَدَ.

يُ— passes into *ū* (§ 40 *c*), e. g. part. IV of يَقِظُ *c*. to be awake: مُيَقِظٌ for مُوقِظٌ.

In the inf. of the IV. and X. stems from stems 70. med. و and ی the middle radical disappears; the ^a. feminine termination is added as compensation, e. g. اِقْوَالٌ for اِقَالَ.

In the act. part. of stem I the *w* of verbs med. و ^b. becomes *y* and يِ (*yi*) is changed into 'i (يِ); as قَائِلٌ for قَاوِلٌ, سَائِرٌ for سَاوِرٌ (for Medda see § 7).

A characteristic formation from these stems is فَيْدٌ ^c; thus from the stem سَاد med. و we get سَيِّدٌ master, lord; from the stem طَاب med. ی, طَيِّبٌ good.

Nouns formed on the model of فَعْلٌ contain diph- ^d. thongs (§ 2 *a*), as سَيَّرٌ, قَوْلٌ.

The place of the second radical (see § 42) is taken ^e. by a long *ā* in the act. participles of stems VII. and

VIII. and in the pass. part. of stems IV., VII., VIII. and X.; e. g. part. pass. IV. مُقَامٌ, part. act. or pass. VII. مُنْقَامٌ (from a hypothetical active مُنْقَوْمٌ pass. مُنْقَوْمٌ). Also in numerous nominal forms, as دَارٌ (from a hypothetical دَوْرٌ) house, from دَارٌ med. و; NF. مَفْعَلٌ from مَقَالٌ is مَقَالٌ, from a hypothetical مَقُولٌ.

- f. The place of the second radical (see § 43) is taken by a long \bar{i} in nouns of the type of فِعْلٌ and فِعْلَةٌ from med. و and ی e. g. لَينٌ from لَانَ med. ی to be gentle; مَيِّتَةٌ (§ 64c) for مَوْتَةٌ mode of death from med. و; in the form فُعْلٌ from med. ی, e. g. بَيِّضٌ for بِيضٌ white (plur.); مَفْعِلٌ in the forms from med. ی, e. g. مَسِيرٌ, walk for مَسِيرٌ; in the part. act. of the IV. and X. stems from verbs mediae و and ی, e. g. مُقِيمٌ, مُسْتَسِيرٌ; in the part. pass. I from med. ی, e. g. مَبِيعٌ from بَاعَ to sell (mediae ی) for مَبْيُوعٌ.

- g. The place of the second radical is taken by long \bar{u} in nouns of the type of فُعْلٌ from med. و, as نُورٌ light from نَارٌ; \bar{u} may also arise by contraction from $w\bar{u}$ in the pass. part. of the I stem of verbs med. و, as مَقُولٌ for مَقُولٌ.

71. In the case of nouns derived from verbs ultimae
a.

, and ي those forms in which the second radical is vowelless are treated like forms from strong stems, as رَمَى, عَزَوْ inf.

If the second radical has *ä*, there results (cf. § 46 *a*) *b*. at the end of words a long *ā* (from hypothetical *awu*, *ayu*) which is written اَ or اِ (acc. as last rad. is و or ي), e. g. اَلْعَصَا the stick, for اَلْعَصُو; اَلْمَرْعَى the pasture, from رَعَى to feed, for a hypothetical اَلْمَرْعَى; اَلْمَرْعَى NF. اَفْعَل for اَشْخَى, elative of سَخِيَّ generous, liberal (§ 63 *b*). The same applies to all the pass. participles of the derived stems. With the nunation, these forms appear as اَعَصَا, مَرَعَى, مَرَمَى (ptc. pass. IV) in which the original long final vowel, now standing in a syllable closed by the *n* of the nunation, must be pronounced short (§ 8): 'aṣan, mar'an, murman. Long *ā* appears before the feminine termination (cf. § 70 *e*) as, اَعَصَا morning for اَعَصَا; اَفَاة death for اَفَاة.

If the second radical has short *i*, from *iyu* arises *c*. a long *ī* (cf. § 47 *a*), e. g. اَلرَّامِي part. act. I in place of a hypothetical اَلرَّامِي; and so in the act. participles of the derived forms. If the nunation is added, the result is رَامٍ, *rāmin* &c., in which the ي is dropped even in the written form of the word. *ūyu* is changed

to *iyu*, and consequently with the nunation it likewise becomes *in*; e. g. inf. V. التَّرمَّى for التَّرمَّى; تَرَمَّ for تَرَمَّى. In the act. part. of stem I from verbs ult. و *iwun* is changed to *iyun*, and consequently with the nunation further to *in*, e. g. الْغَارِي for الْغَارُو; with the nunation غَارٍ. Before *ā* and *ā* (cf. § 47 *d*), on the other hand, the third radical retains its consonantal value; thus the inf. of stem II, according to the form most in use with verbs med. و and ی viz. تَغْرِیَّةٌ, تَرْمِیَّةٌ (§ 61), is: تَفْعِلَةٌ.

d. After *ā*, *yu* and *wu* become 'u; *yun*, and *wun* become 'un, in each case with the hamza, e. g. السَّرَاءُ for السَّرَاو with the nunation سَرَاءٌ inf. I of سَرُو to be noble; الْإِرْمَاءُ for الْإِرْمَايُ, with the nunation إِرْمَاءٌ inf. IV for إِرْمَايُ.

e. If the second radical has a long *ū*, the forms from verbs ultimae و are formed regularly; thus the pass. part. I of عَزَا is مَعْرُوءٌ (for مَعْرُوءٌ) *maǧzūwun*. From verbs ultimae ی, on the other hand, *ūyun* is changed to *īyun*, e. g. مَرْمِیٌ (from مَرْمُوی) *marmīyun*, so from مَضَى go away inf. مُضِی for مُضُوی NF. فَعُولٌ.

f. If the second radical has a long *ī*, the forms from

verbs ultimae *وَلَّى* are formed regularly, e. g. NF. *فَعِيلٌ* from *وَلَّى* saint (for *وَلِيٌّ*) *walīyun*. From verbs ultimae *وَو*, on the other hand, *īwun* is changed into *īyun*, as *عَلِيٌّ* *‘alīyun* high from *عَلِيوٌ*.

b. The Gender of Nouns.

Arabic has two genders, a masculine and a femin- 72.
ine. A number of words are sometimes masculine sometimes feminine, in other words are of the common gender. Words which denote female beings, collectives, countries, cities, winds, parts of the body occurring in pairs, and others, are in themselves feminine without requiring the feminine termination. The gender of such words is in each case noted in the dictionaries.

As an outward and visible sign of the feminine 73.
we find most frequently the ending *ـةٌ* *atun* (or *ـةٌ* ^{a.} *atu* § 79), e. g. *قَاتِلَةٌ* (NF. *فَاعِلَةٌ*), fem. of *قَاتَلَ* killing; *مَلِكَةٌ* (NF. *فَعِلَةٌ*) queen, from *مَلِكٌ*; *رَاضِيَةٌ* fem. of masc. *رَاضٍ* (§ 71 c) content, *فَتَاةٌ* (NF. *فَعَلَةٌ*) maid, from *فَتَى* (§§ 71 b and 2 d) youth. Many substantives are found only with the feminine ending, as *جَدَّةٌ* an orchard.

NOTE. As a rarity, the feminine ending is found, particularly in the *Kur’ān*, written with *ت*, e. g. *نِعْمَتُ اللَّهِ* the grace of God (for *نِعْمَةٌ*).

- b. A number of masc. nouns are found with the feminine ending, as خَلِيفَةٌ Caliph, طَلْحَةُ Talḥa (proper name of a man, see p. 8, note 2). On the other hand, there are nouns which, as being essentially feminine, do not require the feminine termination, as عَاقِرٌ barren (referring to a woman).
- c. The feminine ending ة is occasionally appended to common or class nouns in order to indicate a single individual (nomen unitatis), as ذَهَبَةٌ a gold piece, from ذَهَبٌ gold; حَمَامَةٌ a dove, from حَمَامٌ doves (collective). The termination ة is also used for the formation of the so-called nomina vicis, i. e. nouns that express the doing of an action *once*, as قَعْدَةٌ a single sitting down, from قَعَدَ to sit down.
- d. The feminine termination, again, serves to form substantives from adjectives, as سَاقِيَةٌ conduit-pipe, water-channel, from the part. I of سَقَى to water. Connected probably with this is the feminine ending which forms intensives, as عَلَّامَةٌ a very learned person, from the adjective عَلَامٌ § 63 a.
- e. Collective nouns are also formed by means of the feminine termination, e. g. from رَكَّاضٌ a courier, coll. رَكَّاضَةٌ; صُوفِيٌّ (§ 65 a) Sūfī (mystic), coll. صُوفِيَّةٌ.

Other feminine terminations are:

74.

The termination ـى; it goes to form feminines *a.* of the type فَعْلَى, e. g. سَكْرَى fem. of سَكْرَانٌ, drunk, (§ 58 *b*); feminines of the nominal form (NF.) فُعْلَى from elatives (§ 63 *b*), e. g. صُغْرَى fem. of أَصْغَرٌ smaller, أُولَى from أَوَّلٌ the first, and substantives like دُنْيَا world (§ 2 note), which is properly a feminine to the elative أَدْنَى, that which is nearer at hand; also feminines of the NF. فِعْلَى, e. g. from أَحَدٌ one, fem. إِحْدَى; subst. ذِكْرَى remembrance.

The ending ـَاءَ; it goes to form, more especially, *b.* adjectives of the NF. فُعْلَاءَ from أَفْعَلٌ (§ 62 *c*), e. g. صَفْرَاءَ fem. yellow; عَوْرَاءَ fem. one-eyed, but also substantives, as صَحْرَاءَ desert.

c. Inflection of the Noun.

Arabic has three *numbers*: singular, dual and 75. plural. Of the last, there are two different kinds; the one, the ordinary plural, properly so called, also known as the pluralis sanus or the outer plural, which originally denoted rather a number of separate persons and things; the other, the collective plural, also called the inner or broken plural (see §§ 86 ff.), which denotes

rather a continuous mass, in which the individual member is not distinguished. At present we shall deal only with the first-named. Arabic distinguishes three cases: Nominative, Genitive, and Accusative.

76. The terminations of the dual and the pluralis
 a. sanus are as follows:

Dual nominative	ـَانِ (cf. § 33)
„ genitive and accusative	ـَيْنِ (cf. ـَيْنِ)
Plural mascul. nominative	ـُونَ (cf. § 33)
„ „ gen.-accus.	ـِينَ (cf. ـِينَ)
„ femin. nominative	ـَاتِ (cf. ـَاتِ)
„ „ gen.-accus.	ـَاتِ

Before these terminations the flectional endings of the sing. are dropped; the *ṣ* of the feminine ending is changed to ت before the dual termination, (as it is before the pronominal suffixes appended to the singular), e. g. جَارِيَةٌ, dual جَارِيَتَانِ.

- b. By the addition of the terminations exhibited above is formed the plural of many adjectives, in particular, and also of a number of substantives. In the formation of the plural we find substantives with the feminine ending taking the sign of the masculine plural (as سَنَةٌ year, plur. سِنُونَ); much more fre-

quently, however, substantives without the sign of the feminine in the singular are found forming their plural by means of the feminine termination, e. g. ^سحَال condition, plur. ^سحَالَات, ^سسَمَاء heaven, plur. ^سسَمَآوَات (with the original wāw restored § 71 *d*), also written ^سسَمَوَات.

As regards the case inflection of the singular, it ⁷⁷ is necessary to distinguish between the so-called nomina triptota or triptotes, *i. e.* nouns which are inflected for all three cases, and the so-called nomina diptota or diptotes, *i. e.* nouns which cannot be thus fully inflected. The latter never receive the nunation, and unless they are determined by the article or by a following genitive, they are inflected for only two cases.

The following are the case-endings of the triptote *a.* noun: Nom. sing. ^س — *un*, Gen. sing. — *in*, Acc. sing. ^ا — *an*. With the feminine termination — only is written instead of ^ا — as رَجُلًا, but مَدِينَةً; so فَتًى and عَصَا (cf. § 3 *b*).

The case-endings of the diptote noun are: Nom. *b.* sing. [ُ] — *u*, Gen. and Accus. Sing. — *a*.

In the dictionary the triptotes are distinguished from the diptotes by being always written with the

nunation, as رَجُلٌ a man, while the latter are always without it, as أَسْوَدٌ black.

78. Whole classes of nouns are always diptote. Such are

a. 1) all proper names that are either feminine or have the feminine termination, as زَيْنَبُ, مَيْمَنَةُ as names of women; مَسْلَمَةُ as name of a man. To these must be added the majority of such proper names as are of foreign origin, e. g. إِبْرَاهِيمُ Abraham, يُوْسُفُ Joseph, مُوسَى Moses (but monosyllables like نُوحٌ Noah are mostly triptote).

b. 2) Many so-called broken plurals; cf. § 88 Nos. 18, 19, 20; § 89 Nos. 23 24, 25, 27, 29;

c. 3) adjectives of the form أَفْعَلٌ (§ 62 c; § 63 b);

d. 4) adjectives of the form فَعْلَانُ (§ 58 b), which form their fem. like فَعْلَى, e. g. غَضَبَانُ angry, fem. غَضَبَى.

e. 5) Feminines formed by the terminations ـَى or ـَاءُ (§ 74). Cf. also the broken plurals referred to under b, §§ 88, 19 and 89, 29.

79. The inflection of the singular of all nouns and of the plural of feminines varies according as a noun is *determined* or *undetermined*.

a. All proper names are in themselves determined as مُحَمَّدٌ muḥammadun Muhammed; أَحْمَدٌ aḥmadu

Ahmed; such proper names are treated either as triptotes or as diptotes according as their form and the custom of the language may determine; many of them always take the article, as **الْحَارِثُ**.

Common or class nouns are determined:

1) by the article; as **فَرَسٌ** a horse, **الْفَرَسُ** the horse. *b.*

2) by the addition of a following genitive, which *c.* may be either a noun or a pronominal suffix, whereby the nomen regens is put in the *construct state*; as **فَرَسُ الرَّجُلِ** the horse of the man, **فَرَسُهُ** his horse.

The case-endings of a noun determined (1) by the prefixing of the article, or (2) by a genitive following—and the same applies to proper names with the article—are distinguished as follows from those of the undetermined noun:

Singular nom. **فَرَسٌ**, Gen. **فَرَسٍ**, Acc. **فَرَسًا**.

Plural fem. nom. **فَرَاسٌ**, Gen.-Acc. **فَرَاسٍ**.

i. e. the nunation is always dropped. These endings are assumed not merely by all triptotes, but also by the diptotes, when determined by the article or a genitive following: e. g. Nom. **أَسْوَدٌ**, Gen.-Acc. **أَسْوَدٍ**; but Nom. **أَلْأَسْوَدُ**, Gen. **أَلْأَسْوَدِ**, Acc. **أَلْأَسْوَدَ**.

Before a following genitive (which acc. to § 79 *c* 80. may be either a noun or a pronominal suffix) the

terminations نِ of the dual and نَ of the plural are dropped, thus:

Dual Nom. of عَبْدَانِ: عَبْدَانِ, but عَبْدَا الْوَزِيرِ the two slaves of the Vizier.

Dual Gen.-Acc. عَبْدَيْنِ, but ضَرَبْتُ عَبْدَيَّ عُمَرَ I have beaten the two slaves of Omar (before a connective Alif thus: عَبْدَيَّ الْوَزِيرِ, cf. § 6 e).

Plural Nom. of قَصَّابٌ butcher, executioner قَصَّابُونَ, but قَصَّابُو الْمَلِكِ the executioners of the king.

Plural Gen.-Acc. قَصَّابِينَ, but رَأَيْتُ قَصَّابِي الْمَلِكِ I have seen the executioners of the king.

For the inflexion of the noun see paradigms XX and XXI, where will be found the forms of the masculine triptote قَصَّابٌ an executioner, the masculine diptote آخَرُ another, the feminine triptote سَاعَةٌ hour, and the feminine diptote مَيَّةُ Mayya (name of a woman).

81. In the case of nouns derived from stems ultimae
 a. و and ي when the second radical has a short vowel the nunation, acc. to § 71 b c, is taken by this vowel of the second radical.
 b. Nouns ending in *an* or *ā* are unchangeable for all three cases; those in *in* or *ī*, on the other hand, take the *an* of the nunation, as well as the simple *a* (§ 47 d) as الرَّامِيَّ, رَامِيًّا.

Before the dual terminations (cf. § 46 *d*) the last *c*. radical is treated as a strong letter, as مَرَعِيَّانَ, عَصَوَانِ, رَامِيَّانِ.

In the plural the last radical is dropped before *d*. the terminations *ūna* and *īna*, which, when joined to an *a* of the second radical, produce diphthongs (§ 46 *c*); thus from مَرَمِيٍّ, مَرَمَوْنِ, مَرَمِيٍّ; if the second radical has *i*, the terminations are added immediately to the former (§ 47 *c*), as رَامِيٍّ, رَامَوْنِ.

For the inflection of these nouns see paradigm No. XXII, where will be found the forms of the triptote قَاضٍ judge, the triptote مُصْطَفًى (ult. *ى*) chosen one (often as a proper name), the triptote عَصَا (ult. *و*) a stick, the diptote ذِكْرَى remembrance, and the diptote دُنْيَا world (vgl. § 74 *a*).

For the forms of the pronominal suffixes see 82. § 12 *b—d*.

Before the pronom. suffix of the 1. pers. sing. the *a*. short case-endings of the construct state are dropped, as قَصَابِي. The said suffix after a final *ā*, *ī* or *ai* becomes *ى* (*ya*), as with the nom. dual قَصَابَايَ, with قَتَايَ (§ 2 *d*; 81 *a*); with the gen.-acc. plur. قَصَابِيَّ; with قَاضِي (§ 81 *a*): قَاضِي; with gen.-acc. dual قَصَابَيَّ.

NOTE. In the case of words which end in ^يـى, the suffix may either be attached in the usual way, e. g. from ^يـى "sonny", ^يـى, or appended to the shortened form ^يـى, e. g. ^يـى from ^يـى and ^يـى.

- b. The final *ū* of the construct state of the plural masc. is changed to *ī* before the appended ^يـى (cf. § 71e), thus ^يـى becomes ^يـى, and then with the suffix of the 1. pers. sing. ^يـى (no longer to be distinguished from the genit. and accus. plural). The same applies to the ending *au* from stems ult. ^يـى (see parad. XXII), e. g. ^يـى becomes ^يـى, with the suffix ^يـى (also identical with the genitive-accusative form).

For the union of the noun with the suffixes see paradigm XXIII. For the change before suff. of final ^يـى into ^يـى see § 76 a.

83. In the pluralis sanus of substantives of a masc. or fem. nominal form with one short vowel (that is, of any of the following types ^يـى, ^يـى, ^يـى, ^يـى, ^يـى, ^يـى) the second radical frequently receives a complementary vowel which is either identical with that of the first radical or is short *ā*. Thus ^يـى earth, plur. ^يـى, more rarely ^يـى, and ^يـى, more rarely ^يـى; ^يـى darkness, plur. ^يـى alongside

of ظَلَمَاتٌ and ظُلُمَاتٌ. This is a favourite method in the case of the plural of the form فَعَلَةٌ, as طَعْنَةٌ (§ 73c) a single thrust or blow; plur. طَعْنَاتٌ several thrusts or blows.

Before ابْنُ a son, a proper name loses its nuna- 84.
tion in the case mentioned § 6f 2, and ابْنُ is itself written without the prosthetic ا, e. g. مُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ muslimu-bnu-lwalidi Muslim, the son of al-Walīd. زَيْدُ بْنُ بِشْرٍ zaiduni-bnu bischrin (§ 6e) means, on the other hand, Zaid is the son of Bishr (nominal sentence).

After يَا the particle of address, the simple noun 85.
follows in the nominative without the nunation, as مُحَمَّدٌ Muhammed, يَا مُحَمَّدُ Oh M.! يَا رَجُلٌ Oh man! (by which a definite person is hailed). But should anything of the nature of a complement (a genitive, for instance) be added to the noun in the vocative, the name of the person addressed must be put in the accusative, as يَا عَبْدَ اللَّهِ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ: o Abdallah! (Oh servant of God!); يَا بَنِي كِنْدَةَ Oh Banu Kinda! *i. e.* members of the tribe of Kinda (here بَنِي cf. § 80 and 90b is the constr. state of بَنِينَ). If an Object follows, the noun stands in the accus. with the nunation, as

يَا رَاكِبًا أَحْمَرَ! Oh thou that ridest the red mare! —
 The particle أَيُّهَا (before which we may also have يَا)
 is always followed by a nominative with the article,
 as يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ Oh ye people!

NOTE. After وَآ, which serves as the expression of pain and sorrow, a long ā is appended to the noun; in pause مَآءٌ, as أُمَّاءٌ Oh mother!

86. There are, in Arabic, a mass of words which, though singular in form, have a *collective* signification. The following varieties may be singled out under this head:

- a. Simple collectives (masc. gend.) such as قَوْمٌ, which denotes not merely 'a people' collectively, but also 'people' as individuals; عَسْكَرٌ an army and also the individual soldiers thereof. From such words broken plurals may be formed.
- b. Names of the inhabitants of a country, as الْيَهُودُ the Jews, often coinciding with the name of the country itself, as الْهِنْدُ the Hindus; a single Jew or Hindu is called يَهُودِيٌّ, هِنْدِيٌّ § 65 a.
- c. Class names (masc. gend.) from which are formed nomina unitatis (§ 73 c) as حَمَامٌ doves.
- d. So-called quasi-plurals (masc. gend.), from which no nomen unitatis is formed, as رَكْبٌ a company of

horsemen (a single one رَاكِبٌ); خَدَمٌ the domestics (one of which is خَادِمٌ); حَمِيرٌ a number of asses (one ass جِمَارٌ); عَبِيدٌ slaves (from عَبْدٌ).

The so-called *broken plurals* (plurales fracti in the 87. language of the native grammarians—by German ^{a.} scholars by preference called ‘inner plurals’ because due to changes in the body of the word) are also strictly speaking nothing more than collectives. Hence they are treated in Arabic as singular nouns of the feminine gender and construed accordingly. Thus أَبْوَابٌ مُتَفَرِّقَةٌ different gates, where أَبْوَابٌ is the broken plural of بَابٌ (on the model of اَفْعَالٌ), and the participle act. V. of فَرَّقَ is put in the fem. sing.—These broken plurals, further, take the same inflection as the singulars, discussed in § 77 ff.

As a rule the broken plurals are given in the *b.* dictionaries alongside of the singular of their respective nouns; when this is not so, it is to be presumed that the word either has no plural or takes a pluralis sanus. Sometimes we find from one and the same word more than one plural; in such a case, not unfrequently, a word varies its plural as its meaning varies. Certain of the broken plurals are, as a rule, confined to certain specified singulars.

88. From nouns regarded as containing three consonants the following broken plurals may be formed:

1. ^{فُعْلٌ} from ^{أَفْعَلٌ} (§ 62 *c*) and its fem. ^{فَعْلَاءٌ} (§ 74 *b*), as ^{حُمُرٌ} from ^{أَحْمَرٌ} red; ^{سُودٌ} (cf. § 70 *g*) from ^{أَسْوَدٌ} black; ^{بَيْضٌ} (for ^{بُيُضٌ} cf. § 70 *f*) from ^{أَبْيَضٌ} white.

2. ^{فُعْلٌ} from various singulars, as ^{كُتُبٌ} from ^{كِتَابٌ} book.

3. ^{فُعْلٌ} from sing. ^{فِعْلَةٌ}, as ^{قَطَعٌ} from ^{قِطْعَةٌ} piece.

4. ^{فُعْلٌ} mostly from sing. ^{فُعْلَةٌ}, as ^{عُلَبٌ} from ^{عُلْبَةٌ} box; ^{أُمَمٌ} from ^{أُمَّةٌ} people; occasionally from ^{فُعْلَةٌ}, as ^{قَرَى} (for ^{قَرَى} acc. to § 71 *b*) from ^{قَرِيَّةٌ} place.

5. ^{فِعْلَةٌ}, as ^{إِخْوَةٌ} from ^{أَخٌ} brother.

6. ^{فِعْلَةٌ} esp. from sing. ^{فَاعِلٌ}, as ^{كَمَلَةٌ} from ^{كَامِلٌ} perfect; but also from ^{فَيْلٌ} § 70 *c*, as ^{سَادَةٌ} (for ^{سَيِّدَةٌ}) from ^{سَيِّدٌ} lord.

7. ^{فِعْلَةٌ} (rare) as ^{قِرْدَةٌ} from ^{قِرْدٌ} monkey,

8. ^{فِعْلَةٌ} from ^{فَاعِلٌ} ult. ^ي, as ^{قُضَاةٌ} (for ^{قُضِيَّةٌ} § 71 *b*) from ^{قَاضٍ} judge.

9. ^{فِعَالٌ} very common, from various singulars, as ^{قِدَاحٌ} from ^{قِدْحٌ} arrow.

10. ^سفُعُول very common, also from various singulars, as ^سجُنُود from ^سجُنْد band of soldiers; ^سبِكِي (for ^سبُكُوِي see § 71 *e*) and then (with change of *u* to *i*) ^سبِكِي from ^سبَاك weeping.

11. ^سفِعَالَة (rare) as ^سحِجَارَة from ^سحَجَر stone.

12. ^سفُعُولَة (rare) as ^سعُمُومَة from ^سعَم uncle.

13. ^سفُعَل from ^سفَاعِل, as ^سبُهَل from ^سبَاهِل an unbranded she-camel.

14. ^سفُعَال from ^سفَاعِل, as ^سكُتَاب from ^سكَاتِب scribe.

15. ^سأَفْعُل from various singulars, as ^سأَرْجُل from ^سرِجْل foot.

16. ^سأَفْعَلَة from various singulars, as ^سأَرْغِفَة from ^سرَغِيف a cake, ^سأَحِبَّة (§ 67 *c*) from ^سحَبِيب beloved; ^سأَدَمَة from ^سإِمَام president; ^سآلِهَة from ^سإِلَٰه God.

17. ^سأَفْعَال very common, from various singulars, as ^سأَمْطَار from ^سمَطَر rain; ^سأَشْيَاء (always without the nunation) from ^سشَيْء thing.

18. ^سأَفْعِلَاء esp. from ^سفَعِيل, as ^سأَقْرَبَاء from ^سقَرِيب relative; ^سأَغْنِيَاء from ^سغَنِي rich.

19. ^سفَعَلَى (rare), as ^سجَرَحَى from ^سجَرِيح wounded.

20. ^{فُعَلَاءٌ}, as ^{شُعَرَآءٌ} from ^{شَاعِرٌ} poet.
 21. ^{فُعَلَانٌ}, as ^{فُتَيَانٌ} from ^{فَتًى} youth; ^{جِيرَانٌ}
 (for ^{جِيرَانٌ} cf. § 69*b*) from ^{جَارٌ} neighbour.
 22. ^{فُعَلَانٌ}, as ^{بُلْدَانٌ} from ^{بَلَدٌ} district; ^{فُرْسَانٌ}
 from ^{فَارِسٌ} rider; ^{سُودَانٌ} negroes from ^{أَسْوَدٌ} black.

NOTE. Forms 5 and 15—17 are used, as a rule, only of a number of objects not exceeding ten (hence called pluralia paucitatis).

89. From nouns with more than three radical consonants (cf. § 56*d* ff.) are formed plurals in which the first consonant takes *ā*, the second *ā* and the third *i*. Such plurals are diptotes with the exception of all those derived from stems ult. ^ي (or with an additional ^ي in the sing. § 74*a*) which take the nunation *in* in the nominative and genitive, but not in the accusative which ends in ^ي. The forms of the singular of Nos. 24 (cf. also ^{صُوَيْجِبٌ} § 66) and 25 are regarded as quadriliterals. No. 29 ends in long *ā* and is diptote. The following are the principal varieties:

23. ^{فُعَالِلٌ} as ^{جَنَادِبٌ} from ^{جُنْدَبٌ} (NF. ^{فُعَلَلٌ}) locust. This form is also found from nouns that are only in a special sense quadriliterals, inasmuch as they are really triliterals with the addition of a

formative consonant; examples of this group are:
 a) أَفَاعِلُ, as أَفَامِلُ from أَفْمَلَةٌ (NF. أَفْعَلَةٌ) fingertip;
 also from elatives used as substantives, such as
 أَكْبَارُ the great ones from أَكْبَرُ elat. of كَبِيرٌ; b) تَفَاعِلُ
 as تَجَارِبُ from تَجَرِبَةٌ (NF. تَفْعَلَةٌ) experience; c) مَفَاعِلُ
 as مَزَايِلُ from مَرْبَلَةٌ (NF. مَفْعَلَةٌ) dung-heap; مَعَايِشُ
 (with دِ, not with ذِ) from مَعِيشَةٌ (NF. مَفْعَلَةٌ) livelihood;
 مَعَانٍ (acc. مَعَانِي) of مَعْنَى (NF. مَفْعَلٌ) idea.

24. فَوَاعِلُ especially from فَاعِلَةٌ and فَاعِلٌ (used
 as a substantive), as صَوَاعِقُ from صَاعِقَةٌ thunder-clap;
 فَوَارِسُ from فَارِسٌ rider; خَوَاصُّ (for خَوَاصِصُ § 67 b)
 from خَاصٌّ person of distinction; جَوَارٍ (acc. جَوَارِي) from
 جَارِيَةٌ a female slave.

25. فَعَائِلُ from such nominal forms with a long
 vowel after the second radical as have a feminine
 form or signification, as a) جَنَائِزُ from جِنَازَةٌ funeral
 obsequies; b) عَجَائِبُ from عَجِيبَةٌ miracle; c) عَرَائِصُ
 from عَرُوسٌ bride.

26. فَعَالٍ as فَتَاوٍ from فَتَوَى (N. F. فَعَلَى) decision.

27. فَعَالِيلُ from quadriliteral nouns with a long
 vowel before the last consonant, as عُنُقُودٌ from عُنَاقِيدُ

(N. F. ^{فُعُلُولُ}) bunch of fruit; this form is also found with nouns derived from trilateral stems, of which the following are specimens: a) ^{أَفَاعِيلُ} as ^{أَحَادِيثُ} from ^{أَفْعُولَةٌ} (NF. ^{أَفْعُولَةٌ}) story; b) ^{تَفَاعِيلُ} as ^{تَصَارِيفُ} from ^{تَفْعِيلُ} (infinitive ^{تَفْعِيلُ} used as a noun) turn; c) ^{مَفَاعِيلُ} as ^{مَقَادِيرُ} from ^{مَقْدُورٌ} (participle ^{مَفْعُولٌ} used as a noun) fate; but also ^{فَوَاعِيلُ} (cf. No. 24) as ^{جَاسُوسٌ} from ^{فَاعُولٌ} (NF. ^{فَاعُولٌ}) spy.

28. ^{فَعَالِلَةٌ}, from quadrilateral nouns denoting living beings, as ^{جَبَّارٌ} from ^{جَبَّارَةٌ} (NF. ^{فَعَالٌ}) a mighty man; ^{أَسَاقِفَةٌ} from ^{أَسْقَفٌ} bishop; ^{تَلَامِيذَةٌ} from ^{تَلْمِيزٌ} pupil; ^{بَغْدَادِيٌّ} from ^{بَغْدَادِيٌّ} a native of Bagdad.

29. ^{فَعَالِيٌّ}, as ^{صَحَّارِيٌّ} from ^{صَحْرَاءٌ} desert; ^{هَدَايَا} (for ^{هَدَايِي} § 2 d note b) from ^{هَدِيَّةٌ} (NF. ^{فَعِيلَةٌ} from ult. ^ي) present.

90. The following nouns (arranged in alphabetical order) are more or less irregular in their mode of inflection:

a. ^{أَبٌ} father, ^{أَخٌ} brother and ^{حَمٌ} father-in-law take the following forms in the construct state and before suffixes beginning with a consonant:

Nominative	أَبُو, أَخُو, حَمُو
Genitive	أَبِي, أَخِي, حَمِي
Accusative	أَبَا, أَخَا, حَمَا

The Dual of ^sأَب is ^sأَبَوَان (i. e. the two parents), the plur. ^sأَبَاء (§ 88 No. 17). The vocative singular with suff. of the 1. pers. sing. of ^sأَب is ^sيَا أَبَتِي, ^sيَا أَبَت; from ^sأَخِي; with suffix of the 2. pers. masc. sing. ^sأَخُوك, ^sأَبُوك.

^sابْن son; plur. sanus has nom. ^sبَنُونَ (construct *b*). ^sبَنُو, gen.-acc. ^sبَنِينَ (st. constr. ^sبَنِي); broken plur. ^sأَبْنَاء (§ 88, 17).

^sأَخ brother, see *a*; broken plur. ^sإِخْوَان, ^sإِخْوَة *c*. (§ 88, 5. 21).

^sأَخْت sister; plur. ^sأَخَوَات *d*.

^sإِمْرَأ or ^sإِمْرُو (also ^sمَرء) man; gen. ^sإِمْرِي, acc. ^sإِمْرَأ *e*.

^sإِمْرَأَة woman; plur. from another root ^sنِسَاء *f*. ^sنِسْوَة or ^sنِسْوَان (§ 88, 9. 5. 21).

^sأُم mother; plur. ^sأُمَّهَات or ^sأُمَّات *g*.

^sإِنْسَان man, human being; plur. ^sأَنَاس, collective *h*. ^sنَاس.

- i. ^{بِنْتٌ} daughter, frequently also ^{ابْنَةٌ} (with connective Alif); plur. ^{بَنَاتٌ}.
- k. ^{دِينَارٌ} dinar, gold-piece; broken plur. irregular, ^{دَنَانِيرٌ}.
- l. ^{ذُو} (only in the st. constr.) possessor of; gen. ^{ذِي}, acc. ^{ذَا}; fem. ^{ذَاتٌ}; dual nom. ^{ذَوَا}; plur. nom. ^{أُولُو} (gen.-acc. ^{ذَوِي}) fem. ^{ذَوَاتٌ}; for the plural ^{أُولُو} (*ūlū*), gen.-acc. ^{أُولِي} is used.
- m. ^{سَنَةٌ} year; plur. nom. ^{سِنُونٌ} (or ^{سُنُونٌ}); gen.-acc. ^{سِنِينَ}.
- n. ^{عَمْرُو} *amrun*, *Amr*, proper name of a man. A ^و is added to the written form of this word in the nom. and gen. (^{عَمْرُو}) to distinguish it from ^{عُمَرُ} *umaru* (a diptote). Acc. ^{عَمْرًا}; followed by ^{بْن} it is written ^{عَمْرُو} and pronounced *amra-bna*.
- o. ^{فَمٌ} or ^{فُوَةٌ} mouth; st. constr. usually nom. ^{فُو}, gen. ^{فِي}, acc. ^{فَا}; broken plur. (§ 88,17) ^{أَفْوَاهٌ}.
- p. ^{لَيْلٌ} night; broken plur. (from the root ^{لِيلِي}) ^{لَيَالٍ} (§ 89,23).
- q. ^{مَاءٌ} water; broken plur. ^{مِيَاءٌ} or ^{أَمْوَاءٌ} (§ 88,9.17).

يَدٌ hand; broken plur. (§ 88,15) أَيْدٍ from أَيْدِي r.
(cf. § 71 c).

يَوْمٌ day; broken plur. أَيَّامٌ from أَيَّامٍ (§ 88,17). s.

Chapter IV. The Numerals. (§§ 91—93.)

The cardinal numbers have the following forms: 91.

	Masc.	Fem.	
1	{ وَاَحَدٌ اَحَدٌ	وَاحِدَةٌ اِحْدَى	inflected "
2	اِثْنَانِ	اِثْنَتَانِ	(inflected as a dual)
3	(ثَلَاثٌ) ثَلَاثٌ	(ثَلَاثَةٌ) ثَلَاثَةٌ	inflected
4	اَرْبَعَةٌ	اَرْبَعَةٌ	"
5	خَمْسَةٌ	خَمْسَةٌ	"
6	سِتٌّ	سِتَّةٌ	"
7	سَبْعٌ	سَبْعَةٌ	"
8	ثَمَانٍ (see p. 27*)	ثَمَانِيَةٌ	"
9	تِسْعٌ	تِسْعَةٌ	"
10	عَشْرٌ	عَشْرَةٌ	"
11	اَحَدٌ عَشَرَ	اِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ	indeclinable

	Masc.	Fem.	
12	اِثْنَا عَشَرَ	اِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ	gen.-acc. "اِثْنَى عَ، اِثْنَتَى عَ"
13	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ	indeclinable
14	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ	"
15	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ	"
16	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ	"
17	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ	سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ	"
18	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَمَانِيَ عَشْرَةَ	"
19	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ	تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	"
20	عِشْرُونَ	inflected, like all the tens, as a pluralis sanus.	
21	إِحْدَى وَعِشْرُونَ أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ		
30	ثَلَاثُونَ	أَرْبَعُونَ	40, 50, 60, سِتُّونَ, خَمْسُونَ
70	سَبْعُونَ	ثَمَانُونَ	80, 90, تِسْعُونَ
100	مِائَةٌ (also written مِئَّةٌ, and always so		

200 مِائَتَانِ, 300 *ثَلَاثُ مِائَةٍ, 400 أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ, 500
ثَمَانِي 800, سَبْعُ مِائَةٍ 700, سِتُّ مِائَةٍ 600, خَمْسُ مِائَةٍ
تِسْعُ مِائَةٍ 900.

1000 أَلْفٌ, 2000 أَلْفَانِ, 3000 ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ

is here a broken plural of the form أَفْعَالٌ § 88 No. 17)
&c. 11000 أَحَدُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا, 100000 مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ, 1000000
أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ.

The following are the leading points to be noted 92.
in joining the cardinals to the names of the objects
numbered :

The numerals for one (وَاحِدٌ) and two are adjectives; the numbers from 3—10, on the other hand, are substantives, and take the word indicating the objects numbered in the genitive plural. They may also, however, be placed in apposition *after* the noun. Whatever their position relative to the substantive may be—even, in fact, when the latter is altogether omitted, or when they stand as the predicate of a sentence—the construction is such that nouns of the masc. gender take the fem. forms of these numerals,

* Often written ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ &c.

and *vice versâ* nouns of the fem. gender take the masc. forms. Thus: (بَنُونَ ثَلَاثَةٌ) three sons, (بَنَاتٌ أَرْبَعٌ) four daughters. Also before broken plurals of which the singular is masculine, we find the fem. forms of these numerals (3—10), as ثَلَاثَةٌ رِجَالٌ 3 men.

b. The numbers from 11 to 99 are followed by the word indicating the objects numbered in the accusative singular, as ثَلَاثُونَ رَجُلًا 30 men.

c. The numbers from 100 upwards take the thing numbered in the genitive singular as أَرْبَعٌ مِائَةٌ رَجُلٍ 400 men.

d. In the compound numbers the nature of the construction depends on the last numeral. The particle وَ is used to join the numbers together; the units and the tens may stand either before the hundreds, or after the thousands and hundreds. Thus the year 1895 is either خَمْسٌ وَتِسْعُونَ وَثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ وَآلْفٌ or أَلْفٌ وَثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ وَخَمْسٌ وَتِسْعُونَ سَنَةً.

93. The ordinals have, for the most part, the form
a. of the act. part. of the I stem, as may be seen from the following:

	Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.
1.	أَوَّل, first	أُولَى	6.	سَادِس	سَادِسَة
2.	ثَانٍ	ثَانِيَة	7.	سَابِع	سَابِعَة
3.	ثَالِث	ثَالِثَة	8.	ثَامِن	ثَامِنَة
4.	رَابِع	رَابِعَة	9.	تَاسِع	تَاسِعَة
5.	خَامِس	خَامِسَة	10.	عَاشِر	عَاشِرَة
11.	حَادِي عَشَرَ	حَادِيَة عَشْرَة	indeclinable		
12.	ثَانِي عَشَرَ	ثَانِيَة عَشْرَة	"		
13.	ثَالِث عَشَرَ	ثَالِثَة عَشْرَة	and so on.		

The ordinals of the numbers from 20 upwards are expressed by the corresponding cardinals, as **ثَالِث** **ثَلَاثُونَ** thirty-third; when larger totals have to be expressed, the cardinals are used even for the lower numbers. In dates, as a rule, the cardinal numbers are used exclusively, as **فِي سَنَةِ ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ** **وَتَلَاثَ مِائَةٍ وَآلِفٍ مِّنَ الْهَجْرَةِ** in the 1313th year of the Hegira (which began on the 24th of June 1895).

Fractions are usually expressed by the form **فُعِلْ**, *b.* as **تُلُتْ** a third.

Chapter V. The Particles. (§§ 94—96).

94. The adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions cannot here be given in detail. The prepositions, like many adverbs, are still for the most part recognizable as nouns of three radicals originally, which have preserved the accusative ending without the nunation. Prepositions therefore always govern the genitive case in Arabic and may also stand in the genitive in dependence on other prepositions. Thus **فَوْقَ** above, with a subst. **فَوْقَ الْجَبَلِ** up on the hill.

NOTE. A few adverbs end in *u* (which in this case has absolutely nothing to do with the nominative termination) as **بَعْدَ** afterwards; so **مِنْ بَعْدَ** in the same sense; but as prepositions **بَعْدَ** or **مِنْ بَعْدَ** after.

95. The following particles (in alphabetical order) because written with a single letter are inseparably joined to the following word, cf. § 8 note.

- a. **أَ** (هـ) interrogative particle, as **أَقْتَلَ** did he kill? Before the connective Alif: **أَسْمُكَ** for **أَ + أَسْمُكَ** is thy name . . . ?
- b. **بِ** (ب) preposition 'in'; with suffixes thus: 1. **بِي** in me, 2. masc. **بِكَ**, 3. masc. **بِهِ** (§ 12*d*) &c.
- c. **تَ** particle of asseveration, as **تَاللَّهِ** by God.

س shortened from سَوْفَ, a particle which gives *d.* to the impf. the sense of the future, as سَيَقْتُلُ he will kill.

ف, then, denotes a less close connection than وَ. *e.*

كَ (ك) like, as. *f.*

ل a corroborative particle before verbs, especially *g.* in oaths, as لَيَقْتُلَنَّ he will certainly kill; it also stands before nouns, especially after the particle إِنَّ (§ 125 *a* note).

لِ (?) preposition and conjunction; before suffixes *h.* (except in 1. pers. sing. لِى) it becomes ل, as لَكَ to thee.

وَ (و, و) connective particle; as a particle of *i.* asseveration it takes the gen., as وَاللَّهِ by God.

As regards the addition of pronominal suffixes 96. to the prepositions and conjunctions, the following points may be noted in addition to what has been said under § 82.

Before the suffixes of the 1. pers. sing., the final *a.* vowel or vocalic *auslaut* is dropped as is the case with the noun; thus بَعْدَ 'after' with the suff. of the 1. pers. sing. بَعْدِى, but بَعْدَكَ &c.

- b. In the prepositions عَلَى upon, and إِلَى towards, the final ي is sounded before suffixes (contrary to § 2 d), e. g.

with suff. of the 2. pers. masc. اَيْدِكَ, عَلَيْكَ

" " " 3. " " اَيْدِيهِ, عَلَيْهِ

" " " 1. " " اَيْدِيَّ, عَلَيَّ (see § 82 a)

- c. The prepositions مِنْ and عَنْ double the n before the suffix of the 1. pers. sing., as مِّنِّي.

- d. اِنَّ behold, truly, and اَنَّ that, become

with the suff. of the 2. pers. sing. masc. اِنَّكَ and اَنَّكَ

" " " " 1. " " اِنِّنِّي or اِنِّي,

اِنِّنِّي or اِنِّي,

" " " " 1. " plur. اِنَّنَّا or اِنَّا,

اِنَّنَّا or اِنَّا.

III. NOTES ON SYNTAX. (§§ 97—160).

Chap. I. Moods and Tenses. (§§ 97—104).

97. The *perfect* expresses a completed action, the completion of which falls in the past, present or future, or is thought of as falling in one or other of these

periods. The *imperfect* expresses an uncompleted action, which may likewise fall in each of the same three spheres of time.

The perfect is, in the first place, the tense of 98. narration (*perfectum historicum*), when an action completed in the past is spoken of, and may, as a rule, be rendered by our past tense, as **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ** Zaid came. ^{a.}

By the perfect the idea is expressed that an action or a state has continued from the beginning, and still continues, as **اِخْتَلَفُوا الْعُلَمَاءُ** the learned (always) disagree (*gnomic aorist*); **اللَّهُ تَعَالَى** God, he is exalted (from the beginning). ^{b.}

When the perfect expresses an action completed in the present, it is to be rendered by our present, as **أَعْطَيْتُكَ هَذَا** I present you with this (the affair is at this moment concluded). ^{c.}

In a sentence containing an oath or a wish, the perfect expresses an action which, in the mind of the speaker, is completed in the future, as **لَعَنَهُ اللَّهُ** God curse him; also with **لَا رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ** 'not', as **لَا رَحِمَهُ اللَّهُ** may God have no pity on him; **وَاللَّهِ لَا فَعَلْتُ** by God I do it not! ^{d. —}

When the particle **قَدْ** stands before the perfect, the latter may in most cases be rendered by our per- ^{e.}

fect (either the present or the past perfect), as **قَدْ** **ذَكَرْنَا** we have (just) mentioned, or we had mentioned. The perf. with **قَدْ** may also be used in the sense given under sub-section *c*.

- f.* When the verb **كَانَ** (to be) stands before the perfect (with or without **قَدْ**), we must render as a rule by our past perfect (pluperfect), as **لَمَّا وَلِدَ مُوسَى** **كَانَ قَدْ أَمَرَ فِرْعَوْنُ بِقَتْلِ الْأَطْفَالِ** when Moses was born, Pharaoh had (just) commanded to kill the little children.

NOTE. Instead of the above verbal sentence (§ 134), **كَانَ** may be followed by a compound nominal sentence (§ 138 *d*) as **كَانَ فِرْعَوْنُ قَدْ أَمَرَ . . .**

- g.* Our conditional is expressed in Arabic by the perfect, that is, it is represented as something already accomplished, as **قَدْ كُنْتُ وَدَدْتُ** I should wish, **وَدَدْتُ** I should have wished.

- h.* For the perf. after **إِذَا** and in conditional sentences see §§ 157, 158.

99. The *imperfect* indicative is to be rendered according to circumstances by our present or our future, sometimes also by our past progressive (imperfect).

- a.* If the future is to be expressed with greater precision than by the Arabic imperfect alone, the latter

has prefixed to it the adverb سَوْفَ (end), which may be shortened to سَ and is then inseparably joined to the verb (see § 95 *d*), as سَوْفَ تَعْلَمُونَ ye will know (it); سَنُرِيهِمْ (49 *b*) we shall show [you.] *then*

By the imperfect is expressed an action which *b.* accompanies another action completed in the past, or which is still in the future from the stand point of the latter, as جَاءُوا أَبَاهُمْ يَبْكُونَ they came to their father weeping (cf. § 157 *b*); آتَى الْعَيْنَ يَشْرَبُ he came to the spring to drink.

The imperfect can also express the continuance *c.* of an action in the past; يَتَقَاتَلُونَ may also mean 'they were fighting for a considerable time', or 'they fought repeatedly, with each other'. More frequently, however, this continuous imperfect is expressed by a combination of كَانَ with the impf. (cf. § 98 *f.* and note); sometimes we can render such a combination by our 'was wont to' or 'used to', as كَانَ يَأْخُذُ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ ثَلَاثَةَ دَرَاهِمَ he used to receive every day three drachmae.

If قَدْ stands before the imperfect, a certain in- *d.* definiteness is the result, as قَدْ يَكُونُ 'it will most

likely be that . . .', an idea which is not unfrequently found in the imperf. without قَدْ.

NOTE a. The imperf. also stands in direct subordination to other verbs, as مَا زِلْتُ أَشْرَبُ I ceased not to drink (cf. § 110); مَا أَقْدِرُ أَفْعَلُ he began to speak with the people; كَذَا I cannot do such a thing.

NOTE b. Before several verbs (perfects or imperfects) joined together with وَ, it is sufficient to write كَانَ once, and so with سَوْفَ and سَ.

NOTE c. كَانَ (see note to § 98 f) is frequently followed by a compound nominal sentence, as كَانَ عُثْمَانُ يَزُورُ الْمَقَابِرَ Osmān was wont to visit the graves (the cemetery).

100. The *Subjunctive* is found in certain kinds of dependent clauses introduced by a conjunction, the action of which is to be represented as one to be expected as the result of the action of the principal clause, and hence as one that is only likely to occur in the future. Hence this mood is frequently (not always) used after the conjunctions أَنْ that, أَلَا (from لَا أَنْ) that not, حَتَّى until, وَ (and) that, and always after لِأَنَّ (made up of لَا لِأَنَّ) in order that, كَيْ in order that . . . not, أَوْ in the sense of 'except that', 'until', as لِيُزُورَنِي جَاءَ he came in order to visit me; أَمَرَ أَنْ يَكْتُبَ he commanded him to write (that he

should write). In like manner the subj. is used after لَنْ (لَا أَنْ) it will not be (the case) that, as لَنْ أَرْسَلَهُ I shall not send him.

The *modus apocopatus* (or jussive) is found: 101. —

1) in positive commands, generally with the particle *a*.

لِ prefixed, as لِيَكْتُبْ let him write.

NOTE. When such a form is further preceded by وَ and فَ (which is sometimes the case, without any special stress resting on these particles) لِ generally loses its vowel, as وَعَلَىٰ اَللّٰهِ and in God let the believers (then, therefore) trust.

2) in negative commands with لَا, as لَا تَقُلْ say not, *b*. thou shalt not say. The imperative can never take a negative.

3) always after لَمْ, not as a prohibition but as neg- *c*. gativating a completed action, as لَمْ يَضْرِبْ he did not strike, (as the negation of ضَرَبَ); in like manner after لَمَّا in the sense of 'not yet'.

4) in the protasis and apodosis of conditional sen- *d*. tences, see § 158. *H*.

The *modus energicus* is usually found in assevera- 102. tions, and particularly in connection with an oath and the corroborative particle جَ, as وَاللّٰهِ لَا ضَرْبَتَهُ by God, I will certainly strike him; this mood is also used with the prohibitive لَا.

103. The *Passive* is employed in those cases in which the agent, for some reason or other, must not be mentioned. Hence a sentence like قَتِلَ زَيْدٌ means 'Zaid has been killed (by some person unknown or who may not be named)'. Our 'Zaid has been killed by 'Amr', the Arabs express by the active construction. The passive is frequently found in an impersonal sense (see § 121^a).

104. With regard to the employment of the *participles* the following points are to be noted:

a. The participle (especially as predicate of a nominal sentence § 122^a) frequently expresses our "to be about to", as أَنَا قَادِمٌ إِلَيْكَ I am about to come, on the point of coming, to you.

b. The passive participle is also used impersonally in Arabic; starting from the sentence غُشِيَ عَلَيْهِ he fainted (literally: it was covered over him) we can also say هُوَ مَغْشَى عَلَيْهِ he has fainted, fem. هِيَ مَغْشَى عَلَيْهَا. In such constructions the impersonal part. pass. may be inflected for all three cases and be determined by the article, as مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ مَغْشَى عَلَيْهِ I passed a man who had fainted; رَأَيْتُ الْمَرْأَةَ الْمَغْشَى عَلَيْهَا I saw the woman that had fainted.

Chap. II. The Government of the Verb. (§§ 105—117).

In Arabic the verb may take as its complement 105. ~ either an accusative, or a preposition with its case. The numerous combinations of the latter sort, in which the preposition with its case is sometimes the necessary complement of the action denoted by the verb, sometimes merely accessory (such, for example, as specifications of place and time) cannot here be given in detail. See, however, §§ 114 ff.

The *accusative* is the case depending immediately 106. ~ on the verb. We distinguish here the cases in which, the accusative stands α) as object, β) as predicate, and γ) as limitation or more precise definition, generally called by grammarians, the accusative “of nearer definition”.

α) Certain classes of verbs, as for example, verbs 107. + of coming and going, take as direct object the goal to which the action is directed, e. g. دَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ he went into the house.

NOTE. On the other hand دَخَلَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ denotes primarily the *direction* of the action *towards* the goal; دَخَلَ فِي الْبَيْتِ he went into the house and stayed there.

The following take *two* accusatives: 1) The causa- 108. ~ tive forms of transitive verbs with one accusative in the I. stem, as عَلِمَ to know; caus. عَلَّمَهُ الْقُرْآنَ he

taught him reading; 2) verbs that express the ideas of filling or giving, of making into, of considering or recognising as, of naming, and many others: e. g. جَعَلَ اللَّهُ الْأَرْضَ فِرَاشًا God made the earth (into) a carpet; سَمَّى ابْنَهُ مُحَمَّدًا he named his son Muhammed. When a verb of this class is put in the passive, the second accusative remains, as سُمِّيَ ابْنُهُ مُحَمَّدًا his son was named Muhammed; أُوتِيَ دِرْهَمًا he was presented with a dirhem, from the active آتَاهُ دِرْهَمًا he presented him with a dirhem (for suff. see § 107).

NOTE a. The two accusatives of such verbs as express the idea of finding one to be, or considering one as something, stand to each other, strictly speaking, in the relation of subject and predicate (§ 139); thus a sentence like وَجَدْتُهُ شَيْخًا حَلِيمًا may also be translated 'I found that he was a gentle old man'. As second object we may have a verb instead of a noun, as وَجَدُوا بِضَاعَتَهُمْ رُدَّتْ إِلَيْهِمْ they found their payment to be something which was returned to them = they found that their payment was &c.

NOTE b. Verbs expressing not an intellectual but a physical perception are also frequently found with two accusatives. The second, indeed, is generally regarded as an acc. of condition (§ 113b), but sentences like سَمِعْتُ عَمْرًا بَاكِيًا, it must be admitted, may also be translated: I heard 'Amr weeping, i. e. I heard how 'Amr wept.

109. For the purpose of strengthening or of more precisely defining the idea conveyed by it, every verb

may take a so-called *absolute object*. This absolute (or *internal*) object consists of an infinitive, a *nomen speciei* (§ 64 c) or other noun. Usually this object is itself more precisely defined either by some qualifying word or phrase (§ 120) or by a genitive, as أَدَّبَهُ تَأْدِيبًا حَسَنًا he educated him with a good education, i. e. well; ضَرَبَهُ ضَرْبًا أَوْجَعَنِي he struck him with a stroke which pained me (for the relative sentence, see § 155); سَلَكَ سَبِيلَ سَيِّدَةِ جَدِّهِ he walked in the way of his grand father. More rarely the absolute object is found without any qualification, as ضَرَبَهُ ضَرْبًا he struck him with a stroke, as much as to say, he struck him a blow, and what a blow! صَرَفَهُ صُرْفًا he wrapped it in (so many) parcels; here the absolute object expresses rather the result of the action.

NOTE. Sometimes the place of the infinitive is taken by the mere qualification, as سَارَ سَيْرًا طَوِيلًا he journeyed long, for سَارَ سَيْرًا طَوِيلًا he journeyed a long journey, or by some other form of nearer definition, as فَتَحَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ بَيْتَ الْمَقْدِسِ صَلَاحًا God allowed him to capture Jerusalem peacefully = فَتَحَ صَلَاحًا.

β) The accusative stands as the *predicate* with verbs 110. *Ac.* which express the idea of being or becoming something, and is especially common with the verb كَانَ (med. و). This verb signifies either 1) to be in the

7*

The accus

1. Direct object

2. Double accus. with verbs of filling, joining, naming, counting, measuring

3. accus. after كَانَ, in some other cases of comparison, & several verbs

4. cognation

5. condition

6. specification

sense of to exist, as ^سكَانَ وَزِيرٌ there was (there lived) a vizier, or 2) to be something (in particular); in the latter sense it takes its predicate (to adopt the nomenclature of the native grammarians) in the accusative, as ^عكَانَتْ أَمْرَاتُهُ حَامِلًا his wife was pregnant. The same construction is adopted by all verbs of similar signification, such as ^عأَمْسَى to be something late, ^عأَصْبَحَ to be something early, ^ععَادَ to be or become something a second time, ^عدَامَ to remain, to last, ^عزَالَ to cease to be something, ^عصَارَ to become something, ^علَيْسَ not to be something. The place of the accusative in the predicate may be taken by a preposition with its case (cf. § 114 ff.), as ^سكَانَ زَيْدٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ Zaid was in the house; ^عكَانَتْ مُلُوكُ الْفَرَسِ مِنَ أَعْظَمِ مُلُوكِ الْأَرْضِ the kings of Persia belonged to the most powerful sovereigns on earth. The construction of ^سكَانَ and the others with a finite verb (§§ 98f; 99c) must also be understood in this way, that is, the predicate in such cases consists of a verbal sentence (§ 135), as ^عأَصْبَحَ النَّاسُ قَدْ تَعَبُوا the people had already (prop. early) become weary.

x 111. The accusative, further, stands in the predicate

after the negative لَا, when the latter, as the Arabs say, expresses a *general* negation. The accus. after لَا, which is always undetermined, drops its nunation, as لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ there is (absolutely) no God but Allah.

The accusative is used after the conjunction وَ to 112. indicate concomitance, especially in verbal sentences (§ 135), as مَا صَنَعْتَ وَأَبَاكَ what hast thou and thy father done? مَا زِلْتُ أُسِيرُ وَالنَّيْلَ I ceased not to go with (along) the Nile; also without a verb مَا لَكَ وَزَيْدًا what hast thou (to do) with Zaid?

γ) The *accusative of nearer definition* is employed 113. in the following cases:

1) To give details of place and time, as نَظَرَ يَمِينًا a. سَارَ فَرَسًا he looked to right and to left of him; سَارَ فَرَسًا he journeyed a parasang; جَاءُوا عِشَاءً they came late in the evening; اِسْتَمَرَّ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مُدَّةَ حَيَاتِهِ he continued faithful thereto during his life-time.

2) Very frequently the accusative, as a rule undetermined, appears in verbal (rarely in nominal) sentences as the accusative of state or condition, as سَارَ مُتَوَجِّهًا إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ he journeyed, taking the direction of Medina; لَقِيتُ عَمْرًا بَاكِيًا I met 'Amr weeping.

NOTE a. With the accusative of condition the student must be careful to note to which of the nouns in the sentence it applies; in the last sentence above, for example, it might refer to the subject pronoun implicit in لَقَيْتُ instead of to 'Amr.

NOTE b. Two nouns in the accusative of condition are often placed beside each other without a conjunction (asyndeton) as اُخْرِجَ مِنْهَا مَذْرُومًا مَحْقُورًا (God said to Satan): Go out of it (paradise, fem.) as one cast off and despised (for مَذْرُومًا see § 7*b* note).

NOTE c. In some rare cases an infinitive is used (in place of a participle) to denote a qualifying circumstance; قُتِلَ صَبْرًا he was killed bound (i. e. while bound) = مَصْبُورًا.

- c. 3) The accusative of *specification* (= accus. of respect), also in most cases undetermined, expresses a more precise reference, as حَسَنَتْ مُسْتَقَرًّا it (paradise) is beautiful with reference to staying (there), i. e. as a dwellingplace; this accus. is especially common with elatives (§ 63*b*) of a more general signification, as أَشَدَّ حُمْرَةً stronger with regard to the colour red = redder.
- d. 4) The accusative of nearer definition is also employed to indicate the *motive* or *purpose* of an action, in which case, also, it is mostly undetermined, as قُمْتُ إِكْرَامًا لَهُ هَرَبُوا جُبْنًا they fled from cowardice; I stood up to do him honour.

114* The accusative may also stand in cases, particularly in exclamations, where a finite verb can be supplied, as أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا welcome! Here we must

supply **جِئْتَ**, and the meaning of the phrase comes to be: thou art come to relatives and a smooth (i. e. pleasant) place; **مَهْلًا** slowly! to be taken as the absolute object of an imperative understood.

Of the numerous constructions of the *verb with* 114. *a preposition* attention need only be called to the following.

Many prepositions are still treated as nouns, in accordance with their original signification (see § 94), as **مَيَّزَ بَيْنَ الذَّكُورِ وَالْأُنْثَى** he distinguished between (prop. the distance, difference of) males and females. Very frequently we find (cf. § 110) the partitive **مِنْ** used in this way as object, e. g. **أَكَلَ مِنَ الطَّعَامِ** he ate of the food.

A few verbs are construed, with but slight differ- 115. ence of meaning, now with a direct object, now with **بِ**, as **عَلِمَهُ** he knew it, **عَلِمَ بِهِ** he knew about it. Frequently **بِ** serves to introduce an object, to which the action of the verb extends only indirectly, as **بَعَثَ زَيْدًا** he sent Zaid; **بَعَثَ بِالْكِتَابِ** he sent the writing (i. e. some one with the writing); **بَعَثَ الْعَبْدَ** he sent the slave, **بَعَثَ بِالْعَبْدِ**, same meaning, but

with the understanding that the slave travels under escort. Verbs of going construed with بِ take the sense of bringing, as أَتَى زَيْدًا بِالْخَبَرِ he brought Zaid the news.—This بِ may also accompany an imperative as a periphrasis of the first person of the dual and plural, as اِمْضُوا بِنَا let (thou) us go, اِمْضِ بِنَا let (ye) us go.

116. The meaning of many verbs is often so altered according to the preposition with which they are construed that a sense quite the opposite of the original, according to our idiom, is the result; thus دَعَا لَهُ is properly: he called (to God) in his favour, i. e. he blessed him, دَعَا عَلَيْهِ he called (to God) against him, i. e. he cursed him; اِشْتَغَلَ بِالْأَمْرِ he occupied himself with the affair; but with عَنْ (which contains the idea of separation) اِشْتَغَلَ عَنِ الْأَمْرِ he was occupied so that he put the affair in question aside, could not attend to it.

117. Of the various uses of the preposition لِ (see §§ 130 ff.), we may call attention to its special use in dates, particularly in specifying the days of the month, as لِأَوَّلِ لَيْلَةٍ مِنْ مُحَرَّمٍ in the first (literally: to the first) night of (the month) Muharram. لِسَبْعِ لَيَالٍ خَلَوْنَ

شَعْبَانَ or with the omission of لَيْالٍ (§ 90 *p*)
 لِسَبْعِ خَلَوْنَ at the time of seven nights, which (cf.
 § 155) had elapsed of Ša'bān, i. e. when seven nights
 (or days) of Š. had passed; لِأَرْبَعِ عَشْرَةَ (لَيْالٍ) بَقِيَتْ
 مَنْ رَمَضَانَ when still fourteen (nights) were left of
 Ramaḍān.

Chap. III. The Government of the Noun. (§§ 118—134).

A noun may take with it *a*) the article, *β*) a permut- 118.
 ative (noun in apposition), *γ*) a qualifying (attribu-
 tive) adjunct, *δ*) a genitive.

a) When a noun is preceded by the *article*, it is said
 to be *determined* (§ 79 *b*). This determination may be
 stronger or weaker:

A very strong determination is found in certain *a*.
 words which contain the idea of time, as السَّاعَةَ this
 hour = now, الْيَوْمَ this day = today. In these cases
 the article has the force of a demonstrative.

By means of the article a single definite object is *b*.
 indicated, which the speaker has in mind, or which
 has been already mentioned: by الرَّجُلُ is meant some
 particular known man. Proper names furnished with
 the article (see § 79 *a*) were originally appellatives
 with the determination, as الْحَسَنُ.

- c. The determination by the article often serves merely to denote the *species* or class to which something belongs, as هُوَ مِثْلُ الْحِمَارِ he is like an ass. This use of the article is named the generic.

119. β) From among the cases in which a noun follows another noun in *apposition*, the following may be singled out as worthy of note:

- a. A substantive may have in apposition words expressing a) size, b) resemblance, c) the parts and d) the material of which a thing is made up. Thus
- a) ثَوْبٌ ذِرَاعٌ a dress an ell long (lit. a dress, an ell);
- b) رَجُلٌ مِثْلُ زَيْدٍ a man like (lit. the likeness of) Zaid;
- c) حَبْلٌ أَرَمَاتٌ a rope made up of rotten pieces;
- d) اَلْخَاتَمُ اَلْحَدِيدُ the iron finger-ring; when undetermined preferably with مِنْ ذَهَبٍ as صَنَمٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ an idol of gold. For the last, the genitive construction is also found viz: صَنَمُ اَلذَّهَبِ.
- b. The word كُلُّ totality is construed either with the noun following in the genitive, or stands in apposition, with a suffix referring back to the noun, as كُلُّ اَلنَّاسِ or اَلنَّاسُ كُلُّهُمْ all men. (Note that كُلُّ being a substantive always remains unchanged as regards gender and number).

γ) A substantive may be *qualified* 1) by an adjective, 120.
2) by a preposition with its case, or 3) by a relative clause (§§ 155—6).

1) The qualifying word may be an *adjective*, as *a.*
إِمَامٌ عَادِلٌ an honest Imām; in this case if the substantive is determined the adjective must also receive the determination, as اَلْإِمَامُ الْعَادِلُ, the honest Imām.

The adjective *follows* its substantive; to this rule *b.* — the demonstrative pronoun forms an apparent exception, in as much as it generally stands *before* (like the article § 118), less frequently *after*, the substantive which it qualifies. Thus we find هَذَا الْعِلَامُ this slave, alongside of اَلْعِلَامُ هَذَا.

The adjective must agree with its substantive in *c.* gender and number, as صَبِيَّةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ a pretty girl. Among the exceptions is the word كَثِيرٌ much, which generally remains unchanged, like a noun in apposition, even after the plural, as رَجَالٌ كَثِيرٌ, many men.

That the broken plurals take their adjectives in *d.* — the feminine has been already noted (see § 87 *a*); the adjective, however, may also take a broken plural, as رَجَالٌ كِرَامٌ, noble men. The plur. sanus, moreover, is not

unfrequently found especially if the adjective qualifies words denoting living beings, as **الْأَبَاءُ الْمَاضُونَ** the ancestors that were of old (part. of **مَضَى**). In the same circumstances the collectives (§ 86 *a*) may also take a plural adjective, as **قَوْمٌ ظَالِمُونَ** miserly people, **قَوْمٌ بَخِلَاءٌ** violent people. The preceding pronoun often stands then in the plural, as **هَؤُلَاءِ النَّاسُ** these men; but with fem. plurals that do not denote living beings generally in the fem. singular, as **هَذِهِ الْفَلَواتُ** these deserts; before broken plurals also in the fem. sing., as **هَذِهِ أَمَّاإِلَيْكَ** these slaves.

- 2) From those cases in which a *preposition with its*
 121. *noun* is dependent on a verb (§§ 114 ff.) or its equi-
 a. valent, must be clearly distinguished those in which they form the qualifying attribute of another noun, as **جَلَسْتُ عَلَى صَائِعٍ بِالسُّوقِ** I sat down beside a goldsmith (who was) in the bazaar; **ذُرِّيَّتِكَ مِنْ بَعْدِكَ** thy posterity (that will be) after thee.

Sometimes this attribute does not stand next to
 b. the word qualified; so particularly with the relatives **مَنْ** and **مَا**, as **مَنْ دَخَلَ الشَّامَ مِنَ الْعَرَبِ** those of the Arabs that advanced into Syria; **أَنْكَحُوا مَا طَابَ**

لَكُمْ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ marry of the women whatever seemeth good unto you.

Should several attributes qualify a single substantive, the connecting conjunction is usually omitted (asyndeton), as اللَّهُ الْعَلِيُّ الْعَظِيمُ the high and mighty God; بَابٌ وَاسِعٌ مِنْ أَبْوَابِ الْقَرْيَةِ a wide gate of the gates of the town; عَمَامَةٌ ضَخْمَةٌ عَلَى رَأْسِهِ تَظِلُّهُ a thick cloud over his head which gave him shade.

δ) One noun, when in dependence on another, is put 123. in the *genitive* case—the function of which is to determine more exactly the application of the preceding noun. As the result of the close connection subsisting between the second noun and the first, the latter, now said to be in the construct state (§ 79 c) and therefore without the article, is regarded as *determined*. Therefore رُمْحُ الْفَارِسِ is ‘the (particular) spear of the (particular) horseman’, and so with the suffixes, as رُمْحُهُ his (particular) spear. When the dependent noun (nomen rectum) is undetermined, the governing noun (nomen regens) is only defined in a generic sense (§ 118 c), or is specialized in a way resembling the generic definition, as بِنْتُ مَلِكٍ a daughter of a king = a king’s daughter.

NOTE. More rarely, in the latter case, the generic article may be attached to the *nomen rectum*, as خُبْزُ الشَّعِيرِ barley bread

124. The genitive cannot be separated from the governing word (*nomen regens*); adjectival and other additions must therefore stand *after* the genitive, as بَيْتُ الْمَلِكِ الْوَاسِعُ the spacious house of the king. When, according to our idiom, a genitive belongs to two substantives, in Arabic it is made dependent on the first of the two, and represented with the second by a personal pronoun, as رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ the mercy and blessings of God.

125. Substantives conveying the idea of time sometimes receive a specially strong determination by the addition of suffixes (cf. § 118 *a*), as صَلَّى لَيْلَهُ he prayed his night, i. e. the particular night in which he then was.

126. The close connection of two nouns thus standing in the genit. relation makes sometimes possible their fusion to *one* idea, although only the first component admits of inflection. Thus عَبْدُ اللَّهِ (gen. عَبْدِ اللَّهِ; acc. عَبْدَ اللَّهِ) the servant of Allah, as a proper name, conveys but a single idea. Further illustrations will be found in the numerous examples of composite proper names, of which one of the elements is one or other of the words ابْنُ son, أَبُ father, بِنْتُ daughter, أُمُّ mother.

As the Arabs have no family names, properly so-called, the name of a man or woman receives for distinction's sake an addition by the help of the above words, as ^{أَبُو} ^{الْعَبَّاسِ} ^{حَمْدُ} ^{بْنُ} ^{يَزِيدَ} (observe the order). Very frequently a name thus made up has become the principal name, as that of the first Caliph ^{أَبُو} ^{بَكْرٍ}, for example, or that of the savant ^{إِبْنُ} ^{قَتَيْبَةَ}; names of tribes, too, like ^{بَنُو} ^{كَلْبٍ}, are in the same way simple notions (Einheitsbegriffe).

Not unfrequently an adjective which in our idiom 127. would be made to qualify its substantive, is in Arabic raised to the rank of a substantive, on which its proper substantive is made to depend; thus ^{كَرِيمُ} ^{خُلُقِهِ} the noble(ness) of his character = his noble character; ^{أَكْثَرُ} ^{النَّاسِ} most men. The same construction is found with elatives also, as ^{عَاشُوا} ^{أَهْوَنَ} ^{عِيشَةٍ} they lived the easiest life (cf. § 109).

A species of explicative genitive is found in cases 128. where a general conception is more explicitly defined by a following proper name, as ^{أَرْضُ} ^{الْيَمَنِ} the land of Yemen.—Under this head may be reckoned the suffixes appended to numerals, as ^{ثَلَاثَتُهُمْ} the three of them.

129. A few words containing the ideas of time and place may have, instead of a genitive, a whole clause depending on them, as **يَوْمَ قَتَلَ** on the day on which he was killed.

130. When a noun on which another noun is in the proper sense (cf. § 134) dependent must remain absolutely undetermined (see § 123), the usual genitive relation of *nomen regens* and *nomen rectum* is inadmissible, and the connection of the two must be expressed by a preposition, as **أَخُكُمْ** a brother of yours, where **أَخُ** is attrib. adjunct to **كُمْ** (see § 121 a).

131. *Infinitives* may govern their object according to the laws either of verbal or of nominal government. In the first instance their *subject* is subordinated in the genitive; **قَتَلَ زَيْدٌ** accordingly means: the circumstance that Zaid has killed. If no subject is named, the object may likewise stand in the genitive, so that the same expression **قَتَلَ زَيْدٌ** may also mean: the circumstance that Zaid has been killed, the fact of Zaid's being killed. When both subject and object are present, the former is treated as a subjective genitive; the latter remains in the accusative or **لِ** with the genitive is used as a periphrasis for the accusative, as **مَدَاوَمَتُهُ شَرَبَ الْخَمْرِ**

the circumstance that he was constantly drinking wine; حَيِّ لِيْخْمَرِ the circumstance that I am fond of wine. لِيْ also stands after an undetermined infinitive (e. g. in cases like § 113 *d* and others) as تَمَتُّ اِكْرَامًا I stood up to do honour to Zaid.

In the case of the participle, the object of the 132. verb appears as the objective genitive, and when the part. has the sense of the perfect it is determined by the genitive following, as اَللّٰهُ خَالِقُ الْاَرْضِ God is he who has created the earth = the creator of the earth. With a present or future sense the governing participle is not determined, as كُلُّ نَفْسٍ ذَائِقَةُ الْمَوْتِ every soul is one that will taste of death; اِنَّهُ مُلَاقِيْكُمْ he is one that will meet with you. If the participle is in itself determined, the object stands in the accusative or is expressed periphrastically with لِيْ, as الطَّالِبُ لِيْلَعْلَمِ he who strives after knowledge; the same applies when the participle is strictly undetermined, as طَالِبٌ تَارٌّ اَبِيْهِ one who wishes to take blood revenge for his father; مَا زِلْتُ مُحِبًّا لِّلْاِسْلَامِ I have not ceased to love Islam.

133. A special idiomatic use of certain generic words is their combination with a following genitive. They are determined or undetermined according to the context, e. g. **ذُو** he who has, possessor of (cf. § 90*l*), **ذُو مَالٍ** the possessor of wealth, a rich man; **صَاحِبٌ** companion, owner, **صَاحِبُ عَقْلٍ** the man of sense; **أَهْلٌ** people, **أَهْلُ الدُّنْيَا** people of the world=worldly people; **بَعْضُ** portion, e. g. **بَعْضُ الْعُلَمَاءِ** one, some of the learned; **غَيْرٌ** prop. change, then 'another than', as **مَاتَ الْمَلِكُ فَمَلَكَ بَعْدَهُ غَيْرُهُ** the king died and another than he reigned after him; similarly **أَحَدٌ** one, as **أَحَدُهُمْ** one of them; finally **ابْنٌ** son, in certain common idioms, as **ابْنُ ثَلَاثِينَ سَنَةً** thirty years old.

134. A special kind of genitive relation is presented by the so-called *improper* annexation, by which a participle or a verbal adjective (see § 60*b*) is more strictly limited or defined by a following genitive, as **رَجُلٌ حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ** a man beautiful of countenance. This construction is best rendered by a relative clause, the subject of which will be the word that more clearly defines the governing idea, in other words the genitive of the Arabic will be the nominative of the English, a man whose countenance is beautiful. In such a case

the governing word is *not* determined by the following genitive; should the latter require to be determined, it may receive the *article* (contrary to the rule in § 123) as الرَّجُلُ الْحَسَنُ الْوَجْهَ the man of the beautiful countenance, i. e. whose countenance is beautiful.

Chapter IV. The Simple Sentence. (§§ 135—151).

Sentences in Arabic are of two kinds, *verbal* and 135. † *nominal*.

The chief characteristic of a *verbal sentence* is the fact that it always contains a finite verb; in fact, a verb of this kind with its inherent (subject) pronoun is in itself a complete verbal sentence, as ضَرَبْتَ thou hast struck. This type of sentence always expresses the *commencement of some activity*, understood in the widest sense. If a special exponent of the idea conveyed by the subject of the verb is added, it *follows* the verb in the case appropriate to the subject, *viz.* the nominative, as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ he has struck, Zaid (has) = Zaid has struck, whereby Zaid is singled out as the agent.

In the *verbal sentence*, the finite verb does not 136. — always agree in gender and number with the following

subject. The following are the chief points to be noted in this connection:

- a. The verb stands in the *masculine singular* before sound or outer plurals, and generally before the masc. forms of the dual.
- b. The verb stands in the *feminine singular* 1) before a sing. fem. if it follows the verb immediately, 2) before sound plurals feminine, 3) before the fem. forms of the dual, and 4) before broken plurals (cf. next sub-section).
- c. The verb stands in the *masculine or feminine singular* 1) before a sing. fem. not immediately following the verb, 2) before collectives, 3) before broken plurals denoting male persons; if these plurals do not immediately follow the verb, the latter in most cases takes the masc. singular form.
- d. Once the subject is introduced, the verbs following agree with it in gender and number, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَخَالِدٌ وَعَبْدُ اللَّهِ وَقَالُوا there came Zaid, Hālid and ‘Abdallah and they said. After collectives also the verb, in such a case, often takes the plural, as مَضَتْ الْغِلْمَانُ يَتَّبِعُونَهُ the young people set out to follow him. So too after words like قَوْمٌ and others. Still it is always possible for the verb to remain in the singular, as وَقَرِيشٌ

تَحْبِسُ مَنْ قَدَرْتَ عَلَى حَبْسِهِ and the Kuraishites (the tribe Kuraish) imprisoned whomsoever they could imprison.

A subject unknown, or purposely left unnamed, 137. is treated as follows (cf. French *on dit*, German *man sagt*):

1) The verb is put in the 3. pers. sing. of the *a.* passive (see § 103), as يُسَارُّ إِلَيْهِ they journey to him. It is to be noted that this impersonal passive can never stand without a complement (here إِلَيْهِ).

2) Or in the 3. pers. plur. of the active, as قَالُوا *b.* they said.

3) Or in the 2. pers. sing. (or plur.) of the active, *c.* e. g. in the Kūr'ān أَرَأَيْتَ or أَرَأَيْتُمْ dost thou think? do ye think? where it is not any particular persons that are addressed, but people in general, as much as to say 'could any one suppose that . . . ?' تَقُولُ one might say (cf. Eng. 'as you might say').

4) There may be added to the verb a subject *d.* (participle) formed from the same root, as قَالَ قَائِلٌ or قَصْرٌ لَمْ يَرَوْا الرَّائِنَ مِثْلَهُ some one said; a castle, the like of which had never been seen.

NOTE. The case of an undefined complement of a verbal action being expressed by a substantive derived from the verb is

not unfrequently met elsewhere than in the above construction, e. g. لَا يَخَافُونَ لَوْمَةً لَّا تُؤْمِلُ *aliquem (interfectum) interfecit*, they did not fear the reproof of any reprover.

138. Occasionally, out of something that has been mentioned, a story or the like, there arises an indefinite subject corresponding to our "it", which is usually expressed by the feminine of the verb; for example, after a fable or the like, فَدَخَلَتْ مَثَلًا, and it (i. e. this story) passed into a proverb.

139. The *nominal sentence*, in contrast to the verbal sentence, expresses a *state* or *condition* of the subject. This last as a rule stands at the head of the sentence in the case appropriate to the subject, viz. the nominative; in most cases it is determined while the predicate is undetermined. The predicate may consist of one or other of the following:

- a) a simple noun, as زَيْدٌ عَالِمٌ *Zaid is wise*;
- b) a preposition and its case, as الرَّجُلُ فِي الدَّارِ *the man is in the house*;
- c) an adverb, as عَبْدُ اللَّهِ هَهُنَا *'Abdallah is here*.
- d) a complete sentence, which may be either a) a verbal sentence, or β) a nominal sentence; the whole now becomes a compound sentence. Exx.: زَيْدٌ مَرَضٌ *Zaid (he) is ill*; زَيْدٌ مَرَضٌ أَبُوهُ *Zaid, his father is*

ill; β) زَيْدٌ أَبُوهُ مُسِنَّ Zaid, his father is aged (i. e. Zaid's father &c.). The sentence constituting the predicate must contain a pronoun referring back to the subject. The subj. thus placed at the head of the sentence has been wrongly named the nominative absolute.

NOTE. The difficulty we feel in distinguishing between ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ and زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ Zaid has struck, may be explained in this way. In the first of these two expressions it is the act of striking that is uppermost in the speaker's mind, and the enquiry as to the subject or agent from whom the act proceeds is answered with Zaid, on which the logical emphasis now rests. In زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ, on the other hand, we start with Zaid as a given subject or agent, and the question as to what is to be predicated regarding this subject or as to what this agent has done is answered by ضَرَبَ, on which in its turn the logical centre of gravity, so to say, comes to rest.

Between subject and predicate, when both are 140. determined, there ought to stand the pronoun of the 3. person, but this rule is not always observed, as اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّ God is the living One.—Sometimes, also, this pron. merely serves to emphasize the subject.

In negative and interrogative sentences the predi- 141. cate stands before the subject, as أَيْنَ زَيْدٌ where is Zaid? مَا لَكُمْ مِنْ وَلِيٍّ ye have no helper (in which case the subject وَلِيٍّ receives the addition of مِنْ

(= French *du*, &c.) as strengthening the negation). In the same way a predicate consisting of a preposition and its noun, or of an adverb, stands before the subject when the latter is undetermined and is not more precisely defined by any qualifying word or phrase, as ^سفِي الدَّارِ أَمْرًا in the house is a woman; ^{مِنْهُمْ}مَنْ زَعَم among them are some who maintain.

NOTE. A predicate of this sort may even stand before a determined subject, but in that case the logical emphasis is on the subject, as ^{زَيْدٌ}عِنْدِي زَيْدٌ, *Zaid* is with me, while in ^{زَيْدٌ}عِنْدِي the logical stress is on the predicate: *Zaid* is with *me*.

142. Verbal adjectives (§ 60 *b*), in virtue of the verbal idea inherent in them, sometimes stand as predicate *before* the noun in the place of a finite verb, as ^{زَيْدٌ}ضَارِبٌ أَبُوهُ عَمْرًا *Zaid, his father struck Amr* = *Zaid's father* &c. The predicate, thus placed in advance, frequently agrees in gender and number with its subject following, as ^{الْمَوَلَّفَةُ}قُلُوبُهُمْ whose hearts have been inclined (to Islam), but in respect of case it agrees with the word on which this kind of sentence is generally dependent, as ^{بِفَمٍ}عَذْبٍ رِيْقُهُ with a mouth, whose saliva is sweet; ^{رَأَيْنَا}دَوَابَّ مُخْتَلِفَةً الْوَأْنَهَا we found animals, the species of which differed from each other, of different sorts. A circumstantial accusative

(§ 113 *b*) may also, in this way, refer to a following subject, although it is really dependent on the preceding verbs, as **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا أَبُوهُ** Zaid came, while his father rode.

When the subject of a nominal sentence consists 143. of a demonstrative pronoun, the latter agrees in gender with the following predicate, as **هَذِهِ جَارِيَةٌ** this is a female slave.

The predicate of **مَا** not (often also that of **لَيْسَ** 144. §§ 50 and 110, and of **كَانَ** § 110 when occurring with a negative) is introduced by **بِ**, as **مَا هَذَا بِمَلِكٍ** this is no king.

In the relation of subject and predicate (cf. § 119 *a*) 145. may stand in Arabic:

A thing and its dimensions, as **الْعُمُودُ ثَلَاثُونَ ذِرَاعًا** *a.* the pillar is thirty cubits (high).

A thing and that which it resembles, as **الْبَيْعُ مِثْلُ** *b.* selling is the likeness of (is like) usury; and so with **كَانَ** (§ 95 *f*), which likewise may stand in any of the three cases.

A thing and its parts, as **مُلُوكُ الْفَرَسِ أَرْبَعُ طَبَقَاتٍ** *c.* the kings of the Persians fall into four divisions.

- d. A thing and its material ^{بَعْضُ الْأَصَابِعِ حَدِيدٌ} ^{وَبَعْضُهَا خَزَفٌ} one part of the toes was of iron and another of clay.

146. In certain cases a pronoun has to be supplied as subject of a nominal sentence, as ^{يُقَالُ لَهُ مُحَمَّدٌ} it is said of him "he is Muḥammed", i. e. he is called Muḥammed, prop. = ^{هُوَ مُحَمَّدٌ}.

147. The particles ^{إِنَّ} (هِنَّ) behold, and ^{أَنَّ} that (cf. § 96d), the compound particles ^{لَكِنَّ} nevertheless, ^{كَأَنَّ} as if, ^{لِأَنَّ} because, and other combinations, and also ^{لَعَلَّ} perhaps, ^{لَيْتَ} would that, are all followed by a *nominal sentence* the subject of which stands in the *accusative*, as ^{إِنَّ زَيْدًا كَرِيمٌ} behold (truly) Z. is generous. The predicate of the nominal sentence following ^{إِنَّ} or ^{أَنَّ}, if it should consist of an adverb or a preposition with its case (see §§ 139, 141), may stand *before* the subject, which must still be in the accusative, as ^{إِنَّ هُنَا رَجُلًا} verily (only in the rarest cases translatable) here is a man; ^{إِنَّ فِي الْقَلْعَةِ سَجْنًا} in the citadel is a prison.

NOTE. Sometimes a qualifying phrase consisting of a preposition and its case appears, in addition, before the subject, as ^{إِنَّ لِي} ^{إِلَيْكَ حَاجَةً} I have a request (to make) of thee.

The corroborative particle **لَ** (§ 95 *g*) is frequently *b.* prefixed to the predicate after a preceding **إِنَّ**, as **إِنَّ أَبَانَا لَفِي ضَلَالٍ** truly our father is in error; or even to the subject, as **إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةً** truly therein is an example.

After the particles above mentioned, the pronoun *c.* of the 3. pers. sing. masc., as the so-called pronoun of the fact, is sometimes used as the subject of a nominal sentence; the predicate, in this case, consists of a complete sentence (cf. § 139 *d*), as **إِنَّهُ لَا يُفْلِحُ** of a truth (= the fact is), the evil-doers do not prosper; **قِيلَ إِنَّهُ كَانَ لِحَمْدٍ أَرْبَعُ جَوَارٍ** it is related that M. had four female slaves.

While **إِنَّ** introduces a new and independent sen- 148. tence, one introduced by **أَنَّ** always forms part of *a.* another sentence, as **أَلَمْ تَعْلَمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ** knowest thou not that God is mighty over all; here the sentence beginning with **أَنَّ** is really the object. In **لَمْ يَشَكَّ فِي أَنَّهُ أَعْمَى** there has never been any doubt that he is blind, the sentence with **أَنَّ** is virtually in the genitive; in **بَلَغَنِي أَنَّهُ تَزَوَّجَ** it has reached my ears that he is married, it represents the subject.

- b. Verbal sentences introduced by [°]أَنْ also form in this way an integral part of the principal sentence; a distinction must be made, however, between two varieties of this construction. If the sentence beginning with [°]أَنْ asserts that something is now going on, or that it has now ceased, the verb in the subordinate clause remains in the indicative, as عَجِبْتُ مِنْ أَنْ (or simply عَلَى أَنْ) يَخْرُجُ I am surprised that he takes the field against me, فَفَعَلُوا ذَلِكَ إِلَى أَنْ مَاتُوا and they did this until they died; if, on the other hand, something is conceived as falling in the future and therefore still uncertain, the subjunctive (cf. § 100) is required, as لَكَ أَنْ تَفْعَلَ كَذَا it falls to thee to do so, يَنْبَغِي أَنْ تَحْذَرَ مِنَ الْفَوَاحِشِ it is fit and proper that thou shouldst guard against shameful actions.

NOTE. Sometimes the preposition which indicates the relation of the two parts of the sentence is omitted before [°]أَنْ and [°]أَنْ, as [°]أَنْ = ذَلِكَ لِأَنَّ this was for the reason that, and it was so, because &c.

- c. In the cases discussed in the above sub-section an infinitive may take the place of [°]أَنْ with the finite verb. Quite as frequently as [°]أَنْ in such cases, we find مَا with the finite verb (of course always in the

indicative), as *عَجِبْتُ مِمَّا ضَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا* I am surprised that thou hast struck Zaid = *مِنْ ضَرْبِكَ زَيْدًا*. The use of this so-called infinitive-*mā* is very common; thus we have it in *كَمَا* (as)—made up of *كَ* and *مَا*—with a verbal sentence: *ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ كَمَا ضَرَبَ عَمْرُو* Zaid was beaten as 'Amr was beaten.

When more than one predicate is required in a 149 nominal sentence, they generally follow each other without a conjunction (cf. §§ 122, 113*b*, note *b*), as *إِنِّي حَفِيزٌ عَلِيمٌ* I am attentive and well-informed. The same is the case with the predicates of the verb *كَانَ* (which frequently occurs as the substantive verb) and the verbs akin thereto (see § 110), as *إِنَّ الْمَمْلَكَةَ تَصِيرُ آخِرَ الْوَقْتِ مُخْتَلِطَةً مُخْتَلِفَةً بَعْضُهَا قَوِيٌّ وَبَعْضُهَا ضَعِيفٌ* the kingdom will in the latter days become mixed and a prey to dissension, and one of which one part will be strong and another weak.

In negative verbal sentences we find *مَا* with the 150. perfect, as *مَا شَرِبَ* he did not drink, or *لَمْ* with the ^{a.} apocopated impf. (jussive, cf. § 101 *c*).

With the impf. indicative *مَا* is used, as *مَا يَشْرَبُ* ^{b.}

مَا perf. imperf. indic.

لَمْ - apoc. impf.

مَا perf. apoc. impf.

1. 122, 113

77-100

he does not drink, or لَا with the same tense لَا يَشْرَبُ he does not, or he will not drink.

Other uses of لَا are (a) with the apoc. impf. (cf. § 101 b) and (b) with the perfect (cf. § 98 d). As negating an act in the past لَا can only stand before the perfect when two perfects come together, as لَا صَدَّقَ وَلَا صَلَّى he neither believed nor prayed, or after sentences with other negatives.

NOTE. A preceding negative, even in the same sentence, is frequently resumed by means of لَا, as لَا صَاحِبَهُ لَا يَجِدُ الْقَرْيَةَ وَلَا صَاحِبَهُ he did not find the village nor yet his friend again.

151. After the exceptive particle إِلَّا that which is excepted stands in the *accusative* when a positive sentence precedes, as جَاءَ النَّاسُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا the people came, except Zaid; when a negative sentence precedes that which is excepted is less frequently in the accusative, but rather, as a rule, in the same case as the word to which the limitation or exception applies, as مَا جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ the people came not, except Zaid; مَا مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ I passed no one except Z.; مَا ضَرَبْتُ أَحَدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا I have struck no one, except Amr. Very frequently in such cases it is the exception that brings us the necessary logical complement, as

مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ I have not passed (anyone) except Zaid, i. e. I have passed only Zaid.

NOTE. Also in the sentence لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ (§ 111) there is no God but Allah, the last word is in the nominative, because it is the logical subject (there is no God, if not Allah; but Allah is). In the sentence لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ there is neither power nor strength except (in union) with Allah, the high and mighty One, the ideas of power and strength (حَوْلٌ وَقُوَّةٌ) must logically be supplied before the exception.

Chapter V. Compound Sentence. (§§ 152—161).

Co-ordinate sentences are as a rule joined together 152. by a copulative particle. Thus a simple co-ordinated sentence is usually introduced by وَ (§ 95*i*), as دَخَلَ Z. entered and said. فَ (§ 95*e*), on the other hand, is used when the connection of the two sentences is less close, when, for example, the second event follows the first only after a certain interval, as مَرَضَ زَيْدٌ فَتَوَفَّى Zaid was ill; soon after he died. فَ, accordingly, is often used when the subject is changed, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ Zaid came; and so I said to him. فَإِنَّ with a following nominal sentence expresses the motive of the action and is to be rendered by 'then', 'therefore'.

NOTE a. In lively narrative prose the connective particles are often dispensed with, particularly when the story is told in dialogue form, the words of each speaker being then mostly introduced by a simple **قَالَ**.

NOTE b. As illustration of the omission of the connectives (asyndeton) must not be quoted certain combinations of two verbs (cf. § 99 note a), in which the second verb denotes rather the end to which some more general activity is directed; such, for example, is the imperfect with verbs denoting a beginning. In other cases, a perfect may be made to depend on a perfect, an imperfect on an imperfect, an imperative on an imperative, as **فَمِ اُخْطَبَهَا** they arose and fought with each other; **فَامُوا تَقَاتَلُوا** arise and woo her.

NOTE c. Among the connective particles **حَتَّى** may also, in a certain sense, be reckoned, when it does not introduce a result expected in the future (§ 100), but denotes the actual completion of an action, as in the sentence **سَارَ حَتَّى نَزَلَ مَكَّةَ** he journeyed until he alighted at Mecca = he journeyed and at last alighted &c. In such cases **حَتَّى** may also be followed by an imperf. indicative or by **إِنْ** with a nominal sentence.

153. *Relative sentences* or clauses are of two kinds, those which do not accompany a noun and those which do accompany and qualify a noun. As regards the asyndetical connection of several qualifications, the latter class is subject to the same treatment as the qualifying adjuncts discussed in §§ 120—122.

154. Those relative sentences that do not depend on or qualify a noun are introduced either by **الَّذِي** (see § 14a) he that, that which, whoso, &c., which is

declinable and always determined, or by the indeclinable pronouns مَنْ (he that, one that, whosoever, those that, such . . . as) and مَا (that which, a thing that, what). The former is sometimes determined, sometimes undetermined. Exx: الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِنَا هُمْ أَصْحَابُ الْمَشْأَمَةِ those that reject our revelations, they will be the people of the left hand (الَّذِينَ is here in the nom. as being the subject); اَسْجُدْ لِمَنْ خَلَقْتَ طِينًا (the devil said:) Shall I fall down before one whom thou hast formed of clay (مَنْ is here in the genit.)? يَقُولُونَ بِأَفْوَاهِهِمْ مَا لَيْسَ بِقُلُوبِهِمْ they speak with their mouth what is not in their hearts (مَا is here accus.).

A relative clause is made to follow and qualify 155. a substantive by means of الَّذِي only when the substantive in question (the antecedent) is *determined*; with it الَّذِي agrees in gender and number, as ضَرَبْتُ الَّذِي ضَرَبْتُ the man that came. The explanation of this is that الَّذِي is originally not a relative in our sense of that word, but a demonstrative, and as such it is always determined. The above sentence, for example, means, strictly speaking: I struck that man there, he came. On the other hand

the relative clause is appended *without* الَّذِي when the antecedent is undetermined, as ضَرَبْتُ رَجُلًا جَاءَ I struck a man who came (prop. I struck a man, he came).

NOTE. الَّذِي is also dispensed with when the antecedent is only determined in a general sense (i. e. when it has the generic article see § 118c), as كَمَثَلِ الْاِحْمَارِ يَحْمِلُ اَسْفَارًا like an ass that carries books.

156. The relative clause, which we have seen to be strictly speaking merely a verbal or a nominal sentence subordinated to an antecedent noun, ought by rule to contain a pronoun referring back to this antecedent, as الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي أَبُوهُ غَنِيٌّ the man whose father is rich; كَانَ لَهُ ابْنٌ سَمِيَ مُحَمَّدًا he had a son, who was named M. (in this case the pronoun is implied in the verb); رَجُلٌ يُقَالُ لَهُ زَيْدٌ a man who is named Z. (prop. of whom it is said: [he is] Zaid, cf. § 146). The pronoun which in this way points back to the antecedent may stand in any part of the relative sentence; thus in the sentence قَدْ قَرَّبَ إِلَيْهِ الْجَيْشُ the army had come up close to him, regarding which he thought that it was still at a distance, it does not appear till we reach the sentence which is subordinated by أَنَّ to the verb ظَنَّ.

Collectives which denote living creatures (cf. § 136 *d*) may be followed here also by a plural verb, as قَوْمٌ يُؤْمِنُونَ people that believe.

NOTE a. The omission of the pronoun, however, is not unfrequent, especially when it would merely consist of a suffix of the 3. person, as قُلْتُ نَدِمْتُ عَلَى مَا قُلْتُ for قُلْتُ I regret what I said.

NOTE b. In certain cases the antecedent may be repeated in the relative clause; indeed, this is the favourite construction with كُلُّ as كَانَ عِنْدَ هُبَلٍ قِدَاحٌ سَبْعَةٌ كُلُّ قِدَحٍ مِنْهَا فِيهِ كِتَابٌ the (idol) Hubal had seven arrows (for casting the lot), of which each single arrow had writing upon it.

A special kind of subordinate sentence is the 157. *circumstantial clause*. Such a clause may consist:

1) Of a *nominal sentence* introduced by the particle *a*. وَ, the subject of which may have been already mentioned or may be something quite new, as مَاتَتْ أَمِينَةُ وَهِيَ رَاجِعَةٌ إِلَى مَكَّةَ Amina died while she was returning to Mecca; مَاتَ زَيْدٌ وَابْنُهُ صَغِيرٌ Zaid died while his son was still young; with a compound nominal sentence سَارَ وَهُوَ يَقْصِدُ الْمَدِينَةَ he journeyed taking Medina as his goal. A sentence, whose predicate consisting of a preposition and its case comes before its subject, acc. to § 141, may stand as a circumstantial clause, *without* وَ, as خَرَجْتُ (وَ) فِي يَدَيَّ قَوْسٌ I went out with a bow in my hand.

- b. 2) Of a *verbal sentence* frequently; in this case the imperf. either stands alone or is preceded by **وَقَدْ**. When the sentence is a negative one, the negative is **لَا** or **وَمَا**; or the verb may stand in the apoc. impf. with **لَمْ** or **وَلَمْ** (as the negation of the perf.). We may also have the perfect with **وَقَدْ** or **وَكَانَ**, when negative with **وَمَا**; thus we get the following: **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَضْحَكُ** Z. came laughing; **وَكَانَتْ** **قَالَ أَنَّى يَكُونُ لِي غُلَامٌ** **وَكَانَتْ** Z. came laughing; **وَقَدْ بَلَغْتُ مِنَ الْكِبَرِ عِتِيًّا** (Zakariya) said: how shall I have a male child, seeing my wife is barren and I have reached too great an age; **دَخَلَ** **الْبَيْتَ لَا يُسَلِّمُ عَلَى** he entered the room without greeting me.

NOTE. In contrast to the stiffer accusative of condition (§ 113 b) the verbal circumstantial clause expresses the commencement of the action; there is very little difference, however, between **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ ضَاحِكًا** and **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَضْحَكُ**.

158. In *temporal* clauses (also in conditional clauses)
- a. which are formed with the particle **إِذَا** when, if, we find in the protasis as well as in the apodosis the perfect in the sense of our present or future, **إِذَا رَآهُ يَخْبِي** when John takes the thing in hand, **الْأَمْرَ ذَلَّتْ صِعَابُهُ** its difficulties are easily surmounted.

NOTE a. The imperfect may also stand after إِذَا if the action takes place repeatedly. Should إِذَا be followed by a compound nominal sentence, as إِذَا الْبَحْرِ سَعَرَتْ when hell is heated, it is considered that this is but another way of writing what we should expect to find expressed in a verbal sentence (and so with إِنَّ).

NOTE b. A sentence with إِذَا may also be inserted between two closely related words, or rather it is to be regarded as forming with its apodosis a complete unity. Thus: فَاتَّهَمَا بَابَانَ إِذَا فُتِحَا there were two gates, which when they were opened could not be shut (again). In the apodosis to إِذَا a perfect is found where we should expect an imperfect (cf. § 99c), as كَانُوا إِذَا أَسْرُوا رَجُلًا وَأَطْلَقُوا جُزْرًا نَاصِيَتَهُ they were wont, when they captured a man and then released him, to cut off his front lock of hair. Very frequently a sentence like this, with إِذَا, is inserted between حَتَّى (§ 152 note c) and its proper verb, as تَبِعْتُهُ حَتَّى إِذَا دَخَلَ الدَّارَ أَتَيْتُهُ I followed him until I overtook him as he entered the house.

مَا in the sense of 'so long as' takes the perfect, as مَا أَنَا شَاكِرٌ so long as I live I shall be thankful.

In sentences containing the notion of a *condition* 159. which is the case after إِنْ if, مَنِ if anybody, مِمَّا if anything, مَهْمَا whatsoever, كَيْفَ مَا, كَيْفَ how, howsoever, مَتَى when &c. the perf. is used in the sense of our present or future, and so too in the apodosis, as إِنْ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ هَلَكَتَ if thou doest that, thou

wilt perish; **مَنْ جَالَ نَالَ** whoso seeketh, findeth (if any one seeks, he finds).

NOTE. If the perf. is meant to retain its proper force in the protasis, the verb **كَانَ** is placed after **إِنْ**, as **إِنْ كَانَ قَمِيصُهُ قَدْ مَنَّ** if his camisole is torn in front, she has told the truth.

160. The particles above mentioned may also take the

a. apoc. impf. in protasis and apodosis alike, as **إِنْ تَصْبِرُوا** if ye wait patiently, God will help you.

b. The apoc. impf. also stands in the apodosis after an imperative (with conditional force) in the protasis, as **عِشْ قَنِعًا تَكُنْ مَلِكًا** live contentedly (i. e. if thou live &c.) thou wilt be a king.

c. An apoc. impf. in the protasis may be followed by a perfect in the apodosis, as **إِنْ تَصْبِرْ ظَفِرْتَ** if thou wait patiently, thou wilt gain the victory. If the clauses are both negative, we have **لَمْ** with the apoc. impf., as **إِنْ لَمْ يَبْرَحْ لَمْ أَرْضَ** if he does not go away, I am not satisfied.

NOTE. Occasionally the apodosis of a conditional sentence is wanting, e. g. **إِنْ كَانَ هَذَا** if this is so—supply: then it is well (Arab. **قَبْهًا**).

161. Before the apodoses of conditional sentences, other than those discussed in § 159—160 we find the particle **فَ**, which is employed:

1) When the apodosis is a nominal sentence, as *a.*
 إِنَّ عَصَى فَوَيْلَ لَهُ if he is refractory, then alas for him! Also before sentences with إِنَّ and before interrogative sentences.

2) When the apodosis is a verbal sentence, of which *b.*
 the perfect is intended to retain its force as a perfect (cf. § 159 note), especially, too, when قَدْ (cf. § 98*e*) is employed, as إِنَّ اسْلَمُوا فَقَدْ اهْتَدَوْا وَإِنْ تَوَلَّوْا is employed, as إِنَّ اسْلَمُوا فَقَدْ اهْتَدَوْا وَإِنْ تَوَلَّوْا if they become Moslems, then have they come to the right way, and if they turn aside, then thou hast but to announce the message.

3) When the apodosis is a verbal sentence that con- *c.*
 tains an impf. with one of the particles سَوْفَ, سَ, لَنْ, or that expresses a command or a wish, as إِنَّ كُنْتَ if thou findest thyself among people, milk into their pail.

APPENDIX.

COMPUTATION OF TIME.

a. Names of the Days of the Week.

In the following list the various names may also be used with the word for day, *يَوْمٌ* omitted.

1. *يَوْمُ الْاَحَدِ* (1st day) Sunday.
2. *يَوْمُ الْاِثْنَيْنِ* (2nd day) Monday.
3. *يَوْمُ الْاَثَلَاثَاءِ* (3rd day) Tuesday.
4. *يَوْمُ الْاَرْبَعَاءِ* (4th day) Wednesday.
5. *يَوْمُ الْخَمِيسِ* (5th day) Thursday.
6. *يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ* (day of assembly) Friday.
7. *يَوْمُ السَّبْتِ* (Sabbath) Saturday.

b. Names of the Months.

In the names of the months the word *شَهْرٌ*, month, may be prefixed in the constr. state throughout; indeed, as the following table shows, some of the names are always so written.

1. ^{اَلْمُحَرَّمُ} al-Muḥarram.
2. ^{صَفَرٌ} Ṣafar.
3. ^{شَهْرُ رَبِيعِ الْأَوَّلِ} the first Rabīʿ.
4. ^{شَهْرُ رَبِيعِ الثَّانِي} the second Rabīʿ.
5. ^{جُمَادَى الْأُولَى} the first Ġumādā.
6. ^{جُمَادَى الْآخِرَةِ} the latter Ġumādā.
7. ^{رَجَبٌ} Raġab.
8. ^{شَعْبَانٌ} Šaʿbān.
9. ^{رَمَضَانُ} Ramaḍān (the month of fasting).
10. ^{شَوَّالٌ} Šawwāl.
11. ^{ذُو الْقَعْدَةِ} Du-lkaʿda.
12. ^{ذُو الْحِجَّةِ} Du-lhiġġa (month of the pilgrimage, ḥaġġ).

c. The Year.

The Moslems reckon by lunar years of 354 days; their first year is usually considered as beginning at the date of the Christian era given below. In calculating from one era to the other, it may be reckoned that 33 solar years are equal to 34 lunar years.

In the works of European scholars it is customary, by means of comparative tables, to give the precise day of our era with which each Moslem year begins (see the Bibliography). The following short table will be useful in helping to a rapid approximation of the date required.

The Moslem year	1 began	16. July	622 A. D.
" " "	101 "	24. July	719 " "
" " "	201 "	30. July	816 " "
" " "	301 "	7. Aug.	913 " "
" " "	401 "	15. Aug.	1010 " "
" " "	501 "	22. Aug.	1107 " "
" " "	601 "	29. Aug.	1204 " "
" " "	701 "	6. Sept.	1301 " "
" " "	801 "	13. Sept.	1398 " "
" " "	901 "	21. Sept.	1495 " "
" " "	1001 "	8. Oct.	1592 " "
" " "	1101 "	15. Oct.	1689 " "
" " "	1201 "	24. Oct.	1786 " "
" " "	1301 "	2. Nov.	1883 " "
" " "	1313 "	24. June	1895 " "

LITERATURE.

A history of Arabic literature as a whole, or even of particular parts of it, does not exist, for the work of Hammer-Purgstall (*Litteraturgeschichte der Araber, von ihrem Beginn bis zu Ende des zwölften Jahrhunderts der Hidschret.* 7 Bände. Wien 1850—56. 4^o.) must be described as premature and as useless by reason of its numerous mistakes. An acquaintance with Arabic literature must therefore be got partly from works by Arabs on the history of their literature, partly from European catalogues. In the course of the present century numerous works, including not a few specimens of the earlier literature, have been printed in the East, especially in Cairo (government press in Būlaq), Beirūt (where there is an excellent press managed by the Jesuits) and Constantinople; also in Persia, India and the island of Java. We must, in particular, mention the great quantity of valuable Arabic manuscripts that still await publication both in European and eastern libraries. A synopsis of such catalogues of these MSS. as have hitherto appeared will be found below.

In the following selection, books of special importance are marked with a star, those recommended to beginners with a dagger.

A. BIBLIOGRAPHY.

I. Printed Works.

a Written by Orientals.

*Kitāb al-Fihrist (by *Ibn abī Yaʿqūb an-nadīm*; wrote in the year 377 H., beg. 3. May 987) mit Anmerkungen herausgegeben von *Gustav Flügel*. Nach dessen Tode besorgt von *Johannes Rödiger* und *August Müller*. 2 voll. Leipzig 1871—2.

*Lexicon bibliographicum et encyclopaedicum a Mustapha ben Abdallah Katib Jelibi dicto et nomine *Haji Khalfa* (*Ḥaǧǧi Ḥalīfa* † 1658) celebrato compositum. Ad codicum Vindobonesium Parisiensium et Berolinensis fidem primum edidit latine vertit et commentario indicibusque instruxit *Gustavus Flügel*. Leipzig-London 1835—1858. 7 voll. 4^o.

3 Written by Europeans.

Bibliotheca arabica. Auctam nunc atque integram edidit *D. Christianus Fridericus de Schnurrer*. Halae ad Salam 1811.

†Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. I. contenant les livres arabes, persans et turcs imprimés depuis l'invention de l'imprimerie jusqu'à nos jours tant en Europe qu'en Orient etc. par *J. Th. Zenker*. Leipzig 1846. — Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. II. contenant 1. supplément du premier volume. 2. Littérature de l'Orient chrétien. 3. Littérature de l'Inde etc. Par *J. Th. Zenker*. Leipzig 1861.

†(Euting) Katalog der kaiserlichen Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek in Strassburg. Arabische Litteratur. Strassburg 1877. 4^o.

Bibliographie des ouvrages arabes ou relatifs aux Arabes publiés dans l'Europe chrétienne de 1810 à 1885 par *Victor Chauvin*. I. Préface. — Table de Schnurrer. — Les Proverbes. Liège 1892 (is being continued).

Wissenschaftlicher Jahresbericht über die morgenländischen Studien, von 1844 an in Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft Leipzig 1847 ff. The annual reports on works published up to 1858 appeared in the *Zeitschrift*, those for the years 1859—61, 62—67 (one part), autumn 1877—81 appeared as independent publications.

Bibliotheca orientalis oder eine vollständige Liste der im Jahre 1876 in Deutschland, Frankreich, England und den Colonien erschienenen Bücher, Broschüren, Zeitschriften, u. s. w. über die Sprachen, Religionen, Antiquitäten, Literaturen, Geschichte und Geographie des Ostens, zusammengestellt von *Karl Friederici*. Leipzig. 8 years (to 1883).

Bibliography for 1883—85 (not completed) in the *Literatur-Blatt für orientalische Philologie* unter Mitwirkung von Dr. Johannes Klatt herausgegeben von Prof. Dr. *Ernst Kuhn*. 1883—85.

*Orientalische Bibliographie . . . herausgegeben von *A. Müller*, now *E. Kuhn*. Berlin 1888 ff.

Katalog der Bibliothek der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. I. Druckschriften und Ähnliches. Leipzig 1880 (a new and largely augmented edition will appear in a year or two).

A. G. Ellis, Catalogue of the Arabic books in the British Museum Vol I. A-L. London 1894.

For works from oriental presses an important guide is: *E. J. Brill*, Catalogue périodique de livres orientaux I—IX, Leide 1883 ff. (To parts I—VII Index de noms d'auteurs et de noms de livres, ib. 1889).

II. Manuscripts.

- (Die Handschriftenverzeichnisse der königlichen Bibliothek in Berlin. Vols. 7 ff.). Verzeichniss der arabischen Handschriften von *W. Ahlwardt*. 4^o. 1. Band. Berlin 1887; 2. Bd. 1889; 3. Bd. 1891; 4. Bd. 1892; 5. Bd. 1893; 6. Bd. 1894. A 7th and last vol. will appear soon.
- (Halle) Katalog der Bibliothek der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. II. Handschriften u. s. w. Leipzig 1881.
- Verzeichnis der orientalischen Handschriften der Bibliothek des Halle'schen Waisenhauses von *Fr. Aug. Arnold* und *August Müller*. (Programm der Lateinischen Hauptschule). Halle 1876. 4^o.
- (University Library, Leipzig) Die Refaïya. Von Prof. *Fleischer*: Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. 8, S. 573—584.
- (Municipal Library in Leipzig) Catalogus librorum manuscriptorum, qui in bibliotheca senatoria civitatis Lipsiensis asservantur, ed. Naumann. Codices orientalium linguarum descripserunt *H. O. Fleischer* et *Fr. Delitzsch*. Grimmae 1838. 4^o.
- Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum orientalium Bibliothecae regiae *Dresdensis*. Scripsit et indicibus instruxit *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1831. 4^o.
- Die arabischen Handschriften der herzoglichen Bibliothek zu Gotha. Verzeichnet von *Wilhelm Pertsch*. 5 Bände. Gotha 1878—1892. (Also w. the title: Die orientalischen Handschriften der h. B. zu G. Dritter Theil).
- Die arabischen Handschriften der K. Hof- und Staatsbibliothek in München, beschrieben von *Joseph Aumer*. München 1866. (Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum Bibliothecae regiae Monacensis. Tomi primi pars secunda.)
- (Tübingen University Library) Catalog arabischer Handschriften in Damaskus gesammelt von *J. G. Wetzstein*. Berlin 1863.
- Catalogus librorum manuscriptorum orientalium in bibliotheca academica *Bonnensi* servatorum adornavit *Joannes Gildemeister*. Bonnae 1864—1876. 4^o.
- Katalog der hebräischen, arabischen, persischen und türkischen Handschriften der kaiserlichen Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek zu Strassburg. Bearbeitet von *S. Landauer*. Strassburg 1881. 4^o.
- Die arabischen, persischen und türkischen Handschriften der kaiserlich-königlichen Hofbibliothek zu Wien. Von *Gustav Flügel*. 3 Bände. Wien 1865—7. 4^o.
- (Copenhagen) Codices orientales Bibliothecae regiae Havniensis enumerati et descripti a *N. L. Westergaard* etc. II. Codices hebr. et arab. Hafniae 1851.

- Codices Orientales bibliothecae regiae universitatis *Lundensis* recensuit *Carolus Johannes Tornberg*. Lundae 1850.
- Codices Arabici, Persici et Turcici bibliothecae regiae universitatis *Upsaliensis*. Disposuit et descripsit *C. T. Tornberg*. Upsaliae 1849. 4^o.
- (*Paris*) Catalogue des manuscrits arabes de la Bibliothèque Nationale par le Baron *de Slane*. Pr. Fascicule. Paris 1883. Sec. Fasc. 1889. Trois. Fasc. 1895. 4^o. (To be continued.)
- Catalogue général des manuscrits des bibliothèques publiques de France. Départements. Tome VI (p. 437—482). Marseille. Par *M. l'abbé Albanès*. Paris 1892. — Tome XVIII. Alger. Par *E. Fagnan*. Paris 1893.
- (*Leide*) Catalogus codicum orientalium Bibliothecae academiae *Lugduno Batavae* I. II. auctore *R. P. A. Dozy*. III. IV. auct. *P. de Jong* et *M. J. de Goeje*. V. auctore *M. J. de Goeje*. VI. auctore *M. Th. Houtsma*. *Lugduni Batavorum* 1851—77. — Editio secunda. Vol. I auctoribus *M. J. de Goeje* et *M. Th. Houtsma*. *Lugduni Bat.* 1888.
- (*London*) Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum orientalium qui in *Museo Britannico* asservantur. Pars secunda codices arabicos amplectens. *Londini* 1846. fol.
- (*London*) Supplement to the Catalogue of the Arabic manuscripts in the British Museum (By *Charles Rieu*). *London* 1894, 4^o.
- (*London*) A catalogue of the Arabic manuscripts in the library of the *India Office*. By *Otto Loth*. *London* 1877. 4^o.
- (*Oxford*) Bibliothecae Bodleianae codicum manuscriptorum orientalium, videlicet hebraicorum, chaldaicorum, syriacorum, aethiopicorum, arabicorum, persicorum, turcicorum, copticorumque catalogus a *Joanne Uri* confectus. Pars Prima *Oxonii* 1787. — Partis secundae volumen primum arabicos complectens confecit *Alexander Nicoll*. *Oxonii* 1821. fol.
- (*Cambridge*) Catalogus Bibliothecae Burckhardtianae cum appendice librorum aliorum orientalium in Bibliotheca Academica *Cantabrigiensis* asservatorum — confecit *T. Preston*. *Cantabrigiae* 1853. 4^o.
- Catalogue of the Oriental Manuscripts in the Library of King's College, *Cambridge*. By *Edward Henry Palmer*: Journal of the Roy. As. Society of Gr. Britain and Ireland. New Series III. 105 ff.
- A descriptive Catalogue of the Arabic, Persian and Turkish Manuscripts in the Library of Trinity College, *Cambridge*. By *E. H. Palmer*. *Cambridge and London* 1870.
- (*Escorial*) Bibliotheca arabico-hispana *Escorialensi* sive Librorum omnium Mss. quos Arabice ab auctoribus magnam partem Arabo-Hispanis compositos Bibliotheca Coenobii *Escorialensis* complectitur

recensio et explanatio operâ et studio *Michaelis Casiri* etc. 2 tomi. Matriti 1760. fol. — Les manuscrits arabes de l'Escorial décrits par *Hartwig Dêrenbourg*. Tome premier. Paris 1884.

Catálogo de los Manuscritos árabes existentes en la Biblioteca Nacional de *Madrid* (*F. G. Roblès*). Madrid 1889.

(*Florence*) Bibliothecae Mediceae Laurentianae et Palatinae Codicum manuscriptorum orientalium catalogus, *Steph. Evod. Assemanus* recensuit. Florentiae 1742. fol.

(*Venice*) Catalogo dei Codici manoscritti orientali della Biblioteca Nániana, compilato dell' abate *Simone Assemani*. 2 Part. Padova 1787—1792. 4^o.

Remarques sur les manuscrits orientaux de la Collection Marsigli a *Bologne* suivies de la liste complète des Manuscrits arabes de la même collection par le Baron *Victor Rosen*. Roma 1885 (atti della R. Accademia dei Lincei. Serie 3^a. Vol. XII).

(*Milan*) Catalogo dei Codici arabi, persiani e turchi della Biblioteca Ambrosiana (*Hammer-Purgstall*): Biblioteca Italiana t. XCIV, pp. 22 and 322.

Cataloghi dei codici orientali di alcune biblioteche d'Italia. 5 fasc. Firenze 1878—1892.

Catalogue des manuscrits et xylographes orientaux de la Bibliothèque Impériale publique de *St. Pétersbourg*. St. Pétersbourg 1852.

(*St. Petersburg*) *B. Dorn*, Catalogue des ouvrages arabes, persans et turcs, publiés à Constantinople, en Egypte et en Perse, qui se trouvent au Musée asiatique de l'Académie. — Chronologisches Verzeichniss der seit dem Jahre 1801 bis 1866 in Kasan gedruckten arabischen, türkischen, tatarischen und persischen Werke, als Katalog der in dem asiatischen Museum befindlichen Schriften: Mélanges asiatiques tirés du Bulletin de l'Académie Impériale des sciences de St. Pétersbourg. Tome V. Livr. 5. St. Pétersbourg 1867.

(*St. Petersburg*) Notices sommaires des manuscrits arabes du Musée asiatique par le Baron *Victor Rosen*. St. Pétersbourg 1881.

(*St. Petersburg*) Les manuscrits arabes de l'Institut des langues orientales décrits par le Baron *Victor Rosen*. St. Pétersbourg 1877.

(*J. M. E. Gottwald*) description of the Arabic Manuscripts in the Library of the Imperial University of *Kasan*. Kasan (no date) [1885]. In Russian.

(*Cairo*) Fihrist al-kutub al-'arabiya al-mahfūza bil-kutubhāna al-hedī-wīye el-kā'ine biserāi derb al-gamāmiz. (Under the management of *Spitta* and *Vollers*.) 7 vols. Cairo 1301—1308. Second Edition. Vol. I 1310.

Catalog der mektebe 'umūmiye in *Damascus*. Damascus 1299. 4^o. Studia Sinaitica No. III. Catalogue of the Arabic Mss. in the Convent of S. Catharine on Mount *Sinai* compiled by *Margaret Dunlop Gibson*. London 1894.

(*Batavia*) *Friedrich*, Codicum arabicorum in Bibliotheca Societatis Artium et Scientiarum quae *Bataviae* floret asservatorum Catalogus. Absolvit indicibusque instruxit *L. W. C. van den Berg*. Bataviae et Hagae 1873.

B. INTRODUCTION.

General.

Borhân-ed-dini es-*Sernûdji* (as-Sarnûgî lived at the end of the 12th century of our era) Enchiridion studiosi. Arabice edidit latine vertit et lexico explanavit *Carolus Caspari*. Praefatus est *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1838. 4^o.

Einleitung in das Studium der Arabischen Sprache bis Mohammed und zum Theil später . . . von *G. W. Freytag*. Bonn 1861.

Orientalische Skizzen. Von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Berlin 1892. Translated, with the title 'Sketches from Eastern History' by *J. S. Black*. London and Edinburgh 1892.

De auctorum graecorum versionibus et commentariis syriacis, arabicis, armeniis persicisque commentatio quam scripsit *Joannes Georgius Wenrich*. Lipsiae 1842. 1845.

C. CHRESTOMATHIES.

*†*R. Brünnow*, Chrestomathy of Arabic Prose-Pieces. Berlin and London 1895.

†Chrestomathia arabica quam e libris Mss. vel impressis rarioribus collectam edidit *Fr. A. Arnold*. Pars I. Textum continens. Pars II. Glossarium continens. Halis 1853.

†Chrestomathie Arabe, ou extraits de divers écrivains Arabes, tant en prose qu'en vers à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes; par *A. J. Sylvestre de Sacy*. II. éd. corr. et augm. Paris 1826. 3 vol.; Tome IV Anthologie grammaticale arabe. Paris 1829.

†Chrestomathie élémentaire de l'Arabe littéral avec un glossaire par *H. Dérenbourg* et *J. Spiro*. 2 ed. Paris 1892.

Joh. Godofr. Lud. Kosegartenii Chrestomathia arabica ex codicibus manuscriptis Paris. Goth. et Berol. collecta atque tum adscriptis vocalibus, cum additis lexico et adnotationibus explanata. Lipsiae 1828.

Georg. Guil. Freytag, Chrestomathia arabica, grammatica historica in usum scholarum Arabicarum ex codd. ineditis conscripta. 8^o maj. Bonnae 1834.

- †Thier und Mensch vor dem König der Genien. Ein arabisches Märchen aus den Schriften der lauterer Brüder in Basra im Urtext herausgegeben von *Fr. Dieterici*. 2. Ausgabe.* Leipzig 1881. — Arabisch-deutsches Wörterbuch zum Koran und Thier und Mensch von *Fr. Dieterici*. 2. Aufl. Leipzig 1894.
- Brevis chrestomathia arabica. In usum scholarum ed. *Joh. Bollig*. Roma 1881.
- Chrestomatia arábigo-española por *Fr. J. Lerchundi y Fr. J. Simonet*. Granada 1881.
- Girgas* and *de Rosen*. Arabic Chrestomathy (in Russian). St. Petersburg 1875, 1876. — Dictionary to the Chrestomathy and to the Koran by *W. Girgas*. Kasan 1881 (in Russian).
- An Arabic reading-book compiled by *W. Wright*. Part first, The texts. London 1870.
- Magānī el-adab fi ḥadāik el-‘arab. 6. Ed. Beirut 1885 ff. Jesuit Press. 6 vols. Šarḥ magānī el-adab (Notes &c.). 4 vols. ib. 1886—8.

D. GRAMMARS &c.

a Written by Orientals.

- **al-Muzhir* fī ‘ulūm el-luġa, philological Encyclopaedia by Ġalāl ad-dīn as-*Suyūfī* († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505, cf. for as-*Suyūfī Goldziher* in den Sitzungsber. d. kais. Akademie der Wiss. zu Wien. Phil.-histor. Cl. LXIX. Bd. 1. S. 7 ff.) Bulak 1282.
- **Le livre de Sībawaihī*, traité de grammaire arabe par Siboūya, dit *Sībawaihī* († 180 H., beg. 16. March 796). Texte arabe publié d’après les manuscrits du Caire, de l’Escorial, d’Oxford, de Paris, de St. Pétersbourg et de Vienne par *Hartwig Derenbourg*. Tome I, Paris 1881. Tome II, Paris 1889. — *Sībawaihī’s* Buch über die Grammatik nach der Ausgabe von H. Derenbourg und dem Commentar des *Sirāfī* übersetzt und erklärt . . . von *G. Jahn*. 1.—8. Lieferung. Berlin 1894. 1895.
- **Al-Mufaṣṣal*, opus de re grammatica arabicum auctore Abu ‘l-Kāsim Mahmūd bin ‘Omar Zamaḥšario (*az-Zamaḥšari* † 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143) ed. *J. P. Broch*. Editio altera. Christianiae 1879. — Also: *Ibn Jā‘iṣ* († 643 H., beg. 29. May 1245) Commentar zu Zamaḥšari’s *Mufaṣṣal*. Nach den Handschriften . . . herausgeg. u. s. w. von Dr. *G. Jahn*. Erster Band. Leipzig, 1882. Zweiter Band. Leipzig 1886. 4⁰.
- **Alfijjah*, Carmen didacticum grammaticum auctore Ibn Mālīk († 672 H., beg. 18. July 1273) et in *Alfijjam* commentarius quem conscripsit Ibn Akil (*Ibn ‘Aḳīl* † 769 H., beg. 28. Aug. 1367) ed. *Fr. Dieterici*. Lipsiae 1851. — Ibn ‘*Aḳīl’s* Commentar zur *Alfijja* des Ibn Malīk Socin, Arabic Grammar.²

aus dem Arabischen zum ersten male übersetzt von *Fr. Dieterici*. Berlin 1852.

al-Ağurrūmiyya, Arabic Grammar by *Ibn Ağurrūm aṣ-Ṣinhāgī* († 723 H., beg. 10. January 1323). Often printed with and without Commentaries. Cf. *E. Trumpp*, Einleitung in das Studium der arabischen Grammatiken. Die Ajrummiyyah des Muhammad bin Daud. München 1876. On this work see *Fleischer* in Zeitschrift der D. Morgenl. Ges. 30 (1876), pp. 487—513; reprinted in Kleinere Schriften II (Leipzig 1888), pp. 75—106. Text also printed in Brünnow's Chrestomathy.

Kāfiya fin-naḥū, Syntax by *Ibn al-Ḥāğib* († 646 H., beg. 26. April 1248). Frequently printed in the East.

Muğni al-labib, Grammar composed by *Ibn Hiṣām al-Anṣārī* († 762 H., beg. 11. Nov. 1360). Another grammatical work by the same author bears the title: Kaṭar an-nadā wa-ball aṣ-ṣadā; a third *Ṣudūr ad-daḥab*. All three works have been frequently printed in the East.

al-Ḥarīrī's († 516 H., beg. 16. July 1143) Durrat al-ğawwās, herausgegeben von *Heinrich Thorbecke*. Leipzig 1871. (On errors of speech). With the commentary of al-Ḥafāğī, Constantinople 1299. Cf. Le livre des locutions vicieuses de Djawālīkī publié par *Hartwig Derenbourg* (al-Ğawālīkī † 465 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1072) in Morgenländische Forschungen. Leipzig 1875.

Tarika mustaḥḍaṭa fī tashil al-ḥaṭṭ al-ʿarabī. Calligraphic models 12 parts. Beirut 1891.

β Written by Europeans.

*Die grammatischen Schulen der Araber nach den Quellen bearbeitet von *G. Flügel*. Erste Abthl. Leipzig 1862. Abhandlungen der Deutschen Morgenl. Ges. II. Band. Nr 4. (This work gives a list of grammarians to about the year 1000 of our era).

† Dr. *C. P. Caspari's* Arabische Grammatik. Fünfte Auflage bearbeitet von *August Müller*. Halle 1887. — Grammaire arabe de C. P. Caspari traduite de la quatrième édition allemande et en partie remaniée par *E. Uricoechea*. Bruxelles 1880. — A Grammar of the Arabic Language translated from the German of Caspari and edited, with numerous additions and corrections by *W. Wright*. 2. ed. 2 vol. London 1874—5. A 3rd edit. is announced.

Geo. Henric. Aug. Ewald. Grammatica critica linguae arabicae cum brevi metrorum doctrina. Lipsiae 1831—1833. II vol.

*Grammaire arabe à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes; avec figures. Par *M. le Bon Silvestre de Sacy*. Seconde édition, corrigée et augmentée, à laquelle on a joint un traité de la prosodie et de la métrique des Arabes. 2 tom. Paris 1831. — Very important notes and corrections will be found in

**Fleischer*, „Beiträge zur arabischen Sprachkunde“: Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig. Philologisch-historische Classe. 1863 (p. 93 ff.); 1864 (p. 265 ff.); 1866 (p. 286 ff.); 1870 (p. 227 ff.); 1874 (p. 71 ff.); 1876 (p. 44 ff.); 1878 (p. 64 ff.); 1880 (p. 89 ff.); 1881 (p. 117 ff.); 1883 (p. 72 ff.); 1884 (p. 272 ff.); conf. 1856 (p. 1 ff.); 1862 (p. 10 ff.) Reprinted in *Kleinere Schriften* von Dr. *H. L. Fleischer*, vol. I, 1st. and 2nd. parts, Leipzig 1886; the two last articles in vol. II, part 1. Leipzig 1888.

J. G. L. Kosegarten. *Grammatica linguae arabicae* pp. 1—688, without title and date, incomplete. (Very rare).

Mortimer Sloper Howell. *A Grammar of the Classical Arabic Language*, translated and compiled from the Works of the most Approved Native or Naturalized Authorities. Published under the Authority of the Government of the N.-W. Provinces. In an Introduction and Four Parts. 3 vols. Allahabad 1880. 1883. 1886.

Grammaire arabe composée d'après les sources primitives par le *P. Donat Vernier*, S. J. Tome I. Beyrouth 1891; Tome II. 1892.

Darstellung der arabischen Verskunst mit sechs Anhängen u. s. w. nach handschriftlichen Quellen bearbeitet und mit Registern versehen von *G. W. Freytag*. Bonn 1830.

Théorie nouvelle de la métrique arabe précédée de considérations générales sur le rythme naturel du langage par *M. Stanislas Guyard*. Paris 1875 (Extrait du *Journal as. 7 sér.*, t. 7. 8).

Die Rhetorik der Araber nach den wichtigsten Quellen dargestellt und mit angeführten Textauszügen nebst einem literaturgeschichtlichen Anhang versehen von Dr. *A. F. Mehren*. Kopenhagen 1853.

E. DICTIONARIES.

a. Written by Orientals.

**Ṣaḥāḥ al-ʿarabiyye* (or *aṣ-Ṣaḥāḥ*) by *al-Ğauharī* (Abū Naṣr Ismāʿīl ibn Hammād † 393 H., beg. 10. Nov. 1002). 2 vols. Bulak 1282. 40.

Lisān al-ʿarab by *al-Mukarram* (Ibn Manzūr al-Ifriqī al-Miṣrī al-Anṣārī al-Ḥazraġī † 711 H., beg. 13. May 1311). 20 vols. 40. Cairo 1308.

**al-Kāmūs al-muḥiṭ* (or *al-Kāmūs*) by *al-Firūzābādī* († 816 or 817 H. = 1413/4). 2 vols. Calcutta 1817; 4 vols. Bulak 1279. 40. id. 1301/2. — With Turkish Commentary 3 vols. Stambul 1272 and later. — *Commentary to the *Kāmūs* with the title *Tāğ-el-ʿarūs* composed by *Sayyid Murtaḍā ʿaz-Zubaidī* († 1205 H., beg. 10 Sept. 1790). 10 vols. Cairo 1307.

Muḥiṭ al-muḥiṭ by *Buṭrus al-Bistānī*. 2 vols. Beirut 1286. (1869/70).

an-Nihāya fī ġarīb al-ḥadīṭ by *Ibn al-ʿAtīr* († 606 H., beg. 6. July 1209). 4 vols. Cairo 1311 (Dictionary to the Traditions).

- Asās al-balāġa (Lexicographical Work, dealing esp. with the metaphorical meanings of words) by *az-Zamaḥṣarī* († 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143). 2 vols. Bulak 1299.
- Fikḥ al-luġa, Synonyms by *at-Taʿālilī* († 429 H., beg. 14. Oct. 1037). (Frequently reprinted; esp. in an expurgated edition Beirut 1888). Cf. Fleischer, *Kleinere Schriften* III, 152.
- Taʿlāb* († 291 H. = 904) kitāb al-Faṣiḥ. Nach den Handschriften von Leiden, Berlin und Rom herausgegeben, mit kritischen und erläuternden Noten versehen von Dr. *J. Barth*. Leipzig 1876.
- *Ġawālikī's al-Muʿarrab (a work on Arabic loan-words, by *al-Ġawālikī* † 465 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1072). Nach der Leydener Handschrift mit Erläuterungen herausgegeben von *Ed. Sachau*. Leipzig 1867. Cf. *Z. d. D. Morg. Ges.* 33, 208.
- Liber as-Sojutii († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505) de nominibus relativis, inscriptus Lubā al-lubāb, arab. cum annot. crit. ed. *P. J. Veth*. 1—3. Lugduni Bat. 1840—51. 4^o.
- *Al-Moschtahib auctore Schamso'ddīn Abu Abdallah Mohammed ibn Ahmed *ad-Dhababī* (ad-Dahabī † 748 H., beg. 13. April 1347). E codd. mss. editus a *P. de Jong*. Lugduni Batav. 1881. (On homonym proper names).
- Kitābo-l-adhdād sive liber de vocabulis arabicis quae plures habent significationes inter se oppositas auctore Abu Bekr *ibno-'l-Anbārī* († 328 H., beg. 18. Oct. 939) ed. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Lugduni Bat. 1881.

β Written by Europeans.

- †*G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum praesertim ex Djeuharii Firuzabadiique et aliorum libris confectum*. Accedit index vocum latinorum locupletissimus. IV. Tomi. Hal. 1830—1837. 4^o maj.
- G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum ex opere suo majore in usum tironum excerptum edidit*. Halis 1836. 4^o maj.
- **Maddu-l-Kamoos*, an Arabic-English Lexicon derived from the best and the most copious eastern sources comprising a very large collection of words and significations omitted in the *Kamoos*, with supplements to its abridged and defective explanations, ample grammatical and critical comments, and examples in prose and verse: composed by means of the munificence of the most noble Algernon, Duke of Northumberland and the bounty of the British Government: by *Edward William Lane*. In two books: the first containing all the classical words and significations commonly known to the learned among the Arabs; the second, those that are of rare occurrence and not commonly known. Book I, Parts 1—5. London 1863—1874. Ed. by *Stanley Lane Poole*, Parts 6—8 (and Supplement) 1877—1893.

(From the letter *k* onwards, the book is incomplete; its continuation is not to be expected.)

- *Supplément aux dictionnaires arabes par *R. Dozy*. 2 tom. Leyde 1881. — Cf. *Fleischer*, Studien über Dozy's Supplément: Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sächs. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Leipzig. Philol.-histor. Classe 1881—1887. Reprinted in Kleinere Schriften von H. L. Fleischer. Vol. II, pt. 1. Leipzig 1888. Vol. III *id.*
- A. *Kazimirski* de Biberstein, Dictionnaire arabe-français I. II. Paris 1860.
- †A. *Wahrmund*. Handwörterbuch der deutschen und neu-arabischen Sprache. I. Neuarabisch-deutscher Theil I, 1. 2. II, 1. 2. — II. Deutsch-neuarabischer Theil. Giessen 1870—77.
- F. *Steingass*, The Student's Arabic-English Dictionary. London 1884.
- H. *Anthony Salmoné*, An Arabic-English Dictionary on a new System. 2 vols. Vol. I Arabic-English; vol. II English Index. London 1890.
- †Arabic-English Dictionary by the late *William Thomson Wortabet*. Second edition, revised and enlarged, Beyrout 1893.
- George Percy Badger*, English-Arabic Lexicon. London 1881.
- F. *Steingass*, English-Arabic Dictionary for the use of both Travellers and Students. London 1882.
- English-Arabic Dictionary by Mr. *J. Abcarius*. New edition revised and enlarged. Beyrout 1894.
- †Vocabulaire arabe-français à l'usage des étudiants par un père missionnaire de la Cie de Jésus; 3. éd. Beyrouth 1893. (Arab.: al-Farāid ad-durriye.)
- Dictionnaire français-arabe par le P. *J.-B. Belot*, S. J. 2 parties. Beyrouth 1890.
- *Die aramäischen Fremdwörter im Arabischen. Von *Siegmund Fränkel*. Leiden 1886.
- Dictionnaire détaillé des noms des vêtements chez les Arabes. Par *R. Dozy*. Amsterdam 1845.
- Die Namen der Säugethiere bei den südsemitischen Völkern. Von *Fritz Hommel*. Leipzig 1879.
- Die Waffen der alten Araber aus ihren Dichtern dargestellt. Ein Beitrag zur arabischen Alterthumskunde, Synonymik und Lexicographie nebst Registern von *Friedrich Wilhelm Schwarzlose*. Leipzig 1886.
- *Glossaire des mots espagnols et portugais dérivés de l'Arabe par *R. Dozy* et *W. H. Engelmann*. 2. éd. Leyde 1869.
- Glossario etimologico de las palabras españolas de origen oriental por *D. Leopoldo de Eguilaz y Yanguas*. Granada 1886.
- Dictionnaire étymologique des mots français d'origine orientale par *Marcel Devic*. Paris 1876. — Cf. Remarques sur les mots français dérivés de l'Arabe par *Henri Lammens*. Beyrouth 1890.

F. KORAN, ISLAM, LIFE OF MUHAMMED. CHRISTIANITY.

a. Written by Orientals.

Al-Coranus seu Lex islamitica Muhammedis filii Abdallae Pseudo-prophetæ edita ex museo *Abrahami Hinckelmanni*. Hamburgi 1694.

Alcorani textus universus summa fide atque pulcherrimis characteribus descriptus, in latinum translatus, oppositis notis, auctore *Ludovico Marracio*. Patavii 1698 fol.

†Corani textus arabicus ad fidem librorum manuscriptorum et impressorum et ad præcipuorum interpretum lectiones et auctoritatem recensuit indicesque triginta sectionum et suratarum addidit *Gustavus Flügel*. Editio stereotypa C. Tauchnitzii. Tertium emendata; nova impressio Lipsiæ 1869 (I. 1834; recensionis Flügelianæ textum recognitum iterum exprimi curavit *Gustavus Mauritius Redslob*, Lipsiæ 1837). (In Flügel's first edition and in numerous oriental editions of the Koran, the enumeration of the verses, which is indispensable for reference, is wanting).

*Concordantiæ Corani arabicæ. Ad literarum ordinem et verborum radices diligenter disposuit *Gustavus Flügel*. Editio stereotypa, Lipsiæ 1842.

Chrestomathia Corani arabica, notas adjecit glossarium confecit *C. A. Nallino*. Lipsiæ 1893.

al-Itkân fî 'ulûm al-kur'ân, a sort of introduction to the Koran by *as-Suyûtî* († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505); 2 pts. Cairo 1278. — Sayûty's Itqân on the exegetic sciences of the Qorân. Edited by Mowlawies Basheerooddeen and Noorool-Haqq with an analysis by A. Sprenger. Calcutta 1852—54.

al-Kaşšâf. Commentary on the Koran by *az-Zamakhsharî* († 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143). 2 vols. Bulak 1281. — The Qoran with the commentary of Zamakhshari entitled the Kashshaf, an haqaiq al-tanzil, ed. by *W. Nassau Lees* and *Khadim Hosain* and 'Abd al-Hayî. Calcutta 1856.

**Beidhawî* († 685 H., beg. 27. Febr. 1286; or 692) commentarius in Coranum ex codd. Parisiensibus Dresdensibus et Lipsiensibus edidit indicibusque instruxit *H. O. Fleischer*. 2 vol. Lipsiæ 1846—48. 4^o. — Indices ad Beidhawii commentarium in Coranum confecit *Winand Fell*. Leipzig 1878.

Chrestomathia Baidawiana. The commentary of El-Baidāwî on Sura III trans. and expld. . . . by *D. S. Margoliouth*. London 1895.

*Le Recueil des traditions musulmanes par Abou Abdallah ibn Ismail al-Bokhari (*al-Buḥārî* † 257 H., beg. 29. Nov. 870) publié par

- L. Krehl*. I—III. Leyde 1862—68 (incomplete). — Oriental edition: *Ṣaḥīḥ al-Buḥārī*. 8 vols. Cairo 1290; also frequently elsewhere, with and without commentary.
- Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim*. Collection of the Traditions of the Prophet, composed by Muslim († 261 H., beg. 16. Oct. 874). With commentary by *an-Nawawī* († 676 H., beg. 4. Juni 1277). 5 vols. Cairo 1283.
- Maṣābiḥ as-sunna*, composed by Husain ibn Mas'ūd al-Farrā *al-Baġawī* († 516 H., beg. 12. March 1122). 2 vols. Cairo 1294.
- Iḥyā al-'ulūm*, by al-Ġazālī († 505 H., beg. 10. Juli 1111). 4 vols. 4^o. Bulak 1289. — (Cf. Richard Gosche, *Über Ghazzālīs Leben und Werke*: Abhdl. d. kgl. Akad. d. Wiss. zu Berlin 1858).
- 'Abdu-r-razzāq's* Dictionary of the technical terms of the Sufies edited by *Aloys Sprenger*. Calcutta 1845.
- *Das Leben Muhammeds nach Muhammed *ibn Ishāq* († 151 H., beg. 26. Jan. 768) bearbeitet von 'Abd el-Malik *ibn Hišām* († 218 H., beg. 27. Jan. 833); hrsg. von *F. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen 1858—60. Oriental edition; *Sīrat ibn Hišām*. 2 vols. Cairo 1295. (Translated into German: *Das Leben Muhammeds u. s. w.* bearbeitet von *G. Weil*. Stuttgart 1864).
- Muhammed in Medina. Das ist Vakidī's (*al-Wākidi* † 207 H., beg. 27. May 822) *Kitab al-Maghazi* in verkürzter deutscher Wiedergabe herausgegeben von *J. Wellhausen*. Berlin 1882.
- Ṣamā'il at-Tirmidī* († 279 H., beg. 3. April 892) Traditions respecting the Prophet. Cairo 1273; with commentary 2 vols. Bulak 1296.
- Uṣd al-ġāba. List of 7500 persons who knew Muhammed, drawn up by *Ibn al-Aṭīr* († 630 H., beg. 18. Oct. 1232). 5 vols. Cairo 1286.
- al-Iṣābe*, A biographical dictionary of persons who knew Muhammed by *Ibn Hagar* (*Ibn Haġar* † 852 H., beg. 7. March 1448). Edited in Arabic by Mowlawies Mohammed Wajyh, 'Abdal-Haqq, and Gholām Qādir and A. Sprenger. *Bibliotheca Indica*. Vol. I, Calcutta 1856; vol. IV, Calcutta 1873. Vol. II, fasc. 1—13; vol. III, fasc. 1—15.
- Kiṣaṣ al-'anbiyā* (Legends of the Prophet), by *at-Taṭlabī* († 427 H., beg. 5. Nov. 1035). Cairo 1297 and often.
- Pillar of the creed of the Sunnites by *al-Nasafi*, ed. by *W. Cureton*. London 1843.
- Ad-dourra al-fakhira: la perle précieuse de Ghazālī (*al-Ġazālī* † 505 H., beg. 10. Juli 1111) par *L. Gautier*. Genève 1878. — Muslim Eschatology.
- Muhammedanische Eschatologie nach der Leipziger u. Dresdner Handschrift zum ersten Male arabisch und deutsch herausgegeben von *M. Wolff*. Leipzig 1872.
- Disputatio pro religione Mohammedanorum adversus Christianos Textum arabicum (composed 942 H. = 1535) e codice Leidensi cum varr. lect. edidit *F. J. van den Ham*. Lugduni Bat. 1890.

Book of religious and philosophical sects by *Muhammed al-Shahrastāni* (*aš-Shahrastāni* † 528 H., beg. 29. March 1153). Now first edited by *W. Cureton*. 2 vol. London 1846. — *Abu'l-Fath* Muhammad asch-Schahrastāni's Religionsparteien und Philosophenschulen. Aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von *Th. Haarbrücker*. 2 Bände. Halle 1850—1.

*(*Bible*) *Kitāb al-mukaddas* (Old Testament). London. R. Watts. 1822. (New Testament 1. vol. 1821.) — † Beirut, various editions. † New York 1867.

Arabic Bible-Chrestomathy with a Glossary edited by *Geo. Jacob*. Berlin 1888.

β *Written by Europeans.*

Der Koran nach Boysen von Neuem aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit einer historischen Einleitung und Anmerkungen von *G. Wahl*. Halle 1828.

Der Koran. Aus dem Arabischen wortgetreu neu übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von *L. Ullmann*. 6. Aufl. 1862.

Le Koran, Traduction nouvelle, faite sur le texte arabe par *Mr. Kazimirski*. Nouv. éd. Paris 1854.

The Koran commonly called the Alcoran of Mohammed: translated into English from the Original Arabic. With explanatory notes taken from the most approved commentators. To which is prefixed a preliminary discourse. By *George Sale*. London 1774. Last ed. by *E. M. Wherry* "with additional notes and emendations". 4 vols. London 1882—87.

J. M. Rodwell, The Koran, translated from the Arabic. 2. ed. Lond. 1876.

The Qur'ān translated by *E. H. Palmer*. 2 parts. Oxford 1880. (The sacred books of the East translated by various oriental scholars and edited by *F. Max Müller*, vol. VI. IX).

Der Koran. Im Auszuge übersetzt von *Friedrich Rückert*, herausgegeben von *A. Müller*. Frankfurt a. M. 1888.

Die fünfzig ältesten Suren des Korans in gereimter deutscher Übersetzung von *M. Klamroth*. Hamburg 1800.

†*Geschichte des Qurāns von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Göttingen 1860.

Über die Religion der vorislamischen Araber. Eine zur Habilitation etc. öffentlich zu vertheidigende Abhandlung von *Ludolf Krehl*. Leipzig 1863.

*Skizzen und Vorarbeiten. Von *J. Wellhausen*. Drittes Heft. Reste arabischen Heidentumes. Berlin 1887.

Kinship and marriage in early Arabia. By *W. Robertson Smith*. Cambridge 1885.

*Das Leben und die Lehre des Mohammad nach bisher grösstentheils unbenutzten Quellen bearbeitet von *A. Sprenger*. Zweite Ausgabe. 3 Bände. Berlin 1869.

- †Das Leben Muhammed's. Nach den Quellen populär dargestellt von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Hannover 1863.
- **W. Muir*, The Life of Mahomet and History of Islam. 4 vol. London 1858—61. 3rd edition 1 vol. 1894.
- †Das Leben und die Lehre des Muhammed. Dargestellt von *Ludolf Krehl*. 1. Theil. Das Leben des Muhammed. Leipzig 1884. Skizzen und Vorarbeiten von *J. Wellhausen*. Viertes Heft. 1. Medina vor dem Islam. 2. Muhammad's Gemeindeordnung von Medina. 3. Seine Schreiben, und die Gesandtschaften an ihn. Berlin 1889.
- †Was hat Mohammed aus dem Judenthum aufgenommen? von *Abraham Geiger*. Bonn 1833.
- **R. Dozy*, Het Islamisme. Leiden 1863. 2 ed. Haarlem 1880; Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme par R. Dozy trad. par V. Chauvin. Leyde-Paris 1879.
- **Snouck Hurgronje*, Het mekkaansche Fest. Leiden 1880.
- Die Mutaziliten oder die Freidenker im Islām. Ein Beitrag zur allgemeinen Kulturgeschichte von *Heinrich Steiner*. Leipzig 1865.
- De strijd over het Dogma in den Islām tot op el-Ash'ari door Dr. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Leiden 1875.
- Zur Geschichte Abu 'l-Hasan al-Ash'ari's († about 324 H. = 935) von *Wilhelm Spitta*. Leipzig 1876.
- Exposé de la réforme de l'Islamisme commencée au IIIème siècle de l'Hégire par Abou'l-Hasan Ali el-Ash'ari et continuée par son école. Avec des extraits du Texte arabe d'Ibn Asâkir par *M. A. F. Mehren*. Vol. II des Travaux de la 3^e session du Congrès international des Orientalistes.
- I. Goldziher*, Die Schule der Zahiriten, ihr Ursprung, ihr System und ihre Geschichte. Leipzig 1884.
- *Mohammedanische Studien von *I. Goldziher*. Erster Teil. Halle 1889. Zweiter Teil. Halle 1890.
- Polemische und apologetische Literatur in arabischer Sprache zwischen Muslimen, Christen und Juden, nebst Anhängen verwandten Inhalts. Von *Moritz Steinschneider*. Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes VI, 3. Leipzig 1877.

G. JURISPRUDENCE.

- al-Muwatta' fil-hadit. Corpus juris composed by *Malik ibn Anas al-Himyari al-Madanî* († 179 H., beg. 27. March 795). Frequently printed; also with commentaries, e. g. that of *az-Zarkânî* († 1122 H., beg. 19. Febr. 1710). 4 vols. Bulak 1280.
- Sunan Abi 'Abdallah al-Kazwîni, known as *Ibn Mā'ja* († 273 H., beg. 8. June 886). Delhi 1282 and 1889. (Legal traditions).
- Sunan *Abi Dā'ūd* Sulaimān as-Sigistānî († 275 H., beg. 16. May 888); freq. printed, e. g. Bulak 1280. 2 vols. (Legal traditions).

- al-Ġāmi'* by Abū Īsā Muḥammad *at-Tirmidī* († 279 H., beg. 3. April 892). Frequently printed. (Legal traditions).
- Sunan Abī 'Abd ar-raḥmān *an-Nasā'ī* († 303 H., beg. 17. July 915); lithogr. in Kanfūr 1847. (Legal traditions).
- Flügel*, Die Classen der hanefitischen Rechtsgelehrten: Abhandlungen der k. Sächs. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften VIII. Leipzig 1860.
- Jus Schafiticum. At-Tanbīh auctore Abu Ishāk as-Shīrāzī (*Abū Ishāk aš-Šīrāzī* wrote the work in the year 452/3 H. = 1060/1) edidit A. W. T. Juynboll. Lugduni Bat. 1879.
- Précis de Jurisprudence Musulmane selon le rite Châfeite, par Abu Chodjā (*Abū Suġā'* † in the 6th cent. of the Flight). Publication du texte arabe, avec traduction et annotations, par S. Keijzer. Leyde 1859.
- Minhādġ at-Tālibīn, le guide des zélés croyants. Manuel de jurisprudence musulmane selon le rite de Chāfi'i (*aš-Šāfi'i*). Texte arabe, publié par ordre du gouvernement avec traduction et annotations par *L. W. C. van den Berg*. 3 vol. Batavia 1882—1884. (Cf. Snouck Hurgronje in the *Indian Gids*, 1884 ff. Elaborate criticism.)
- Précis de jurisprudence musulmane suivant le rite malékite par *Sidi Khalīl* (Halīl lived in the 8th cent. of the Flight) publié par les soins de la Société asiatique. Quatrième édition. Paris 1877.
- Maverdī (*al-Māwardī* † 450 H., beg. 28. Febr. 1058) constitutiones politicae. Ex recensione *Maximiliani Engeri*. Bonnae 1853.

H. PHILOSOPHY.

α Written by Orientals.

- Documenta philosophiae Arabum, edidit latine vertit illustravit *Aug. Schmölders*. Bonnae 1836. — Cf. id. Essai sur les écoles philosophiques chez les Arabes et notamment sur la doctrine d'Algazali. Paris 1842.
- Tahāfut al-falāsifa (the mutual refutation of the philosophers) by *al-Gazālī* († 505 H., beg. 10. July 1111), *Ibn Rušd* († 595 H., beg. 3. Nov. 1198), *Hōja Zāde* († 893 H., beg. 17. Dec. 1487). Cairo 1303.
- Die sogenannte Theologie des *Aristoteles* aus arabischen Handschriften zum ersten Male herausgegeben. Von *Fr. Dieterici*. Leipzig 1882 (Abhandlungen des Berl. Or.-Congresses). Cf. Die sogenannte Theologie des *Aristoteles* aus dem Arabischen übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen versehen von *Fr. Dieterici*. Leipzig 1883.
- Il commento medio di *Averroë* alla Poetica di *Aristotele* pubbl. da *Fausto Lasinio*. Parte I. Il testo arabo: Annali della Università

Toscanè. Tomo XII. Pisa 1872. 4^o. — Il testo arabo del commento medio di Averroë alla retorica di Aristotele, pubbl. da Fausto Lasinio. Firenze 1875. (Pubblicazioni del R. Istituto di studi superiori).

Alfārābī's († 950 A. D.) philosophische Abhandlungen aus Londoner, Leidener und Berliner Handschriften. Herausgegeben von *Friedrich Dieterici*. Leiden 1890. — Id. aus dem Arabischen übersetzt. Leiden 1892. — *Alfārābī's* Abhandlung der Musterstaat aus Londoner und Oxforder Handschriften herausgegeben von *F. Dieterici*. Leiden 1895.

Philosophie und Theologie von Averroës (*Ibn Rušd* † 595 H., beg. 3. Nov. 1198). Herausgegeben von *M. J. Müller*. München 1859. — Aus dem Arabischen übersetzt. München 1875.

Le Guide des Égarés. Traité de Théologie et de Philosophie par Moïse ben Maïmoun dit *Maïmonide* († 605 H., beg. 16. July 1208). Publié pour la première fois dans l'original arabe et accompagné d'une traduction française par *Munk*. I—III. Paris 1856—66.

Kitāb *Ihwān as-ṣafā* wa-hullān al-wafā (between 950—1000 of our era). 4 vols. Bombay 1305—1306. — A part of the rasāil ihwān as-ṣafā has also been printed in Cairo, 1306. — Die Abhandlungen der Ichwān Es-Safā in Auswahl herausg. von *F. Dieterici*. 3 Hefte. Leipzig 1883—6.

Statio quinta et sexta et appendix libri Mevakif auctore 'Adhad-eddin *el-Iḡī* († 756 H., beg. 16. Jan. 1355) cum commentario Ḡorḡānii ex codd. etc. edidit *Th. Sörensen*. Lipsiae 1848 (Scholastic Metaphysics).

Definitiones viri meritissimi Sejjid Scherif Ali ben Mohammed Dschor-dschani (*al-Ḡorḡānī* † 816 H., beg. 3. Apr. 1418). Accedunt definitiones theosophi Mohji-ed-dīn Mohammed ben Ali vulgo Ibn Arabi († 638 H., beg. 23 July 1240) dicti. Ed. et adnot. critica instruxit *Gustavus Flügel*. Lipsiae 1845.

β Written by Europeans.

Die griechischen Philosophen in der arabischen Überlieferung. Von *August Müller*. (Festschrift der Franckischen Stiftungen zu dem 50jährigen Doctorjubiläum Bernhardy's). Halle 1873.

Al-Kindī († ca. 850 A. D.) genannt „der Philosoph der Araber“. Ein Vorbild seiner Zeit und seines Volkes. Von *G. Flügel*. Leipzig 1857. (Abhandlungen der D. Morg. Ges. 1. Band. Nr. 2). Cf. *Otto Loth*, *Al-Kindī* als Astrolog, Morgenländische Forschungen. Leipzig 1875, pp. 261 ff. and *Sir Wm. Muir*, *The Apology of Al-Kindy* 2 Ed. London 1887.

Al-Farabi, des arabischen Philosophen, Leben und Schriften. Von

Moritz Steinschneider: Mémoires de l'Académie Imp. des Sciences de St. Pétersbourg. VII. série, tome XIII, 4, 1869. 4^o.

Ernest Renan, Averroës et l'Averroïsme. 3. éd. Paris 1861.

Die Philosophie der Araber im X. Jahrhundert n. Chr. aus den Schriften der lauterer Brüder herausgegeben von *Fr. Dieterici*. Die Naturwissenschaft und Naturanschauung der Araber. Berlin 1861. — Die Propädeutik. Berlin 1865. — Die Logik und Psychologie. Leipzig 1868. — Die Anthropologie. Leipzig 1871. — Die Lehre von der Weltseele. Leipzig 1872. — Die Naturanschauung und Naturphilosophie. 2. Ausg. Leipzig 1876. — Einleitung und Makrokosmos. Leipzig 1876. — Mikrokosmos. Leipzig 1879.

I. NATURAL SCIENCE AND MEDICINE.

F. Wüstenfeld, Geschichte der arabischen Ärzte und Naturforscher. Göttingen 1840 (rather out of date).

Histoire de la médecine arabe par le Dr. *Lucien Leclerc*. 2 vol. Paris 1876 (insufficient).

Ibn Abi Useibia. Herausgegeben von *August Müller*. Königsberg i. Pr. 1884 (*Ibn Abī Uṣaibī'a* † 668 H., beg. 14. May 1297 wrote this great work on the history of Arab physicians under the title: 'Uyūn al-'anbā' fī ṭabakāt al-'aṭibbā'. For which see Vol. II des travaux de la 6^e session du Congrès international des Orientalistes à Leide. Leide 1884. p. 257 ff.).

Hayāt al-haiwān (zoological work) by *ad-Damīrī* († 808 H., beg. 29. June 1405). 2 vols. Bulak 1284. Cairo 1305.

Kitāb al-kānūn fī ṭibb, Theory of Medicine, composed by *Abu 'Alī ibn Sīnā* (*Avicenna* † 428 H., beg. 25. Oct. 1036). 3 vols. Bulak 1294.

al-Gāmi' li-mufradāt al-'adwiya wal-'ağdiya (On the common medicines and foods) by *Ḍiyā' ad-dīn Abū Muḥammad Ibn al-Baiṭār* († 646 H., beg. 26. April 1248). 4 vols. Bulak 1231.

Tedkire (Science of medicine) by *Dā'ūd al-Antākī* († 1005 H., beg. 15. Aug. 1596). 3 vols. Cairo 1294.

La Chimie du moyen-âge . . . par *M. Berthelot*. Tome III. L'alchimie arabe comprenant une introduction et les traités de Cratès, d'el-Habib, d'Ostanès et de Djâber . . . texte et traduction . . . avec la collaboration de *M. O. Houdas*. Paris 1893. 4^o.

Matériaux pour servir à l'histoire des sciences mathématiques chez les Grecs et les Orientaux par *M. L. P. E. A. Sédillot*. 2 tomes. Paris 1845. 1849.

Traité des instruments astronomiques des Arabes, trad. par *J. J. Sédillot*. Paris 1834. 1835. *Mémoires sur les instruments astronomiques des Arabes* par *J. J. Sédillot*. Paris 1841—45.

K. HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY.

α Written by Orientals.

Ibn Coteiba's (ibn Kutaiba † 276 H. beg. 6. May 889) Handbuch der Geschichte herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1850.— Oriental edition: *Kitāb al-ma'ārif*. Cairo 1300.

Abu Bekr Muhammed ben al-Hasan *Ibn Doraid's* († 321 H., beg. 1. Jan. 933) genealogisch-etymologisches Handbuch herausgegeben von *F. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1854.

**Chronologie orientalischer Völker von Albērūnī*. Herausgegeben von *Eduard Sachau*. Gedruckt auf Kosten der D. M. Ges. Leipzig 1878. 4^o. — *Chronology of ancient Nations*. An English Version of the Arabic Text of the *Athar ul Bākiya* of *Albirūnī*, or "Vestiges of the Past". Collected and reduced to writing by the Author in A. H. 390—1, A. D. 1000. Translated and Edited, with Notes and Index, by *C. E. Sachau*. Published for the Oriental Translation Fund of Great Britain and Ireland. Roy 8^o. London 1879.

Ibn Wadhīh (Wādih) qui dicitur *al-Ja'qubī* (Ya'qūbī) *Historiae* (composed ca. 297 H.). 2 partes ed. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Lugduni Batav. 1883.

Anonyme Arabische Chronik Band XI vermuthlich das Buch der Verwandtschaft und Geschichte der Adligen von *Abulhasan ahmed ben jahjā ben gābir ben dāwūd elbelāđori elbagdādi* (*al-Balāđurī* † 279 H., beg. 3. Apr. 893). Autogr. und herausgegeben von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1883.

Kitāb al-ahbār at-tiwāl verf. von *Abu Hanīfa Ahmed ibn Dāūd ad-Dai-nawarī* († 282 or 290 H.) hrs. von *Wladimir Girgas*. Leiden 1888.

**Annales* auctore *Abu Djafar Mohammed Ibn Djarir At-Tabarī* (at-Tabarī † 309 H., beg. 12. May 921), quos ediderunt *J. Barthi*, *Th. Nöldeke*, *O. Loth* (†), *E. Prym*, *H. Thorbecke* (†), *S. Fränkel*, *D. H. Müller*, *M. Th. Houtsma*, *S. Guyard* (†), *V. Rosen* et *M. J. de Goeje* I, 1—5; II, 1—3; III, 1—4. Leiden 1879 seq.

Maçoudi (*al-Ma'sūdī* † 346 H., beg. 4. Apr. 957) *Les prairies d'or*. Texte et traduction par *C. Barbier de Meynard* et *Pavet de Courteille*. 9 tomes. Paris 1861—77. (id. 2 vols. Bulak 1283).

Hamzae Ispahanensis (*Hamza* wrote about 350 H.) *annalium libri X*. Edidit *J. M. E. Gottwaldt*. I. textus, II. transl. Petropoli-Lipsiae 1844. 1848.

Fragmenta historicorum arabicorum. Tomus primus continens partem tertiam operis *Kitābo 'l-Oyun wa 'lhādāik fi akhbāri 'l-hadāik* (written after the 11th cent. A-D.) quem ediderunt *M. J. de Goeje* et *P. de Jong*. Lugduni Bat. 1868. 4^o. — Tomus secundus continens partem operis *Tadjarībo 'l-Omami*, auctore *Ibn Maskowāih* († 421 H., beg. 9. Jan. 1030) edidit *M. J. de Goeje*. Lugd. Bat. 1871.

- *Ibn el-Athiri (*ibn al-'Atār* † 630 H., beg. 18. Oct. 1232) *Chronicon quod perfectissimum* (el-Kāmil) inscribitur. Edidit *Carolus Johannes Tornberg*. 14 vol. Lugduni Bat. 1851—1876. — 12 vols. Bulak 1290 and later.
- Commentaire historique sur le poème d'Ibn-Abdoun (*Ibn 'Abdūn* † 529 H., beg. 22. Oct. 1134) par Ibn Badroun (*Ibn Badrūn* wrote in the same century) publié par *R. P. A. Dozy*. Leide 1846 (Ouvrages arabes publiés par Dozy).
- Historia saracenicā arabice olim exarata a Georgio Elmacino (*al-Makīn* † 672 H., beg. 18. July 1273), edita et latine reddita opere et studiis *Thomae Erpenii*. Lugduni Bat. 1625.
- Ta'riḥ muḥtaṣar ad-duwal (Outlines of History by Gregorius abū 'l-Faraḡ Ibn el-'Ibri (*Barhebraeus* † 1286 A. D.) ed. by *Ṣalḥāni*. Beirut 1890. (The edition by *Pococke*, 2 tomi 4^o. Oxonii 1663 is rare).
- Elfachri. History of the Moslem Empires from the beginning to the end of the Califate by *Ibn etthiqṭhaqa* (wrote about 1302 A.D.). Edited in Arabic by *W. Ahlwardt*. Gotha 1860.
- Abulfedae* († 732 H., beg. 4. Oct. 1331). *Annales musulmici arabice et latine*. Opera et studiis *J. J. Reiskii*. nunc primum ed. *J. G. Ch Adler*. 5 vol. Hafniae 1789—94. — 2 vols. Stambul 1286.
- †*Abulfedae* historia Anteislamica, Arabice e duob. Codd. Paris. edidit, vers. lat. notis et indicibus auxit *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1831. 4^o.
- Ta'riḥ Zain ad-dīn 'Umar ibn al-Wardī († 749 or 750 H. = 1348/9). 2 vols. Cairo 1285. — An excerpt: Aegyptus auctore Ibn al-Vardi. Edidit vertit notulisque illustravit *Martinus Frähn*. Halae 1804.
- Ibn Haldūn* († 808 H., beg. 29. June 1405) *al-'ibar* etc. History of the World. 7 vols. Bulak 1284. — *Prolégomènes d'Ebn-Khaldoun*. Texte arabe par *Quatremère*. 3 vols. Paris 1858 (Notices et extraits des mscr. XVI, 1. XVII, 1. XVIII, 1.). — *Prolégomènes historiques d'Ibn Khaldoun*. Traduction par *Mac Guckin de Slane*. 3 vols. Paris 1862—68 (Notices et extr. XIX, 1. XX, 1. XXI, 1).
- The *Tarikh al-Kholafā*; or history of the Caliphs, from the death of Mohammad to the year 900 of the Hijrah by the celebrated Jalāl al-Dīn Al-Osyooti (*as-Suyūṭī* † 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505). ed. by *W. N. Lees* und *Mawlawi Abd al-Haqq*. Calcutta 1857. Another edition Cairo 1305.
- *Liber expugnationis regionum auctore Imāmo Ahmed ibn Jahja ibn Djābir *al-Baladsorī* (*al-Balādurī* † 279 H., beg. 3. Apr. 892) ed. *M. J. de Goeje*. Lugduni Bat. 1866. 4^o.
- Ousāma ibn Mounkidh* un émīr syrien au premier siècle des Croisades, (1095—1188) par *Hartwig Derenbourg*. Deuxième partie. Texte

- arabe de l'autobiographie d'Ousâma. Paris 1886 (cf. Carlo de Landberg, *Critica arabica* II. Leyde 1888). — Ousâma ibn Mounqidh etc. par H. Derenbourg (French edition). Paris 1889.
- Imâd ed-dîn el-kâtib el-isfahânî* († 597 H. = 1201) Conquête de la Syrie et de la Palestine par Salâh ed-dîn. Publié par le comte Carlo de Landerg. Vol. I. Texte arabe. Leyde 1888.
- Vita et res gestae sultani Almalichi Alnasiri Saladini auctore Bohaddino F. Sjeddadi (*Bahâ ad-dîn ibn Šaddâd* † 632 H. = 1234) edidit ac latine vertit *Albertus Schultens*. Lugduni Batav. 1732 (1755). fol.
- Kitâb ar-raudatain fî ta'rih ad-daulatain* (History of Nureddin and Saladin) by Šihâb ad-dîn al-Muqaddasi, called *Abû Šâma* († 665 H. = 1267). Cairo. 2 vols. 1287.
- Kitâb al-îns al-ğalil bi-ta'rih al-kuds wal-ğalil*. History of Jerusalem and Hebron by *Muğîr ad-dîn* († 927 H., beg. 12. Dec. 1520). — Cf. Histoire de Jérusalem et d'Hébron. Fragments de la Chronique de Moudjir-ed-dyn traduits sur le texte arabe par *Henry Sauvaire*. Paris 1876.
- Die Chroniken der Stadt Mekka. Gesammelt und herausgegeben von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld* (I Azraki. II Fâkihi, Fâsî, Ibn Dhuheira. III Kuṭb ed-dîn. IV German edition). I—IV. Leipzig 1857—61.
- Hulâsat al-wafâ bi'ahbâr dâr al-mustafâ* (History of the town of Medîna) by *as-Samhûdi* († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505). Bulak 1285. — Extracts translated by *Wüstenfeld* in den Abhandlungen der k. Ges. der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen. Bd. IX. 1860.
- **al-Hiṭaṭ* (Geography and History of Egypt) by *al-Makrîzî* († 845 H., beg. 22. May 1441). 2 vols. Bulak 1270. — Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks de l'Egypte, écrite en arabe par Taki-eddin-Ahmed Makrizi, traduite en français et accompagnée de notes par *Quatremère*. 2 vol. Paris 1837—45. 4^o.
- Abûl-Mahûsin ibn Tagri Bardî* († 874 H., beg. 11. July 1469) Annales (History of Egypt) I, 1. 2 ediderunt *T. G. J. Juynboll* et *B. F. Matthes*. II, 1. 2. ed. *T. G. J. Juynboll*. Lugduni Bat. 1852—61 (incomplete).
- Ḥusn al-muḥādara*. History of Egypt by *as-Suyûfî* († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505). 2 vols. Cairo.
- **Ağâib al-âtâr fit-tarâğim wal-ahbâr* (History of Egypt) by *al-Ğabartî* († 1236 = 1821). 4 vols. Cairo n. d.
- Ahmedis Arabsiadæ (*Aḥmed ibn 'Arabšah* † 854 H., beg. 14. Febr. 1450) vitæ et rerum gestarum Timuri, qui vulgo Tamerlanes dicitur historia. (Ed.) Latine vertit etc. *S. H. Manger*. 2 vol. Leovardiae 1767. 1772. — Cairo 1285.
- The History of the Almohades by *Abdo-'l-Wāhid al-Marrekoshî* (wrote in the year 621 H. = 1224) edited by *R. Dozy*. 2. ed. Leyden 1881.

- Historia Abbadidarum praemissis scriptorum Arabum de ea dynastia locis nunc primum editis, auctore R. P. A. Dozy. I—III. Lugduni Bat. 1849. 4^o. (Deals w. Spain).*
- Annales regum Mauretaniae a condito Idrisidarum imperio ad annum fugae 726, ab Abu-l Hasan Ali ben Abd Allah Ibn Abi Zer' Fesano, vel ut alii malunt Abu Muhammed Salih ibn Abd el Halim Granatensi conscriptos ed. illustr. Carolus Joh. Tornberg. 2 vol. Upsaliae 1843. 1846.*
- Histoire de l'Afrique et de l'Espagne intitulée al-Bayāno 'l-Moghrib par Ibn Adhārī (de Maroc) (Ibn al-'Idārī wrote between 363 and 366 H.) et fragments de la chronique d'Arib (de Cordoue) publiés par R. P. A. Dozy. 2 vols. Leyde 1848—51.*
- Analectes sur l'histoire et la littérature des Arabes d'Espagne par Al-Makkari (al-Makkarī † 1041 H., beg. 30. July 1631). Publiés par R. Dozy, G. Dugat, L. Krehl et W. Wright. 2 vol. Leyde 1855—61. (Conf. Fleischer, Textverbesserungen in Al-Makkarī's Geschichtswerke. Kleinere Schriften. Vol. II pt. 1. Leipzig 1888.) — Lettre à M. Fleischer contenant les remarques critiques et explicatives sur le texte d'Al-Makkari par R. Dozy. Leyde 1871. — Cf. The history of the Mohammedan Dynasties in Spain by Ahmed ibn Mohammed Al-Makkarī. Translated and illustrated by Pascual de Gayangos. 2 vol. London 1840—3. 4^o.*
- Bibliotheca arabo-sicula, ossia Raccolta di testi arabici che toccano la geografia, la storia, la biografia e la bibliografia della Sicilia, messi insieme da Michele Amari. Lipsia 1857; Appendice, ibid. 1875.*
- Alberuni's India, an account of the religion, philosophy, literature, chronology, astronomy, customs, laws and astrology of India about 1030. Ed. by Edw. Sachau. London 1887. 4^o. — Id. An English edition with notes and indices. By E. Sachau. London. 2 vol. 1888.*
- Scriptorum Arabum de Rebus Indicis loci et opuscula inedita rec. et illustr. Joannes Gildemeister. Fasc. pr. Bonnae 1838. — Cf. id., Dissertationis de rebus Indiae, quo modo in Arabum notitiam venerint, pars I. Bonnae 1838.*
- *Ibn Challican, Vitae illustrium virorum. E codd. nunc primum arabice edidit variis lectionibus, indicibusque locupletissimis instruxit Ferd. Wiistenfeld. Gottingae 1835—40, 4^o. — Ibn Hallikān († 681 H., beg. 11. Apr. 1282). 2 vols. Bulak 1275; another edition 1299. — Ibn Khalikan's Biographical Dictionary, translated from the Arabic by Baron Mac Guckin de Slane. 4 vol. Paris-London 1843—71. 4^o.*
- Fawā' al-wafayāt (supplement to Ibn Hallikān) by aṣ-Ṣalāḥ al-Kutubī († 764 H., beg. 21. Oct. 1362). 2 vols. Bulak 1283.*

The biographical dictionary of illustrious men chiefly at the beginning of Islamism by Abu Zakariya Jahya el-Nawawi († 676 H. = 1277) edited by *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1842—47 (cf. *idem* for the Life and Writings of el-Nawawi, Göttingen 1849, from the 4th vol. of the Abhandl. d. kgl. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Gött.).

Nuzhat al-'alubba fi ṭabakāt al-'udabā. Concerning celebrated Men. By Abul-Barakāt al-'Anbārī († 577 H., beg. 17. May 1181). Cairo lithogr. n. d.

β *Written by Europeans.*

†Vergleichungstabellen der muhammedanischen und christlichen Zeitrechnung nach den ersten Tagen jedes muhammedanischen Monats berechnet. Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Leipzig 1844.—Fortsetzung der Wüstenf. Vergl.-Tab. bis 1500 von *E. Mahler*. Leipzig 1887.

*Die Geschichtsschreiber der Araber und ihre Werke. Von *F. Wüstenfeld*. (From the XXVIII. and XXIX. vol. of the Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. W. zu Göttingen). Göttingen 1882. 4^o.

*Genealogische Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien . . . Aus den Quellen zusammengestellt von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1852. q.-fol. — Register zu den genealogischen Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien. Mit historischen und geographischen Bemerkungen von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1853.

**Caussin de Perceval*, Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes avant l'islamisme 3 vol. Paris 1847.

Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sassaniden. Aus der arabischen Chronik des Tabari übersetzt und mit ausführlichen Erläuterungen und Ergänzungen versehen von *Th. Nöldeke*, Leyden 1879.

†*Der Islam im Morgen- und Abendland. Von *A. Müller*. 2 Bände. Berlin 1885. 1887. (Allgemeine Geschichte in Einzeldarstellungen hrsgg. von L. Oncken. Zweite Hauptabteilung. Vierter Teil).

*Geschichte der Chalifen. Nach handschriftlichen grösstenteils noch unbenützten Quellen bearbeitet von *Gustav Weil*. 3 Bände. Mannheim 1846—51. — Geschichte des Abbasidenchalifats in Aegypten. Von *Gustav Weil*. 2 Bände. Stuttgart 1860—2.

†Geschichte der islamitischen Völker von Mohammed bis zur Zeit des Sultan Selim übersichtlich dargestellt von *Gustav Weil*. Stuttgart 1866.

†Geschichte der Araber bis auf den Sturz des Chalifats von Bagdad. Von *Gustav Flügel*. 2. Aufl. Leipzig 1864.

The Caliphate, its rise, decline, and fall from original sources by *Sir William Muir*. London 1891. New and revised edition 1894.

- Handbuch der morgenländischen Münzkunde. Von *J. G. Stickel*. 2 Hefte. Leipzig 1865—70. 40.
- Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum, 9 vol. London 1875—1889.
- The Mohamadan Dynasties, chronological and genealogical Tables with historical Introductions by *St. Lane-Poole*. London 1894.
- Die Charidschiten unter den ersten Omayyaden. Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des ersten islamischen Jahrhunderts von *R. E. Brünnow*. Leiden 1884.
- De opkomst der Abbasiden in Chorasán door *G. van Vlooten*. Leiden 1890.
- Mémoires sur les Carmathes du Bahrain et les Fatimides par *M. J. de Goeje*. Leiden 1886.
- Die Statthalter von Ägypten zur Zeit der Chalifen. Von *F. Wüstenfeld*. Parts 1 and 2. Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. Wissenschaften zu Göttingen. 1875 (4^o). Band 20. Parts 3 and 4. *ibid.* 1876, Band 21.
- History of the Moors in Spain to the Conquest of Andalusia by the Almoravides (711—1110), by *R. Dozy*. German Edition with additions by the Author. 2 vols. Leipzig 1874.
- Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sicilien. Von *Adolf Friedrich von Schack*. 2 Bände. Berlin 1865. 2. Aufl. 1877.
- *Culturgeschichte des Orients unter den Chalifen. Von *Alfred von Kremer*. 2 Bände. Wien 1875—77.
- Das Einnahmehudget des Abbasiden-Reichs vom Jahre 360 H. (918—919) von *Alfred von Kremer*. Denkschriften der philos.-hist. Classe der Kais. Akademie der Wiss. in Wien. Bd. XXXVI. 1887.
- *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams. Der Gottesbegriff, die Prophetie und Staatsidee. Von *Alfred v. Kremer*. Leipzig 1868.
- Die Baustile. Historische und technische Entwicklung. Des Handbuchs der Architectur (von *J. Durm*) Zweiter Theil. 3. Band, zweite Hälfte; Die Baukunst des Islam. Von *Franz Pascha*. Darmstadt 1887.
- Prisse d'Avennes*, L'art arabe d'après les monuments du Caire depuis le VII^e siècle jusqu' à la fin du XVIII^e. 3 vol. fol. 1 vol. 4. Paris 1877. — La décoration arabe. (Extrait du grand ouvrage.) Paris 1865. fol.

L. COSMOGRAPHY, GEOGRAPHY, ETHNOGRAPHY, TRAVELS.

a. Written by Orientals.

- Cosmographie de Chems ed-din Abou Abdallah Mahommed ed-*Dimichqi* (ad-*Dimiški* † 654 H., beg. 30. Jan. 1256). Texte arabe publié d'après l'édition commencée par M. Frähn, et d'après les manu-

scrits par *M. A. F. Mehren*. St. Pétersbourg 1866. 4^o. — Manuel de la cosmographie du moyen âge, traduit de l'arabe „Nokhbet ed-dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr wal-bah'r“ de Shems ed-dîn Abou-'Abdallah Mohammed de Damas et accompagnée d'éclaircissements par *M. A. F. Mehren*. Copenhague 1874.

*Zakarija Ben Muhammed ben Mahmúd el-Cazwini's (*al-Kazwīnī* † 682 H., beg. 1. Apr. 1283) Kosmographie. Herausg. von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen 1848—9. — id. nach der Wüstenfeld'schen Textausgabe etc. übersetzt von *Hermann Ethé*. Erster Halbband. Leipzig 1868.

Harīdat al-'ağāib wa-farīdat al-ğarāib, a species of Cosmography composed by 'Umar ibn al-Wardī († 749 or 750 H. = 1348 or 9). Cairo 1292.

Specimen e literis orientalibus exhibens *az-Zamaksarī*, (*az-Zamajšarī* † 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143) lexicon geographicum quod auspice T. G. J. Juynboll edidit *Mathias Salverda de Grave*. Lugduni Bat. 1856.

Al-Hamdānī's († 334 H., beg. 13. Aug. 945) Geographie der Arabischen Halbinsel. Nach den Handschr. herausgegeben von *David Heinrich Müller*. Leiden 1884.

Das geographische Wörterbuch des Abu 'Obeid 'Abdallah ben 'Abd el-'Azīz el-Bekri († 487 H. = 1094) nach den Handschriften zu Leiden, Cambridge, London und Mailand herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen, Paris 1876. 1877.

*Jacut's (*Yāqūt* † 626 H. = 1229) Geographisches Wörterbuch aus den Handschriften zu Berlin, St. Petersburg und Paris auf Kosten der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft herausgegeben von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. 6 Bände. Leipzig 1866—73.

Jacut's Moschtarik, das ist: Lexicon geographischer Homonyme. Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1846.

Marāsīd al-iṭṭilā'i, Lexicon geographicum ed T. G. J. Juynboll I—VI. Lugduni B. 1850—64. (An Extract from *Yāqūt*).

Géographie d'Aboulféda (*Abū'l-fidā* † 732 H., beg. 4. Oct. 1331). Texte arabe par *Reinaud* et *Mac-Guckin de Slane*. Paris 1840. — Géographie d'Ismāil Abou 'l-Fédā en arabe publiée par *Charles Schier*. Éd. autogr. Dresde 1846. — Géographie d'Aboulféda, traduite de l'arabe en français par *Reinaud* I (*Introduction générale à la géographie des Orientaux) II, 1 Paris 1848; II, 2 par *Stanislas Guyard*. Paris 1883.

*Bibliotheca geographorum arabicorum. Edidit *M. J. de Goeje*.

Pars prima. Viae regnorum. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae auctore Abu Ishāk al-Fārisī al-Istakhri (*al-Istakhri*, cf. Zeitschrift d. D. Morgenl. Ges. Bd. 25, p. 42 ff.). Lugduni Bat. 1870.

Pars secunda. Viae et regna. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae auctore Abu 'l-Kāsim Ibn Haukal (ibid.). Lugduni Bat. 1873.

Pars tertia. Descriptio imperii Moslemici auctore *Al-Mokaddasi* (*al-Mukaddasi* wrote in year 378 the H.). Lugduni Bat. 1876.

Cf. Description of Syria &c. by Mukaddasi. 'Translated from the Arabic by *Guy Le Strange*. (Palestine Pilgrims' Text Society).

Pars quarta. Continens indices, glossarium et addenda et emendanda ad part. I—III auctore *M. J. de Goeje*. Lugduni Bat. 1879.

Pars quinta. Compendium libri Kitāb al-boldān auctore *Ibn al-Fakīh* al-Hamadhani (wrote ca. A. D. 290). Lugd. Bat. 1885.

Pars sexta. Kitāb al-masālik wal-mamālik (liber viarum et regnorum) auctore Abu'l-Kāsim Obaidallah ibn Abdallah *ibn Khordādbēh* (Ibn Hordādbēh wrote in the second half of the 9th cent. A. D.) et excerpta e Kitāb al-Kharādj (K. al-ḥarāğ Taxbook) auctore *Kodāma ibn Dja'far* (*Kudāma ibn Ġa'far* wrote about 930 A. D.). Lugduni Bat. 1889.

Pars septima. Kitāb al-a'lāk an-nafisa VII auctore Abū Ali Ahmed ibn Omar *ibn Rosteh* (wrote before 301. H.) et Kitāb al-boldān auctore Ahmed ibn abī Jākūb ibn Wādhih al-Kātib *al-Jākūbī* (cf. p. 157). Lugduni Bat. 1892.

Pars octava. Kitāb at-tanbih wal-ischrāf auctore *al-Masūdī* (cf. p. 157). Accedunt indices et glossarium ad tomos VII et VIII. Lugduni Bat. 1894.

Description de l'Afrique et de l'Espagne par *Edrīsī* (wrote 548 H., beg. 29 March 1153) texte arabe publié pour la première fois d'après les man. de Paris et d'Oxford avec une traduction, des notes et un glossaire par *R. Dozy* et *M. J. de Goeje*. Leyde 1866. The travels of *Ibn Jubair* (*Ibn Gubair* end of the 6th cent.) edited by *William Wright*. Leyden 1852.

Voyages d'Ibn Batoutah (*Ibn Batūṭa* † 779 H., beg. 10 May 1377). Texte arabe, accompagnée d'une traduction par *C. Defrémery* et *B. R. Sanguinetti* (Publications de la Société asiatique). 4 vol. Paris 1853—58; deux. tir. 1874—77. — Cairo 1283.

β Written by Europeans.

F. *Wüstenfeld*, Die Litteratur der Erdbeschreibung bei den Arabern. Zeitschrift für vergleichende Erdkunde hrsgg. von J. G. Lüdde I, 1841, S. 24—67.

Carte générale des provinces européennes et asiatiques de l'Empire Ottoman, dressée par *Henri Kiepert* 4 feuilles. Deux. éd. entièrement corrigée et augmentée d'un index alphabétique. Berlin 1892.

(Karte von) Arabien zu C. Ritters Erdkunde, Buch III, West-Asien, Teil XII und XIII bearbeitet von *H. Kiepert*. Neue berichtigte Ausgabe, die Orthographie revidiert von *Th. Nöldeke*. Berlin 1867 (D. Reimer).

Skizze der Geschichte und Geographie Arabiens von den ältesten Zeiten bis zum Propheten Muhammad. Auf Grund der Inschriften, der Angaben der alten Autoren und der Bibel von *Eduard Glaser*. Zweiter Band. Berlin 1890.

Die alte Geographie Arabiens als Grundlage der Entwicklungsgeschichte des Semitismus von *A. Sprenger*. Bern 1875.

Arabien im sechsten Jahrhundert. Eine ethnographische Skizze von *Otto Blau*. Mit einer Karte: Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenl. Gesellschaft. Leipzig 1869 (XXIII B.) p. 559—592.

Arabien und die Araber seit hundert Jahren. Eine geographische und geschichtliche Skizze von *Albrecht Zehme*. Halle 1875.

Palestine under the Moslems. A description of Syria and the Holy Land from A. D. 650 to 1500. Translated from the works of the mediæval Arab Geographers by *Guy le Strange*. (London) 1890.

Relation de l'Égypte par *Abdallatif* ('Abd al-Latîf al-Baghdâdî † 629 H., beg. 29. Oct. 1231). Le tout traduit et enrichi de notes par *Silvester de Sacy*. Paris 1810. 4^o. (The text of 'Abd al-Latîf has been published by *J. White*: 'Abdollariphi Historiae Aegypti compendium. Oxonii 1800).

*Beschreibung von Arabien. Aus eigenen Beobachtungen und im Lande selbst gesammelten Nachrichten abgefasst von *Carsten Niebuhr*. Kopenhagen 1772. 4^o.

Carsten Niebuhr's Reisebeschreibung nach Arabien und andern umliegenden Ländern. 1. Band. Kopenhagen 1774. 2. Band. 1778; English edtn. 2 vols. Edinb. 1792.

†*Travels in Arabia (1814) comprehending an account of those territories in Hedjaz which the Mohammedans regard as sacred. By the late *John Lewis Burckhardt*. London, 2 vol. 1829. — *Johann Ludwig Burckhardt's* Reisen in Arabien, enthaltend eine Beschreibung derjenigen Gebiete in Hedjaz, welche die Mohammedaner für heilig achten . . . Aus dem Englischen übersetzt. Weimar 1830.

†**J. L. Burckhardt*, Notes on the Bedouins and Wahâbys. 2 vol. London 1831. — Bemerkungen über die Beduinen und Wahabi's. Weimar 1831.

Richard Burton, Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to El Medinah and Meccah. 2 vol. London 1857 (and frequently, also in the Tauchnitz edition).

*Travels in Arabia Deserta by *Charles M. Doughty*. 2 vol. Cambridge 1888. (With new map).

Adolf von Wrede's Reise in Hadhramaut, Beled Beny 'Issâ und Beled el Hadschar. Herausgegeben . . . von *H. Freiherr von Maltzan*. Braunschweig 1870. — Reise nach Südarabien und Geographische Forschungen im und über den südwestlichen Teil Arabiens von *Heinrich Freiherrn von Maltzan*. Braunschweig 1873.

Mekka von Dr. *C. Snouck Hurgronje*. 2 Bände. Mit Bilder-Atlas. Haag 1888. 1889.

†*An account of the manners and customs of the modern Egyptians, written in Egypt etc. By *Edward William Lane*. Various editions. London. — *Lane*, Sitten und Gebräuche der heutigen Egypter. Übersetzt von *J. Zenker*. 3 Bde. Leipzig 1852.

E. W. Lane, Arabian society in the middle ages. Studies from the Thousand and One Nights ed. by *Stanley Lane Poole*. London 1883. (Supplement to the "Manners and Customs", containing the notes to Lane's translation of the Thousand and One Nights (*v. infra*).

M. VERSE.

Delectus veterum carminum arabicorum. Carmina selegit et edidit *Th. Noeldeke*, glossarium confecit *A. Müller*. Berolini 1890.

Über Poesie und Poetik der Araber von *Wilhelm Ahlwardt*. Gotha 1856. 4⁰.

Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber. Von *Th. Nöldeke*. Hannover 1864.

Kitāb al-agānī by Abu 'l-Farağ 'Alī al-Isfahānī († 352 H., beg. 30. Jan. 962). 20 vols. Bulak 1285. — *Ālī Ispahanensis* liber cantilenarum magnus, ed. *Kosegarten*. T. 1. Græsvoldiae 1840. 4⁰. — The twenty-first volume of *The Kitāb al-aghānī* ed. by *Rud. E. Brünnow*, Leyden 1888. — Tables alphabetiques du *Kitāb al-Agānī* par *J. Guidi*. 1^{er} fasc. Leide 1895.

Kitāb raudat al-adab fī ṭabakāt šu'arā' al-'arab by *Iskander-Aga Abkariūs* (modern Beyrout scholar). Beirut 1858.

Hiżānat al-adab wa-lubb lubāb liṣān al-'arab, by 'Ab-dal-Ḳādir ibn 'Umar al-Bağdādī († 1093 H.; beg. 21. Aug. 1629) 4 vols. Bulak 1291 (A work on poets; on the margin are printed the *Šawāhid al-'Ainī*). An index to the poets appeared from the pen of *Guidi* in the transactions of the R. Accademia dei Lincei, Rome 1887.

*The *Diwans* of the six ancient Arabic poets *Ennābiga*, 'Antara, Tharafa, Zuhair, 'Alqama and Imru'ulqais, ed. by *W. Ahlwardt*. London. 1870.

Bemerkungen über die Ächtheit der alten Arabischen Gedichte mit besonderer Beziehung auf die sechs Dichter etc. von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1872.

Le *Diwān de Nābiga Dhobyānī* publié par *H. Dèrenbourg*. Journal asiatique 1868—9.

H. Thorbecke, 'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter. Leipzig 1867.

Die Gedichte des 'Alqama Alfahl. Mit Anmerkungen herausgegeben von *Albert Socin*. Leipzig 1867.

Le *diwan d'Amro'lkais* par le Bon de Slane. Paris 1837. 4⁰. With

Commentary by al-Baṭalyūsi. Cairo 1308. Cf. Amrilkais, der Dichter und König. Von *Fr. Rückert*. Stuttgart und Tübingen 1843.

†*Septem *Mo'allakāt* carmina antiquissima Arabum, textum etc. rec. *F. A. Arnold*. Lipsiae 1850 (out of print) — With commentary by *az-Zauzani* († 375 H., beg. 24. May 958). Cairo 1288.

A commentary by Abū Zakariyā Sahya *at-Tibrizi* († 420 H., beg. 11. Aug. 1108) on ten ancient Arabic poems edited from the Mss. of Cambridge, London and Leiden by Charles James Lyall. Fasc. I Bibliotheca Indica, New Series, No. 789, Calcutta 1891; Fasc. II ib. No. 840. Calc. 1894.

Der Diwan des *Lebid*. Nach einer Handschrift zum ersten Male herausgegeben von *Jūsuf Dijā-ad-dīn al-Chālidi*. Wien 1880. Cf. *A. von Kremer* in den Sitzungsberichten der phil.-hist. Classe der Kais. Akademie d. Wissenschaften 98. Bd. 2 Heft. Wien 1881. — Die Gedichte des *Lebid*. Nach der Wiener Ausgabe übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen versehen aus dem Nachlasse des *Dr. A. Huber* herausgegeben von *Carl Brockelmann*. Leiden 1891.

Die *Mufaddalijāt* (Anthology of the Grammarian *al-Mufaddal*; † about 170 H.) Nach den Handschriften herausgegeben von *Heinrich Thorbecke*. Erstes Heft. Leipzig 1885.

**Hamasae* carmina cum Tebrisii scholiis integris edidit, indicibus instruxit, versione latina et commentario illustr. *G. G. Freytag*. 2 vol. Bonnae 1828—47 (collected by Abu Tammām † 190, beg. 27. Nov. 805; at-Tabrizi Comm. † 420 H., beg. 11. Aug. 1108). Another edition Bulak 1296. Cf. *Hamāsa* oder die ältesten arabischen Volkslieder, gesammelt von Abu Temmām, übersetzt und erläutert von *Friedrich Rückert*. 2 T. Stuttgart 1846.

The Hudsailian poems contained in the manuscript of Leyden edited in Arabic and translated with annotations by *J. G. L. Kosegarten*. Vol. I. London 1854. 4^o. — Letzter Theil der Lieder der Hudhailiten, arabisch und deutsch: Skizzen und Vorarbeiten von *J. Wellhausen*. 1. Heft. Berlin 1884. Comp. Z. der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft 39. pp. 104, 151, 411 ff.

Die Gedichte des *'Urwa ibn al-Ward*. Von *Th. Nöldeke*: Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Göttingen. Hist.-Phil. Classe 11.

Gedichte und Fragmente des *'Aus ibn Hajar*, gesammelt, herausgegeben und übersetzt von *Rudolf Geyer*: Sitzungsberichte der Kais. Akademie der Wissenschaften in Wien. Philos.-hist. Classe. Band 126. Wien 1892.

Anīs al-ḡulasā' fī diwān al-Ḥansā' (The poetess al-Ḥansā is said to have died A. H. 24, beg. 7. Nov. 644 A. D.) Beirut 1888. — Le diwan d'al Ḥansā' traduit par le *P. de Coppier* et suivi de fragments inédits d'Al-Ḥirniq. Beyrouth 1889.

- Ibn Hišāmi († 762 H., beg. 11 Nov. 1360) *Commentarius in Carmen Ka'bi ben Zoheir* Bānat Su'ād ed. *Guidi*. Lipsiae 1871. 1874.
- Der Dīwān des Garwal b. Aus *al-Hutej'a* († between 68—70 H.) Bearbeitet von *Ignaz Goldziher*: Zeitschrift der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft Bd. 46, S. 1—53; 173—225; 471—527; Bd. 47, S. 43—85; 163—201. Also in a collected edition. Leipzig 1893.
- Dīwān sayyidnā Ḥassān ibn Tābit († 54 H., beg. 30. Aug. 683). Tunis 1281.
- Dīwān d'al-Aḥṭal, Texte arabe publié pour la première fois d'après le manuscrit de St. Pétersbourg et annoté par le P. A. Salhani S. J. Beyrouth 1891.
- Divan de Fērazdak († 110 H., beg. 16. April 728) récits de Mohammed ben-Habib d'après Ibn-el-Arabi publié sur le manuscrit de Sainte-Sophie de Constantinople avec une traduction française par R. Boucher. Paris 1870. 4^o. (incomplete).
- Maḡmū' muštamil 'ala hams dawāwīn (an-Nābiḡa, 'Urwa, Hātim, 'Al-ḡama and Farazdak) Cairo 1293 cf. Z. der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft 31, 667 ff.
- Chalef elahmar's* (died after 155 H.) Qasside. Berichtigter arabischer Text etc. von A. Ahlwardt. Greifswald 1859.
- Dīwān *al-Buhturī* († 190 H., beg. 27 Nov. 805). Constantinople 1300.
- Diwan des Abu Nowas nach der Wiener und Berliner Handschrift mit Benutzung anderer Handschriften herausgegeben von W. Ahlwardt. 1. Die Weinlieder. Greifswald 1861. — Dīwān Abī Nuwās. Cairo 1277. (*Abū Nuwās* † about 195 H. = 810).
- Diwan poëtae Abu'l-Walid Moslim ibno-'l-Walid al-Anḡārī cognomine *Ṣarīo-'l-ghawānī* (*Ṣarī' al-ḡawānī* † 208 H., beg. 16. May 823) quem edidit M. de J. Goeje. Lugduni Bat. 1875. 4^o.
- Al-anwār az-zāhiya fī dīwān Abi'l-'Atāhiya (*Abu'l-'Atāhiya* † 221 H., beg. 26. Dec. 835). Beirut 1886. 2^{me} édit. 1888.
- Dīwān *Alī Tammām* Ḥabīb ibn Aus aṭ-Ṭā'ī († 231 H., beg. 7. Sept. 845). Cairo 1292.
- Dīwān amīr al-mu'minīn *Ibn-al-Mūtazz* al-'Abbāsi († 296 H. = 909) Cairo 1891. Cf. Über Leben und Werk des 'Abdallah ibn al-Mūtazz von Otto Loth. Leipzig 1882.
- Mutanabbī (*al-Mutanabbī* † 354 H. = 965) carmina cum commentario Waḥidīi primum edidit, indicibus instruxit, varias lectiones adnotavit Fr. Dieterici. Berolini 1861. 4^o.
- Dīwān *Abi Firās* al-Ḥamdānī († 357 beg. 7. Dec. 967). Beirut 1873.
- Abu'l-'Alā' al-Mu'arrī* († 449 H., beg. 10 March 1057) Sakt ez-zind, Poems with Commentary. 2 vols. Bulāk 1286 and 1302 (Another edition Beirut 1884). — Luzūm mā lā yalzam. Bombay 1303. 4^o; Luzūmiyāt 2 vols. Cairo 1891. — *Caroli Rieu* de Abul-Alae

poetae arabici vita et carminibus. Bonnae 1843. Cf. Zeitschrift der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft 29, 304; 30, 40; 31, 471 ff.

Yatīmat ad-dahr fī šu'arā' ahl al-'asr, Anthology composed by Abū Maṣṣūr 'Abd al-Malik at-Ta'ālībī († 429 H., beg. 14. Oct. 1037) 4 vols. Damascus 1302.

Anthologie arabe ou choix de poésies arabes inédites traduites pour la première fois en français et accompagnées d'observations critiques et littéraires par M. Grangeret de La Grange. (Paris) 1828.

N. BELLES-LETTRES, ETHICS, ROMANCES.

*The Kāmil of *El-Mubarrad* († 285 H., beg. 28. Jan. 898), edited for the German Oriental Society by W. Wright. Part. 1—12; Leipzig 1864—92. A reprint appeared in Cairo 2 vols. 1308. al-'Ikḍ al-farīd, by *Ibn 'Abd-rabbihi al-Andalusī* († 328 H., beg. 28. March 860) 3 vols. Bulak 1293.

Kitāb al-Muwaššā of Abu 't-Tayyib Muḥammed ibn Ishāq al-Waššā (lived 860—936 A. D.) edited by R. Brünnow. Leyden 1886.

Ibn Arabschah († 854 H., beg. 14. Febr. 1450) Fructus imperatorum et jociatio ingeniosorum edidit G. G. Freytag. 2. vol. Bonnae 1832. 4^o. — Oriental editions with the title: Fākihat al-ḥulafā' wa-mufākahat az-zurafā'.

Maḳāmāt badī' az-zamān al-*Hamadānī* (al-Hamadānī, the predecessor of Hariri died 398 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1007) with commentary by Ṣeiḥ Muḥammad Abdo. Beirut 1889. Other Makamat of Hamadānī Constantinople 1298.

*Les séances de *Hariri* (al-Harīrī † 516 H., beg. 12. March 1122), avec un commentaire choisi par Silvestre de Sacy; 1 éd. Paris 1822; 2. éd. par Reinaud et J. Derenbourg. 2 tom. Paris 1847—1853. — With the Commentary of as-Sarīsī († 619 H., beg. 15. Feb. 1222) 2 vols. Bulak 1284. — Maḳāmāt (Vowelled text) 2. Ed. Beyrouth 1886. — The Assemblies of Al-Hariri, transl. &c. by Thomas Chenery. Vol I 1867. — Do. Arabic text with English notes &c. by F. Steingass 1895.

*Kitāb *Adab al-Kātib* (proply. an aid to elegant writing) composed by Muḥammed Abdallāh ibn Muslim *Ibn Kutāiba* († in the 2nd. half of the 3rd. Centy. of the Flight). Cairo 1300.

Kitāb al-maṭal as-sā'ir fī 'ādāb al-kātib waš-šā'ir (Treatise on Style) by *Ibn al-Aṭīr al-Gazarī* († 637 H., beg. 3. Aug. 1239) Cairo 1282.

Rasāil (Letters) abī'l-Faḍl badī' az-zamān al-*Hamadānī* († 398 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1007). Constantinople 1298.

al-*Maidānī* († 518 H., beg. 19. Feb. 1124) Maḡma' al-amṭāl. (Collection of Proverbs). 2 vols. Bulak 1284. — Arabum proverbial,

- vocalibus instruxit, latine vertit, commentario illustravit G. G. Freytag I, II, III (a b.), Bonnae 1838—43.
- † Les colliers d'or, allocutions morales de Zamakhschari (*az-Zamaḥṣarī* † 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143) texte arabe suivi d'une traduction française et d'un commentaire philologique par C. Barbier de Meynard. Paris 1876.
- Alī's* hundert Sprüche arabisch und persisch paraphrasiert von Reschid-eddin Watwat, nebst einem doppelten Anhang arabischer Sprüche herausgegeben, übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen begleitet von H. L. Fleischer, Leipzig 1837. 4^o.
- Sirāḡ al-mulūk (Ethics and Anecdotes) composed by Abū Bkr Muḥammed aṭ-Ṭarṭūṣī al-Mālikī († 520 H., beg. 27. Jan. 1126). Cairo 1289.
- Muḥādarāt al-'udabā wa-muḥāwarāt aš-šu'arā' wal-bulagā', a species of Ethics with Anecdotes by ar-Rāḡib al-Isfahānī († in the beginning of the 6th centy. of the Flight). 2 vols. Cairo 1287. 4^o.
- al-Mustatraf fī kull fann al-mustazraf, a species of anthological Encyclopaedia compiled by Aḥmad al-Idšihī (lived about 800 H.) 2 vols. Cairo 1304. 1307.
- Sīret 'Antar ibn Šaddād, 32 vols. Cairo 1286. 1307. (another recension 10 vols. Beirut 1871). Cf. Antar, a Bedouen romance. Translated from Arabic by T. Hamilton. Part. I, i—iv. London 1820.
- Alf laila wa-laila. Tausend und eine Nacht arabisch. Nach einer Handschrift aus Tunis herausg. von Maximilian Habicht I—VIII; fortges. von H. L. Fleischer IX—XII vol. Breslau 1825—43. (This edition is not suitable for beginners in Arabic, as the language is in many parts strongly influenced by the vulgar tongue). — The Alf Laila or book of the thousand nights and one night, published from an Egyptian Ms. by W. H. Macnaghten. 4 vols. Calcutta 1839—42. — 4 vols. Bulak 1279. — Original in expurgated edition. Beyrout 1888—90. — Following the earlier Bulak edition: The thousand and one nights commonly called, in England, The Arabian nights' entertainments. Translated by W. Lane. 3 vol. London. 1 ed. 1841. Other editions by Edw. Stanley Poole (the last 1882).

PART II.

PARADIGMS, CHRESTOMATHY
AND
GLOSSARY.

PARADIGMATA.

TABULA I.

Suffixa et Praefixa in flexione verbi adhibita.

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum
3. masc.	sing.		يَ (يُ) —
3. fem.	"	تَ —	تَ (تُ) —
2. masc.	"	تَ —	تَ (تُ) —
2. fem.	"	تَ —	تَ (تُ) — يَنَ (يُ) (يَ)
1.	"	تَ —	أَ (أُ) —
3. masc.	dual.	ا —	يَ (يُ) اَنَ (ا)
3. fem.	"	تَا —	تَ (تُ) اَنَ (ا)
2.	"	تُمَا —	تَ (تُ) اَنَ (ا)
3. masc.	plur.	وَا —	يَ (يُ) وَاَنَ (وا)
3. fem.	"	نَ —	يَ (يُ) نَ —
2. masc.	"	تُمَ —	تَ (تُ) وَاَنَ (وا)
2. fem.	"	تُنَ —	تَ (تُ) نَ —
1.	"	ذَا —	تَ (تُ) ذَا —

TABULA II.

Paradigma flexionis verbi sani stirpis I.

Activum

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum					Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopat.	Energ. I.	Energ. II	
3. masc.	sing.	قَتَلَ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	اَقْتُلْ
3. fem.	"	قَتَلَتْ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	اَقْتُلِي
2. masc.	"	قَتَلْتَ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	اَقْتُلْ
2. fem.	"	قَتَلْتِ	تَقْتُلِينَ	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِينَ	تَقْتُلِينَ	اَقْتُلِي
1.	"	قَتَلْتُ	اَقْتُلُ	اَقْتُلْ	اَقْتُلْ	اَقْتُلْ	اَقْتُلْ	اَقْتُلْ

موت

تهدئة

3. masc.	dual.	قَتَلَا	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	اَقْتُلَا
3. fem.	"	قَتَلَتَا	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	اَقْتُلَا
2.	"	قَتَلْتُمَا	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	اَقْتُلَا
3. masc.	plur.	قَتَلُوا	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ	اَقْتُلُوا
3. fem.	"	قَتَلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	اَقْتُلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قَتَلْتُمْ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ	اَقْتُلُوا
2. fem.	"	قَتَلْتُنَّ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	اَقْتُلْنَ
1.	"	قَتَلْنَا	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	اَقْتُلْ

TABULA III.
Paradigma flexionis
 Passivi I verbi sani

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopat.
3. masc.	sing.	قُتِلَ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتْ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتَ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتِ	تُقْتَلِينَ	تُقْتَلِي	تُقْتَلِي
1.	"	قُتِلْتُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ
3. masc.	dual.	قُتِلَا	يُقْتَلَانِ	يُقْتَلَا	يُقْتَلَا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلْتَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
2.	"	قُتِلْتُمَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُتِلُوا	يُقْتَلُونَ	يُقْتَلُوا	يُقْتَلُوا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتُمْ	تُقْتَلُونَ	تُقْتَلُوا	تُقْتَلُوا
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتُنَّ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ
1.	"	قُتِلْنَا	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ

TABULA IV.

Paradigma stirpium verbi quadrilitteralis.

Stirps	Genus	Perfectum	Imperfectum	Imperativus	Participium	Infinitivus
I	Act.	قَطَرٌ	يَقْطُرُ	قَطِرْ	مَقْطُرٌ	قَطْرٌ
I	Pass.	قَطِرَ	يُقْطَرُ		مَقْمُطَرٌ	تَقْطُرُ
II	Act.	تَقَطَّرَ	يَتَقَطَّرُ	تَقَطَّرْ	مَتَقَطَّرٌ	
II	Pass.	تَقَطِّرَ	يَتَقَطَّرُ		مَتَقْمُطَرٌ	

TABULA V.
Paradigma stirpium verbi sani.

	I	II	III	IV	V
Perfectum Activi	قَتَلَ	قَتَلَ	قَاتَلَ	اَقْتَلَ	تَقَتَلَ
Imperfectum "	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتِلُ	يُقَاتِلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَتَقَتَّلُ
Imperativus "	اَقْتُلْ	قَتِلْ	قَاتِلْ	اَقْتُلْ	تَقَتِّلْ
Participium "	قَاتِلٌ	مُقْتِلٌ	مُقَاتِلٌ	مُقْتِلٌ	مُتَقَتِّلٌ
Perfectum Passivi	قَتِلَ	قَتِلَ	قَوِتِلَ	اَقْتِلَ	تَقَتِّلَ
Imperfectum "	يُقْتَلُ	يَقْتَلُ	يُقَاتَلُ	يَقْتَلُ	يَتَقَتَّلُ
Participium "	مَقْتُولٌ	مَقْتُلٌ	مُقَاتَلٌ	مَقْتُلٌ	مُتَقَتَّلٌ
Infinitivus	قَتْلٌ	تَقْيِيلٌ	مُقَاتَلَةٌ vel قِتَالٌ	اِقْتَالٌ	تَقْتِيلٌ

TABULA VI.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi mediae geminatae

§34

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum			Impera- tivus
			Indica- tivus	Subjunc- tivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	فَرَّ	يَفِرُّ	يَفِرَّ	يَفِرُّ يَفِرِّ	
3. fem.	"	فَرَّتْ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرَّ	تَفِرُّ تَفِرِّ	
2. masc.	"	فَرَرْتَ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرَّ	تَفِرُّ تَفِرِّ	اِفِرِّ فِرِّ
2. fem.	"	فَرَرْتَ	تَفِرِّيْنَ	تَفِرِّيْ	تَفِرِّيْ	فِرِّيْ
1.	"	فَرَرْتُ	اِفِرُّ	اِفِرَّ	اِفِرُّ اِفِرِّ	
3. masc.	dual.	فَرَا	يَفِرَّانِ	يَفِرَّا	يَفِرَّا	
3. fem.	"	فَرَّتَا	تَفِرَّانِ	تَفِرَّا	تَفِرَّا	
2.	"	فَرَرْتُمَا	تَفِرَّانِ	تَفِرَّا	تَفِرَّا	فِرَّا
3. masc.	plur.	فَرُّوا	يَفِرُّوْنَ	يَفِرُّوا	يَفِرُّوا	
3. fem.	"	فَرَرْنَ	يَفِرُّوْنَ	يَفِرُّوْنَ	يَفِرُّوْنَ	
2. masc.	"	فَرَرْتُمْ	تَفِرُّوْنَ	تَفِرُّوا	تَفِرُّوا	فِرُّوا
2. fem.	"	فَرَرْتُنَّ	تَفِرُّوْنَ	تَفِرُّوْنَ	تَفِرُّوْنَ	اِفِرُّوْنَ
1.	"	فَرَرْنَا	نَفِرُّ	نَفِرَّ	نَفِرُّ نَفِرِّ	

TABULA VII.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae geminatae

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		
			Indicati- vus	Subjunc- tivus	Apocopatus
3. masc.	sing.	فُرِّ	يُفَرِّ	يُفَرِّ	يُفَرِّ
3. fem.	"	فُرِّتْ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ
2. masc.	"	فُرِّتَ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ
2. fem.	"	فُرِّتِ	تُفَرِّينَ	تُفَرِّى	تُفَرِّى
1.	"	فُرِّتُ	أُفَرِّ	أُفَرِّ	أُفَرِّ
3. masc.	dual.	فُرَّا	يُفَرَّانِ	يُفَرَّا	يُفَرَّا
3. fem.	"	فُرَّتَا	تُفَرَّانِ	تُفَرَّا	تُفَرَّا
2.	"	فُرِّرْتُمَا	تُفَرَّانِ	تُفَرَّا	تُفَرَّا
3. masc.	plur.	فُرُّوا	يُفَرُّونَ	يُفَرُّوا	يُفَرُّوا
3. fem.	"	فُرِّرنَ	يُفَرُّرنَ	يُفَرُّرنَ	يُفَرُّرنَ
2. masc.	"	فُرِّرْتُمْ	تُفَرُّونَ	تُفَرُّوا	تُفَرُّوا
2. fem.	"	فُرِّرْتُنَّ	تُفَرُّونَ	تُفَرُّونَ	تُفَرُّونَ
1.	"	فُرِّرْنَا	نُفَرِّ	نُفَرِّ	نُفَرِّ

TABULA VIII

Paradigma stirpium verbi mediae geminatae contractarum.

	I	III	IV	VI	VII	VIII	X
— Perfectum Activi	فَرَّ	فَارَّ	افَرَّ	تَفَارَّ	انْفَرَّ	افْتَرَّ	اسْتَفَرَّ
— Imperfectum "	يَفِرُّ	يَفَارُّ	يَفِرُّ	يَتَفَارُّ	يَنْفَرُّ	يَفْتَرُّ	يَسْتَفِرُّ
— Imperativus "	اَفِرِّ	فَارِّ	اَفِرِّ	تَفَارِّ	انْفَرِّ	افْتَرِّ	اسْتَفِرِّ
— Participium "	فَارٌّ	مَفَارٌّ	مَفِرٌّ	مَتَفَارٌّ	مَنْفَرٌّ	مَفْتَرٌّ	مَسْتَفِرٌّ
— Perfectum Passivi	فُرِّ	فُرِّ	اُفِرَّ	تُفَرِّ	اُنْفَرَّ	اُفْتَرَّ	اُسْتَفِرَّ
— Imperfectum "	يُفَرُّ	يُفَارُّ	يُفَرُّ	يُتَفَارُّ	يُنْفَرُّ	يُفْتَرُّ	يُسْتَفِرُّ
— Participium "	مُفَرٌّ	مُفَارٌّ	مُفِرٌّ	مُتَفَارٌّ	مُنْفَرٌّ	مُفْتَرٌّ	مُسْتَفِرٌّ
— Infinitivus "	فَرٌّ	فَرٌّ	اَفَرٌّ	تَفَارٌّ	انْفَرٌّ	افْتَرٌّ	اسْتَفَرٌّ

TABULA IX.

Paradigma formarum selectarum flexionis
verborum hamzatorum

		Verbi pr. ع	Verbi sec. ع	verbi tert. ع
I. Perf.	Act.	أَثَرَ	كَتَبَ لَامَ	قَرَأَ
Impf.	"	يَأْتِرُ	يَكْتُبُ يَلَامَ	يَقْرَأُ
Imperat.	"	اِثْرُ	اِكْتُبْ اِلَامَ	اِقْرَأْ
Partic.	"	آثِرٌ	لَاثِمٌ	قَارِىٌ
Perf.	Pass.	أُثِرَ	لُتِمَ	قُرِىَ
Imperf.	"	يُوتِرُ	يُلَامُ	يُقْرَأُ
II. Imperf.	Act.	يُوتِرُ	يَلْتِمُ	يُقَرِّىَ
Infinit.	"	تَأْتِيرٌ	قَلْتِمٌ	تَقَرِّئَةٌ
IV. Perf.	Act.	آثَرَ	آلَامَ	اقْرَأَ
Perf.	Pass.	أُوتِرَ	أُلْتِمَ	اُقْرِىَ
VIII. Perf.	Act.	(اِتَّخَذَ) اِيتَثَرَ	(اِتَّخَذَ) اِلْتَامَ	(اِتَّخَذَ) اِقْتَرَأَ
Imperf.	"	(يَتَّخِذُ) يَأْتَثِرُ	(يَتَّخِذُ) يِلْتَمُ	(يَتَّخِذُ) يِقْتَرِىَ
Perf.	Pass.	(اُتُّخِذَ) اُوتُتِرَ	(اُتُّخِذَ) اُلْتِمَ	(اُتُّخِذَ) اُقْتَرِىَ
Imperf.	"	(يُتَّخِذُ) يُوْتَثِرُ	(يُتَّخِذُ) يُلْتَمُ	(يُتَّخِذُ) يُقْتَرَأُ

TABULA X.

Paradigma flexionis verborum

primae radicalis , et ی

		Verbi pr. , Imperf. i	Verbi pr. , Imperf. a	Verbi pr. , sani	Verbi pr. ی
I. Perf.	Act.	وَصَدَ	وَدَعَ	وَسَخَ	بَسَرَ
—	Imperf. "	يَصِلُ	يَدَعُ	يُوسَخُ	يُبَسِّرُ
—	Imperat. "	صِلْ	دَعْ	(أَوْسَنْ، اِجْلَدْ)	اِبْسِرْ
	Imperf. Pass.	يُوصَلُ	يُودَعُ	يُوسَخُ	يُوسَرُ
—	Infinit.	صِلَّةٌ	دَعَةٌ، وَدَعٌ	وَسَخٌ	يَسَرٌ
IV. Perf.	Act.	أَوْصَلَ	أَوْدَعَ	أَوْسَخَ	اِبْسَرَ
	Imperf. "	يُوصِلُ	يُودِعُ	يُوسِخُ	يُوسِرُ
	Partic. "	مُوصِلٌ	مُودِعٌ	مُوسِخٌ	مُوسِرٌ
	Infinit.	اِیْصَالٌ	اِیْدَاعٌ	اِیْسَاخٌ	اِیْسَارٌ
VIII. Perf.	Act.	اِتَّصَلَ	اِتَّدَعَ	اِتَّسَخَ	اِتَّسَرَ
	Imperf. "	يَتَّصِلُ	يَتَّدَعُ	يَتَّسِخُ	يَتَّسِرُ
	Perf. Pass.	اُتِّصَلَ	اُتَّدَعَ	اُتَّسِخَ	اُتَّسِرَ
X. Perf.	Act.	اِسْتَوْصَلَ	اِسْتَوْدَعَ	اِسْتَوْسَخَ	اِسْتَبَسَرَ
	Infinit.	اِسْتِیْصَالٌ	اِسْتِیْدَاعٌ	اِسْتِیْسَاخٌ	اِسْتِیْسَارٌ

TABULA XI.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi mediae radicalis , ٤٤ - ٤٥

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	قَالَ	يَقُولُ	يَقُولَ	يَقُلْ	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتْ	تَقُولُ	تَقُولَ	تَقُلْ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتَ	تَقُولُ	تَقُولَ	تَقُلْ	قُلْ
2. fem.	"	قُلْتِ	تَقُولِينَ	تَقُولِي	تَقُولِي	قُولِي
1.	"	قُلْتُ	أَقُولُ ^E	أَقُولَ ^E	أَقُلْ ^E	
3. masc.	dual.	قَالَا	يَقُولَانِ	يَقُولَا	يَقُولَا	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	
2.	"	قُلْتُمَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	قُولَا
3. masc.	plur.	قَالُوا	يَقُولُونَ	يَقُولُوا	يَقُولُوا	
3. fem.	"	قُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتُمْ	تَقُولُونَ	تَقُولُوا	تَقُولُوا	قُولُوا
2. fem.	"	قُلْتُنَّ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	قُلْنَ
1.	"	قُلْنَا	نَقُولُ	نَقُولَ	نَقُلْ	

TABULA XII.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi mediae radicalis ي

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum			Impera- tivus
			Indicati- vus	Subjunc- tivus	Apocopa- tus	
3. masc.	sing.	سَارَ	يَسِيرُ	يَسِيرَ	يَسِرْ	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	
2. masc.	"	سِرَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	سِرْ
2. fem.	"	سِرَتْ	تَسِيرِينَ	تَسِيرِي	تَسِيرِي	سِيرِي
1.	"	سِرْتُ	أَسِيرُ ^٤	أَسِيرَ ^٤	أَسِرْ ^٤	
3. masc.	dual.	سَارَا	يَسِيرَانِ	يَسِيرَا	يَسِيرَا	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	
2.	"	سِرْتُمَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	سِيرَا
3. masc.	plur.	سَارُوا	يَسِيرُونَ	يَسِيرُوا	يَسِيرُوا	
3. fem.	"	سِرْنَ	يَسِيرْنَ	يَسِيرْنَ	يَسِيرْنَ	
2. masc.	"	سِرْتُمْ	تَسِيرُونَ	تَسِيرُوا	تَسِيرُوا	سِيرُوا
2. fem.	"	سِرْتُنَّ	تَسِيرْنَ	تَسِيرْنَ	تَسِيرْنَ	سِرْنَ
1.	"	سِرْنَا	نَسِيرُ	نَسِيرَ	نَسِرْ	

TABULA XIII.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae radicalis , vel ي

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunc- tivus	Apocopa- tus
3. masc.	sing.	قِيلَ	يُقَالُ	يُقَالُ	يُقَلُّ
3. fem.	"	قِيلَتْ	تُقَالُ	تُقَالُ	تُقَلُّ
2. masc.	"	قِلْتَ	تُقَالُ	تُقَالُ	تُقَلُّ
2. fem.	"	قِلْتِ	تُقَالِينَ	تُقَالِي	تُقَالِي
1.	"	قِلْتُ	أُقَالُ	أُقَالُ	أُقَلُّ
3. masc.	dual.	قِيلَا	يُقَالَانِ	يُقَالَا	يُقَالَا ^{n. 13.}
3. fem.	"	قِيلَتَا	تُقَالَانِ	تُقَالَا	تُقَالَا
2.	"	قِلْتُمَا	تُقَالَانِ	تُقَالَا	تُقَالَا
3. masc.	plur.	قِيلُوا	يُقَالُونَ	يُقَالُوا	يُقَالُوا
3. fem.	"	قِيلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قِلْتُمْ	تُقَالُونَ	تُقَالُوا	تُقَالُوا
2. fem.	"	قِلْتُنَّ	تُقَلْنَ	تُقَلْنَ	تُقَلْنَ
1.	"	قِلْنَا	نُقَالُ	نُقَالُ	نُقَلُّ

TABULA XIV.

Paradigma stirpium verborum mediae, et ى irregularium.

	I	I	I	IV	VII	VIII	X
	Verb. med. فَعَلَ د	Verb. med. فَعَلَ د	Verb. med. فَعَلَ ى	Verb. med. فَعَلَ د	Verb. med. فَعَلَ د	Verb. med. فَعَلَ د	Verb. med. فَعَلَ د
Perfect, Act.	قَالَ	خَافَ	سَارَ	أَقَالَ	انْقَالَ	اِقْتَالَ	اسْتَقَالَ
(II. P. masc. S.	قُلْتُ	خَفْتُ	سَرْتُ	أَقَلْتُ	انْقَلْتُ	اِقْتَلْتُ	اسْتَقَلْتُ
Imperf. "	يَقُولُ	يَخَافُ	يَسِيرُ	يَقِيلُ	يَنْقَالُ	يَقْتَالُ	يَسْتَقِيلُ
Imperat. "	قُلْ	خَفْ	سِرْ	أَقِلْ	انْقَلْ	اِقْتَلْ	اسْتَقِلْ
Particip. "	قَائِلٌ	خَائِفٌ	سَائِرٌ	مُقِيلٌ	مَنْقَالٌ	مُقْتَالٌ	مُسْتَقِيلٌ
Perfect. Pass.	قِيلَ	خِيفَ	سِيرَ	أُقِيلَ	أُنْقِيلَ	أُقْتِيلَ	أُسْتَقِيلَ
Imperf. "	يُقَالُ	يُخَافُ	يُسَارُ	يُقَالُ	يَنْقَالُ	يَقْتَالُ	يَسْتَقَالُ
Particip. "	مَقُولٌ	مَخُوفٌ	مَسِيرٌ	مُقَالٌ	مَنْقَالٌ	مُقْتَالٌ	مُسْتَقَالٌ
Infinitivus	قَوْلٌ	خَوْفٌ	سَيْرٌ	إِقَالَةٌ	إِنْقِيَالٌ	إِقْتِيَالٌ	إِسْتِقَالَةٌ

TABULA XV.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae **فَعَلَ** § 45

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc. sing.		غَرَا	يَغْزُو	يَغْزُو	يَغْزُ	
3. fem.	"	غَرَتْ	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُ	
2. masc.	"	غَرَوْتَ	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُ	أَغْزُ
2. fem.	"	غَرَوْتَ	تَغْزِينَ	تَغْزِي	تَغْزِي	أَغْزِي
1.	"	غَرَوْتُ	أَغْزُوْا	أَغْزُوْا	أَغْزُ	
3. masc. dual.		غَرَا	يَغْزَوَانِ	يَغْزُوا	يَغْزُوا	
3. fem.	"	غَرَتَا	تَغْزَوَانِ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	
2.	"	غَرَوْتُمَا	تَغْزَوَانِ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	أَغْزُوا
3. masc. plur.		غَرَا	يَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُوا	يَغْزُوا	
3. fem.	"	غَرَوْنَ	يَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُونَ	يَغْزُونَ	
2. masc.	"	غَرَوْتُمْ	تَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	أَغْزُوا
2. fem.	"	غَرَوْتُنَّ	تَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُونَ	تَغْزُونَ	أَغْزُونَ
1.	"	غَرَوْنَا	نَغْزُو	نَغْزُو	نَغْزُ	

TABULA XVI.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae فَعَلَ ي

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	رَمَى	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِ	
3. fem.	"	رَمَتْ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِ	اَرْمِ
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتِ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِي	تَرْمِي	اَرْمِي
1.	"	رَمَيْتُ	اَرْمِي	اَرْمِي	اَرْمِ	
3. masc.	dual.	رَمَيَا	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِيَا	
3. fem.	"	رَمَتَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا	
2.	"	رَمَيْتُمَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا	اَرْمِيَا
3. masc.	plur.	رَمَوْا	يَرْمُونَ	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمُوا	
3. fem.	"	رَمَيْنَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتُمْ	تَرْمُونَ	تَرْمُوا	تَرْمُوا	اَرْمُوا
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتُنَّ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	اَرْمِينَ
1.	"	رَمَيْنَا	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِي	نَرْمِ	

TABULA XVII.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae و فَعَلَ ي vel

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	رَضِيَ	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَ	
3. fem.	"	رَضِيَتْ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	اِرْضَ
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتِ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	اِرْضَى
1.	"	رَضِيتُ	اَرْضَى	اَرْضَى	اَرْضَ	
3. masc.	dual.	رَضِيَا	يَرْضَيَانِ	يَرْضَيَا	يَرْضَيَا	
3. fem.	"	رَضِيَتَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَا	
2.	"	رَضَيْتُمَا	تَرْضَيَانِ	تَرْضَيَا	تَرْضَيَا	اِرْضَيَا
3. masc.	plur.	رَضَوْا	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضَوْا	يَرْضَوْا	
3. fem.	"	رَضِينَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتُمْ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضَوْا	تَرْضَوْا	اِرْضَوْا
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتُنَّ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	اِرْضَيْنَ
1.	"	رَضِينَا	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَ	

TABULA XIX.

Paradigma stirpium verborum ultimae, et ى

	I verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	I verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	I verbi ult. , فَعِلَ ى	II verbi ult. , فَعَلَ ى	III verbi ult. , فَعَلَ ى	IV verbi ult. , فَعَلَ ى
Perfectum Activi	غَرَا	زَمَى	رَضَى	قَضَى	قَاضَى	اقْضَى
Imperfectum "	يَغْرُو	يَزِمَى	يَرْضَى	يَقْضَى	يُقَاضَى	يُقْضَى
Imperativus "	اغْرُ	اِزِمِ	اِرْضِ	قِضْ	قَاضِ	اقْضِ
Participium "	غَارِزٌ	رَامِ	رَاضٍ	مُقِضٌ	مُقَاضٍ	مُقْضٍ
Perfectum Passivi	غُرِيَ	زِمَى	رِضَى	قُضِيَ	قُوضَى	اقْضَى
Imperfectum "	يَغْرَى	يَزِمَى	يَرْضَى	يَقْضَى	يُقَاضَى	يُقْضَى
Participium "	مَغْرُورٌ	مَرْمَى	مَرِضٍ	مَقْضَى	مُقَاضَى	مُقْضَى
Infinitivus "	غَرُو	زِمَى	رِضَى	تَقْضِيَةٌ	قِضَاءٌ vel مُقَاضَاةٌ	اقْضَاءٌ

71 (100)

TABULA XVIII.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi ultimae , vel ي

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus
3. masc.	sing.	قُضِيَ	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَ
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتْ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيْتَ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَ
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتِ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى
1.	"	قُضِيْتُ	اُقْضَى	اُقْضَى	اُقْضَ
3. masc.	dual.	قُضِيَا	يُقْضَيَانِ	يُقْضَيَا	يُقْضَيَا
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتَا	تُقْضَيَانِ	تُقْضَيَا	تُقْضَيَا
2.	"	قُضِيْتُمَا	تُقْضَيَانِ	تُقْضَيَا	تُقْضَيَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُضُوا	يُقْضَوْنَ	يُقْضَوْا	يُقْضَوْا
3. fem.	"	قُضِينَ	يُقْضَيْنَ	يُقْضَيْنَ	يُقْضَيْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيْتُمْ	تُقْضَوْنَ	تُقْضَوْا	تُقْضَوْا
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتُنَّ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَيْنَ
1.	"	قُضِينَا	نُقْضَى	نُقْضَى	نُقْضَ

TABULA XX.

576 77

Paradigma flexionis nominis

a) generis masculini

α) triptoti

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.	قَصَابٌ	الْقَصَابُ	قَصَابٌ
Gen.	قَصَابٍ	الْقَصَابِ	قَصَابٍ
Acc.	قَصَابًا	الْقَصَابَ	قَصَابَ
Dual. Nom.	قَصَابَانِ	الْقَصَابَانِ	قَصَابَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابَيْنِ	الْقَصَابَيْنِ	قَصَابَيْ
Plur. Nom.	قَصَابُونَ	الْقَصَابُونَ	قَصَابُو
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابِينَ	الْقَصَابِينَ	قَصَابِي

β) diptoti

Sing. Nom.	آخِرٌ	الْآخِرُ	آخِرٌ
Gen.	آخِرٍ	الْآخِرِ	آخِرٍ
Acc.	آخَرَ	الْآخَرَ	آخَرَ
Dual. Nom.	آخِرَانِ	الْآخِرَانِ	آخِرَا
Gen. Acc.	آخِرَيْنِ	الْآخِرَيْنِ	آخِرَي

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Plur. Nom.	آخِرُونَ	الْآخِرُونَ	آخِرُو
Gen. Acc.	آخِرِينَ	الْآخِرِينَ	آخِرِي

TABULA XXI.

b) generis feminini

α) triptoti

Sing. Nom.	سَاعَةٌ	السَّاعَةُ	سَاعَةُ
Gen.	سَاعَةٍ	السَّاعَةِ	سَاعَةٍ
Acc.	سَاعَةً	السَّاعَةَ	سَاعَةً
Dual. Nom.	سَاعَتَانِ	السَّاعَتَانِ	سَاعَتَا
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَتَيْنِ	السَّاعَتَيْنِ	سَاعَتَيَّ
Plur. Nom.	سَاعَاتُ	السَّاعَاتُ	سَاعَاتُ
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَاتٍ	السَّاعَاتِ	سَاعَاتِ

β) diptoti

Sing. Nom.	مِئَةٌ	ceterum idem
Gen. Acc.	مِئَةٍ	

6 73,76

TABULA XXII.

§ 71 c § 81. a

a) generis masculini in ‿ desinentis.

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.-Gen.	قَاضٍ ^{inde}	الْقَاضِي	قَاضِي
Acc.	قَاضِيًا	الْقَاضِيَّ	قَاضِيَّ
Dual. Nom.	قَاضِيَانِ	الْقَاضِيَانِ	قَاضِيَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِيَيْنِ	الْقَاضِيَيْنِ	قَاضِيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.	قَاضُونَ	الْقَاضُونَ	قَاضُو
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِينَ	الْقَاضِينَ	قَاضِي

b) nominis in ‿ا, ‿ي desinentis.

§ 71 c § 81. a

a) triptoti

Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	مُصْطَفَى	الْمُصْطَفَى	مُصْطَفَى
Dual. Nom.	مُصْطَفَيَانِ	الْمُصْطَفَيَانِ	مُصْطَفَيَا
Gen.-Acc.	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	الْمُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.	مُصْطَفَوْنَ	الْمُصْطَفَوْنَ	مُصْطَفَوْ
Gen.-Acc.	مُصْطَفَيْنِ	الْمُصْطَفَيْنِ	مُصْطَفَى

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	عَصَا	الْعَصَا	عَصَا
Dual. Nom.	عَصَوَانِ	الْعَصَوَانِ	عَصَوَا
	β) diptoti		
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	دِكْرِي	الدِّكْرِي	دِكْرِي
id.	دُنْيَا	الدُّنْيَا	دُنْيَا

TABULA XXIII.

Paradigma nominis cum suffixis. § 82

a) nominis masc. in singulari positi قَصَابٌ; fem. جَارِيَةٌ.

cum suffixo	1.	pers. sing.	جَارِيَتِي fem.	قَصَابِي
"	"	2.	"	قَصَابُكَ masc.
"	"	2.	"	قَصَابِك fem.
"	"	3.	"	قَصَابُهُ (gen. قَصَابِهِ) masc.
"	"	3.	"	قَصَابُهَا fem.
"	"	2.	"	قَصَابُكُم dualis
"	"	3.	"	قَصَابُهُمَا (gen. قَصَابِهِمَا)
"	"	1.	"	قَصَابُنَا pluralis
"	"	2.	"	قَصَابُكُمْ msc.
"	"	2.	"	قَصَابُكُن fem.
"	"	3.	"	قَصَابُهُمْ (gen. قَصَابِهِمْ) msc.
"	"	3.	"	قَصَابُهُن (gen. قَصَابِهِنَّ) fem.

b) *nominis in duali positi.*

Nominativus cum suffixo 1. pers. sing.						قَصَّابَايَ
"	"	"	2.	"	msc.	قَصَّابَاكَ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	"	"	1.	"	"	قَصَّابَايَ
"	"	"	2.	"	msc.	قَصَّابَايْكَ
"	"	"	3.	"	"	قَصَّابَايْهِ
"	"	"	3.	"	fem.	قَصَّابَايْهَا etc.

c) *nominis masculini in plurali positi.*

Nominativus cum suffixo 1. pers. sing.						قَصَّابَايَ
"	"	"	2.	"	msc.	قَصَّابَاوُكَ etc.
Gen.-Acc.	"	"	1.	"	"	قَصَّابَايَ
"	"	"	2.	"	msc.	قَصَّابَايْكَ
"	"	"	3.	"	msc.	قَصَّابَايْهِ
"	"	"	3.	"	fem.	قَصَّابَايْهَا etc.

d) *nominis feminini in plurali positi.*

Nom.-Gen.-Acc. cum suff. 1. pers. sing.						سَاعَاتِي
Nominativus	"	"	2.	"	msc.	سَاعَاتُكَ
"	"	"	3.	"	"	سَاعَاتُهَا etc.
Gen.-Acc.	"	"	2.	"	"	سَاعَاتِكَ
"	"	"	3.	"	"	سَاعَاتِهَا etc.

EXERCISES AND TEXTS.

I.

A. EXERCISES IN READING.

1. الكتاب معرفة يقبضون ن ظلم ذخيرة تهتدى جميع
وصلنا فريق غالب ثمين اسكنوا رجز حطط خلف
بالغ هروبة شمس فرزدق بصل عام اضطربت قال
يغلظ نحرث تفلح ماض تشبه سلوك طاف حجج باع ورش
محسنات درج وظيفة شاه تقنص يلحقك حكاية
2. 3. قَتَلَ يُضْرَبُ دَاعٍ ظُهُورُ نَوْمٍ يَكَلْبُ مِيزَانٍ صَلَوَةٌ
ضَيْعَةٌ شَوَاطِ كُبْرَى تَيْهٌ رَضَى وَيَلَا مَشْرُوبٌ غِرَارَةٌ لَوْمًا
يَشْتَبِهُونَ حُجَجًا مُسْتَدَاقٍ سُفْلَى بُلْغُوا مَحْضَرَةٌ سَقَوْا
حُدَيَا مَحْتُومٌ تَزْدَلِيعٌ سُبُقُوا سَلِيمُنْ *
4. إِبْلِيسُ تَأْلَفُونَ أَسَدًا مُؤْنٍ أَعْيَنَةٌ أَنْزَلَ إِمْضَاءٌ
مَشْنُوءَةٌ ضَانٌ يُطَاطِي مِلَّةٌ هَنِيئَةٌ هَزَاءٌ مُؤَمَّرٌ كَيْبٌ
بَطُو زَائِدٌ حَمَرَاءُ يَبْدَأُ مَلَأَكَ يَجِيءُ *

5. وَبَكَتِ الْمُتَوَفَّى أُمُّ يَسِيبَ بَنِ النَّقْطِ الشَّيْعُ تَشْمَرًا
الظَّالِمِينَ مَقْضَى الدَّلُ الطَّحَّانِ الصِّدِيقِ الْحَيَّةُ
أَحْضَرُ الثَّرَاءِ الْقَتَاءُ الذَّهَبِيُّ اللَّهُو المَصْلَى السَّيَّارَةُ
اللَّهُ الْقَصَابِ الْإِيلِ الْمُفْتِشِ التَّطْهِيرُ يَرْدُ *

6. قَامَ الرَّسُولُ * اِعْتَزَلَ الْفَرِيقُ * فَاتَّبَعُوهُ وَلَا تَتَّبِعُوا
السُّبُلَ * الضَّرْبُ * اِشْهَدُ * حِزْبُ اللَّهِ * هُمُ الْغَالِبُونَ *
عَلَى السَّطْحِ * عَمْرُ بْنُ الْحَرِثِ * قَوْمٌ افْتَرَقُوا * بِسْمِ
الرَّحْمَنِ * زَيْدُ الطَّوِيلِ * إِنْ أَنْقَضَى الْأَمْرُ * لِلصَّبْرِ
الْجَمِيلِ * غَيُونًا أَنْبَسَطَ * مَا قَتِ الصَّبِيَّةُ فِي الْبَيْتِ *
اشْتَرَوْا الثِّيَرَانَ * عَنِ الطُّوفَانِ * عَيْنِي الْإِنْسَانِ *
الْإِفْتِرَاءُ * لِلدَّالِيَةِ *

7. مَلَانٌ آخِرًا تَسَاءَلُوا سَائِقِي قَضَاؤُهُ آذَى أَقْرَبَاءِ آفَةٍ
وَزَرَاءِ أَعْدَائِهِ يَجِيُونَ *

8. 9. الْعَالَمِينَ يُؤْمِنُ إِلَيْهِمْ كُلُّ مَادَّةٍ هُدًى رَحْمَةً وَدَعَا
يُفْتَرَى نَحْيَ يَنْظُرُوا وَلِيَّةُ السَّمَوَاتِ الرَّحْمَنُ تَأْتِيهِمْ
اتَّبَعْنِي اسْتَعْجَلِ الْمَلَائِكَةُ امْشِ تَحْمِلُهُ اخْتَلَفُوا بَشَرُ
أَمَدَكُمْ كَذَبُوهُ يُوبِقُهُنَّ بَيْنَهُمْ مَسْقَطَةٌ يَشَاءُ *

B. EXERCISES ON THE ETYMOLOGY.

16-29. ^{نفسه}بَشَرَ اجْتَدَبَ تَحَارَبَ أَحْزَنَ حَسَنَ تَوَرَّغَ غَضِبَ
 اسْتَحْكَبَ اضْطَجَعَ انْطَلَقَ شَاهَدَ اخْضَرَ اطَّلَعَ عَمِلَ
 اقْبَلَ تَنْصَرَ صَدَقَ تَزَلَزَلَ اسْتَعْمَلَ عُولَجَ طَلَحْنَ انْتَزَعَ
 تُقِيلَ قُرَّبَ اصْلَحَ تُقْوِصِرَ اضْطَرَبَ زَلَزَلَ *

30-33. خَبَرْتُ خَتَمْنَا اَخْرَجْتُ يَرْكَبُ احْسَنُ ارْتَعَدْتُ ثُمَّ تُرْصِعُ
 ارْزُقْ يَرْجِعُونَ افْتَحْ حَمَلًا نُحْمِدُ احْتَفِظْ يُدْفَعَانِ اُدْرِكُوا
 تَسْتُرُ يَرْغَبُوا نَتَكَلَّمُ اتْعَدِي كَبُرْتُ يَنْخَرِقُ اُظْهَرْتُ
 نَتَحَارَبُ لِقَبْتَا يَنْكَبِرُ يُشَبِّهْنَ اخْتَبِرْتُ يَنْكَشِفُ
 تُقْسِمُ افْتَرَقُوا نَكَرَهُ تَسْتَخْرِجِينَ تَقَدَّمُوا نَاشَدْنَا
 يَنْتَزِعُ اسْنَدُوا شَرِبْتُمْ تُسَلِّطِي امْتَنَعْنَا الْبَثُوا غَسَلْتُ
 تُشْرِفُونَ تُفَاخِرُ يُفْتَحَنَّ يَسْتَنْكِحُ نَتَفَقَّدُ اقْدَرْنَا
 اَعْلَمَنَّ الْبَسُوا فَرَعْنَا تَعَرَّضُ يُسْنَدُوا احْتَفَرُوا نَاكِحًا
 34-36. رَدَدْنَا يَضْمُونَ احْبَبْتُ يَنْفَكُ صَبَّ نَرْتَدُّ شِدَى خَرُوا
 اسْتَتَبْتُ يُقَرِّرُ هَمَمْتُمْ تُزْفَيْنَ تَنْقَضُ جُرُوا يَعَزِّزْنَ اُحِبُّوا
 نُحِلُّ مَرُّ شِدَدَاتٍ نَسْتَقِرُّ تَصَدَّدَ *

يَأْكُلُ مَرُوا تَوْمِينَ تَتَّخِذُ يَسْتَأْذِنُونَ تُوَخَّرُ اِيتَلَفْنَا 37-38

اَيْلَفَ اَكَلُوا بَوَسْنَا يَسْتَثِيرُ تَشَاءَ مَتَمَّ يُبْطِئُ بَطُوتُ
اِبْدَأُ نُسْتَبْطَأُ تَنْبَأُ اِمْتَلَأَنَّ تَخْطِئِينَ نَبِئْنَا يُطَاطِئُ *

رَدُوا يَوْسَنُ اَوْسَعْتُ تَصِفُ تَرْتُوا اُسْتُوَلِدَ تَتَعَدُّ 40.

تَتَوَاضَعُ يَصِلُوا تَفِيدِينَ دَعُوا نَقِفُ يُوَكِّلُ تَوَجَّهْنَ
يُوجِبُ يَبِئَسُ اِسْتَيْقَظْنَا تَوْقِظُ اِيْقَظُ تَرُدُ *

جَزَتْ نَقُومُ اَشْرَنَا صِرَ طِرْتُمْ اَتِمَّ بَاعُوا تَسْتَعِينُ 41-44.

اِعَوَجَّتْ يَخْتَارُ يُمَيِّزُونَ مَتَّ خِيَلَا كُنَّ يَبِغْنَ اَبِينُوا
خِفْتَمَا اَخْتَرْنَا نَنَامُ يُرِيدَانِ تَزَوَّجَتْ اَطِيعُوا يَنْهَارُ
اِنْهَارَتْ يَسْتَعِدُّ اَطَلَتْ غَيْرْتُمْ يَتَصَاحَبُوا نَمَّ لِمَنَا ذَكَ
خَافُوا اُسْتَعِينُ يَرُدُّ جُدْنَا *

يَمْشِي اَمْسَيْتُ خَدَوْنَا اَمَضَ لَقِيَتْ نَتَغَدَّى عَمُوا 45-48.

تَنْتَهِيْنَ يَصْلُونَ اَفْشَى اُقْنِنِيَتْ تَنْجُو اِنْقَضَتْ بَكَيْتَ
بُلَيْنَا تُبَلِّوْا يَكْفِيَانِ غَنَّ نَادَيْتُمْ يَنْبَغِي اِسْتَنْنَيْتَ
تَعْفِيْنَ تُبْنِي اِشْتَرَوْا اِشْتَرَوْا اِشْتَرَوْا يُكْنُونَ يَتَنَحَّ
اِرْمُوا اَدْرَيْتَ رَخُوتِ اِرْضَى نُسَمَّ دُوْدِيَتْ دَذَتْ *

49. يَلِي تُوَفِّيَتَ نَطْوَى تَشَاءُ يَوْمُونَ اِتَّقَتْ جِنَا يَرُونَ
تَرَيْنَ اَرِ اَرَيْتَ نَجِي يَوَدَّ *

53. جَعَلَنَاهُ نُثْنَتَهَا تَرْمِيهِمْ اَجَبْنَاكُمْ يَبِيعُكَ حَرَكْتُمُوهُ
نَشْتَرِيهِ يَتْرُكُوْكُمْا لُمْنِي يُجَبِّنَا يَفْتَحُهَا يُعَالِجُوْنَنِي مَنَعُوْكَ
ظَلَمْنَاهُنَّ نُحَدِّثُكُنَّ يُنَادِيهِمَا *

60-61. خَادِمٌ مُّرْتَعِدٌ مُّخْرَجٌ مُّسَلَّطٌ مَكْتُوبٌ مُّخْتَصَرٌ مُّتَكَارِبٌ
مُحَرِّكٌ مُّجْتَمِعٌ ثَاكِدٌ مُّتَّبِعٌ مُّضْطَجِعٌ مُّنَاكِحٌ عَمَلٌ مُّفَاخِرَةٌ
اِتِّسَامٌ فَتَحٌ مُّسْتَخْرِجٌ تَحْرِيمٌ تَحَارُبٌ اِلْتِصَاقٌ نُجُودٌ
مُتَمَسِّكٌ اِظْهَارٌ تَكَلُّمٌ نِكَاحٌ تَزْعُرُعٌ اِنْكِشَافٌ اِسْتِقْبَالٌ
مَعْمُولٌ تَقْرِيْبٌ مُتَفَقَّدٌ *

67-71. سَمِ اِنْفِكَالٌ اَذَنٌ مُنْقَضٌ حَاجٌ اِسْتِتْبَابٌ حُبٌّ مُرْتَدٌ
مَرْفُوفٌ مُسْتَقَرٌّ اَعَزُّ اَكِيدُ مَأْمُورٌ اِيْمَانٌ مُتَّخِذٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ
مَمْلُوءٌ قُرْآنٌ اِبْطَاءٌ مُمْتَلًى مُبْطَأٌ وَسَخٌ اِيْسَاعٌ مُتَعَدٌ
صِفَةٌ اِسْتِيْلَادٌ مُوَجِبٌ مُوقَظٌ وَضَعٌ تَوَكِيْدٌ بَيْعٌ خَوْفٌ
مُقِيمٌ صَائِرٌ اِخْتِيَارٌ نَائِمٌ مُمَيِّزٌ مُشَارٌ تَصَايُحٌ اِطَاعَةٌ
اِسْتِعَانَةٌ تَزْوُجٌ مُخَيَّلٌ مُنْهَارٌ مَيِّتٌ مُعَوَّجٌ خَوْفٌ
تَمْوِيْتٌ اِنْقِيَادٌ تَغْيِيْرٌ مُسْتَقِيْمٌ سُوْقٌ مَقَامٌ مَغِيْبٌ

مَشَى زَهْوٌ مَقْضَى مُهِسٍ اِقْتِنَاءٌ مُفْشَى مُتَعَدٍّ غَانٍ
 مُنَادَاةٌ تَنْحَ مُسْتَتْنَى مَدْعُوٌ اِنْبِعَاةٌ جَفَاءٌ رَضَى غَنَى
 مُعْطَى تَسْمِيَةٌ مُنْتَهَى بَقَاءٌ مُضَى عَدُوٌّ *
 88. 89. سَيُوفٌ اَدْيَانٌ رُؤُوسٌ رِجَالٌ عُمَالٌ عَسَاكِرُ حُجَجٌ
 اَسِيكَةٌ غَوَاشٍ حُجَجٌ اَيَّاتٌ صُحُفٌ رُوسَاءٌ اَرْجُلٌ اَغْنِيَاءٌ
 صُفْرٌ عَجَائِبُ عَيْبٌ عِبَادٌ صُورٌ بَوَاطِنُ مَلَابِيسُ اَمْكِنَةٌ
 رُعَاةٌ جُهْدٌ قَتْلَى رَعَايَا عَقَارِيْتُ اَقْرَبَاءُ اِلَهَةٌ سَكَارَى
 اَمْطَارٌ مَمَالِكُ نُسَخٌ نَجُومٌ نُوقٌ نِيرَانٌ اَيْتَامٌ اَلْسُنٌ
 كِرَادِيسُ اَقْوَالٌ عَشَائِرُ سُودٌ سُودَانٌ سُرُوجٌ صَحَاحٌ
 مَلَايِكَةٌ مَرَاعٍ عُمَى دَوَابٌ دَرَاهِمُ رِيَّاحٌ زَوَايَا سَوَاعِدُ
 سَادَةٌ شُهُودٌ اَثَارٌ *

C. EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

135-138. ضَرَبَ عَمْرُوٌ غُلَامًا لَهُ¹ * نَزَلَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ عَلَى بَابِ
 الدَّارِ * أُحْدِلَ لَكُمْ صَيْدُ الْبَحْرِ وَطَعَامُهُ * كَانَتْ²
 ٩٠/ النِّسَاءُ فِي الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ يُطْلَقْنَ الرِّجَالُ * كَانَ عَبْدُ

1 § 130.

2 § 99 c. / 36. 64

^{6d} ¹¹ اَللّٰهُ عَاقِلًا مَّاهِرًا¹ فِي الْعُلُومِ² * قَالَتِ³ اَلْيَهُودُ وَالنَّصَارَى
^{88, 18} ²⁰⁶ نَحْنُ اَبْنَاءُ اَللّٰهِ وَاجِبَاؤُهُ⁴ * وَلَى الْاَعْدَاءُ هَارِبِينَ⁵ *
^{89, 25} كَانَ النَّبِيُّ يَعُوذُ اَلْمَرِيضُ⁶ وَيَتَّبِعُ اَلْجَنَازَ وَيُجَالِسُ
⁶¹⁶ اَلْفُقَرَاءَ * قَالَ قَاتِلْ⁷ مِنْهُمْ⁸ لَا تَقْتُلُوا⁹ يُوْسُفَ *
^{6d} تَمَرَّغَ مُوسَى بَيْنَ يَدَيِ اَللّٰهِ تَوَاضَعًا¹⁰ لَهُ * قَدْ جَعَلَ
^{6d} اَللّٰهُ قُلُوبَهُمْ قَاسِيَةً¹¹ * قَاتَلَهُمْ اَبْنُ الْعَبَّاسِ¹² قِتَالًا
 شَدِيدًا¹³ *

اَصْبَحَ¹⁴ النَّاسُ مِنَ اَلنَّادِمِينَ * اَمَرَ اَللّٰهُ رَسُوْلَهُ
 بِاَلْهَجْرَةِ وَفَرَضَ عَلَيْهِ جِهَادَ اَلْكَفَارِ * اُنْزِلَتِ اَلتَّوْرَةُ
 عَلَى مُوسَى عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ * اَقَامَ مُحَمَّدٌ بِمَكَّةَ
 ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ سَنَةً¹⁵ * اَعُوذُ بِاَللّٰهِ مِنَ اَلشَّيْطَانِ
 الرَّجِيمِ * يَقْبِضُ اَللّٰهُ اَلْاَرْضَ يَوْمَ¹⁶ اَلْقِيَامَةِ وَيَطْوِي
 اَلسَّمَاءَ بِيَمِينِهِ ثُمَّ يَقُولُ اَنَا اَلْمَلِكُ اَيُّنَ¹⁷ مُلُوكُ
 اَلْاَرْضِ * اَتَّبِعُوا فِي هَذِهِ الدُّنْيَا لَعْنَةً¹⁸ * كَانَ وَرَقَةُ
 اَبْنُ¹⁹ نُوْفَلٍ قَدْ قَرَأَ²⁰ اَلْكِتَابَ وَطَلَبَ اَلْعِلْمَ وَرَغِبَ²¹ عَنْ

1 § 110. 149. 2 § 136 c 2. 3 § 124. 4 § 113 b. 5 § 118 c. 6 § 137 d.
 7 § 121 a. 8 § 101 b. 9 § 113 d. 10 § 108. 11 § 126. 12 § 109. 13 § 110.
 14 § 92 b. 15 § 113 a. 16 § 141. 17 § 108. 18 § 6 f 2. 19 § 98 e f. 20 § 116.

عِبَادَةَ الْأَوْثَانِ وَبَشَرَ خَدِيجَةَ بِالنَّبِيِّ وَأَنَّهُ¹ نَبِيُّ
هَذِهِ الْأُمَّةِ وَأَنَّهُ سَيُؤَذَى² وَيَكْذَبُ * أَلْتَوَاضَعُ سُلْمُ
الشَّرَفِ *

139 ff. الْعَبِيدُ ثَلَاثَةٌ عَبْدُ رَقٍّ³ وَعَبْدُ شَهْوَةٍ وَعَبْدُ
طَمَعٍ * لَهُمْ مَغْفِرَةٌ وَأَجْرٌ عَظِيمٌ * لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ رَأْسٌ
وَرَأْسُ الْمَعْرُوفِ تَحْجِيلُهُ * قُلُوبُ الْأَحْرَارِ قُبُورُ
الْأَسْرَارِ * السَّامِعُ شَرِيكَ الْقَائِلِ فِي الشَّرِّ * الْأَقْرَبُ
هُمُ الْأَعْقَابُ * التَّفَكُّرُ نُورٌ وَالْغَفْلَةُ ظُلْمَةٌ وَالْجَهَالَةُ
ضَلَالَةٌ وَالْعِلْمُ حَيَوَةٌ * مِنْ عِلَامَةِ الْأَحْمَقِ الْجُلُوسُ
فَوْقَ الْقَدْرِ وَالْحِجَى فِي غَيْرِ الْوَقْتِ * الْمُلُوكُ حُكَّامٌ
عَلَى النَّاسِ وَالْعُلَمَاءُ حُكَّامٌ عَلَى الْمُلُوكِ * أَحْسَنُ
الْكُنُوزِ كَهْبَةُ الْقُلُوبِ * نَشَاطُ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ بِقَدْرِ إِنْبَالِ
السَّامِعِ * قَالَ النَّبِيُّ الْفَخْرُ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ بِالتَّقْوَى *
الْعُذْرُ الْجَمِيلُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ الْمَطْلِ الطَّوِيلِ * إِحْدَى
مَوَاجِبِ الرَّحْمَةِ إِطْعَامُ الْآخِ الْمُسْلِمِ الْجَائِعِ * الْبِطْنَةُ
تُدْهَبُ الْفِطْنَةُ * حُسْنُ الْخُلُقِ زِمَامٌ مِنْ رَحْمَةٍ

¹ § 147 a, 148 b note. ² § 99 a, cf. note b. ³ § 123.

اللَّهُ تَعَالَى فِي أَنْفِ صَاحِبِهِ وَالرِّمَامُ بِيَدِ الْمَلِكِ
 وَالْمَلِكُ يَجْرُهُ إِلَى الْخَيْرِ وَالْخَيْرُ يَجْرُهُ إِلَى الْجَنَّةِ *
 الْحُبُّ وَالْبُغْضُ يَتَوَارَثَانِ * الصَّدِيقُ الْأَلُوفُ لَا يَبَاعُ
 بِالْأَلُوفِ * الْمُنَافِقُ يُعْطِيكَ لِسَانَهُ وَيَمْنَعُكَ قَلْبَهُ *
 147. إِنَّ الظَّالِمِينَ لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ * أَلَمْ تَرَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ
 أَنْزَلَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً فَتُصْبِحُ الْأَرْضُ مُخْضَرَّةً إِنَّ اللَّهَ
 لَطِيفٌ خَبِيرٌ * يَا أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ حَرِّضَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
 عَلَى الْقِتَالِ * إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ بِالْحَقِّ *
 إِنَّ اللَّهَ حَرَّمَ الْجَنَّةَ عَلَى الْمُتَكَبِّرِينَ * إِنَّ اللَّهَ يُحِبُّ
 الْمُكْسِرِينَ * يَا اللَّهُ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ لَعَلَّامُ الْغُيُوبِ *
 إِنَّ الْآخِرَةَ هِيَ دَارُ الْقَرَارِ * إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَسَرِيعُ
 الْحِسَابِ¹ * إِنَّ الْمُنَافِقَ يُسَى كَذَّيْمٌ فَلَا يَعْتَدِرُ *
 إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَاتٍ * إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةً لِّأُولِي
 الْأَبْصَارِ * إِنَّهُ لَا يَفْلَحُ الظَّالِمُونَ * جَلَسَ
 الْإِسْكَندَرُ لِلنَّاسِ يَوْمًا فَلَمْ يَسْأَلْهُ أَحَدٌ حَاجَةً فَقَالَ
 لِحُلَسَائِهِ إِنِّي لَا أَعُدُّ هَذَا الْيَوْمَ مِنْ أَيَّامِ مُلْكِي *

قَالَ بُقْرَاطُ اسْتَهِينُوا بِالْمَوْتِ فَإِنَّ مَرَارَتَهُ فِي حَوْفِهِ *
 كُنْ فِي الدُّنْيَا كَأَنَّكَ عَابِرُ سَبِيلٍ وَعَدِّ نَفْسَكَ فِي
 أَصْحَابِ الْقُبُورِ * رَزَقَكُمْ اللَّهُ مِنَ الطَّيِّبَاتِ لَعَلَّكُمْ
 تَشْكُرُونَ *

تَمَامُ الْمَرْوَةِ خِدْمَةُ الرَّجُلِ ضَيْفَةٌ¹ * الْقُلُوبُ
 أَوْعِيَةٌ وَالشَّفَاهُ أَتْقَالُهَا وَالْأَلْسُنُ مَفَاتِيحُهَا فَلْيَحْفَظْ²
 كُلُّ إِنْسَانٍ مِفْتَاحَ سِرِّهِ * تَصَدَّقَ أَبُو الْأَسْوَدِ عَلَى
 سَائِلٍ بِنَمْرَةٍ فَقَالَ³ لَهُ جَعَلَ⁴ اللَّهُ نَصِيبَكَ مِنَ الْجَنَّةِ
 مِثْلَهَا * لَا تُودِعْ سِرَّكَ إِلَى طَالِبِهِ فَالطَّالِبُ لِلْسِرِّ⁵
 مُذْبِعٌ *

مَا نَحْنُ بِتَارِكِي⁶ آلِهَتِنَا * الْكُفَّارُ مَا هُمْ بِخَارِجِينَ
 مِنَ النَّارِ * مَا رَبَّكَ بِظَلَامٍ لِلْعَبِيدِ * الظَّالِمُونَ
 مَا لَهُمْ⁷ مِنْ وَلِيٍّ * مَا مِنْ الْأَعْمَالِ شَيْءٍ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ
 مِنْ ثَلَاثَةِ إِشْبَاعِ جَوْعَةِ الْمُسْلِمِ وَقَضَاءِ دَيْنِهِ وَتَنْفِيسِ
 كُرْبَتِهِ * لَا يَسْتَوِي الْخَبِيثُ وَالطَّيِّبُ * قَالَ مُعَاوِيَةُ

¹ § 131.² § 101 a note.³ § 152.⁴ § 98 d.⁵ § 132.⁶ § 144.⁷ § 141.

كُلُّ النَّاسِ آفِدُرُ أَرْضِهِمْ إِلَّا¹ حَاسِدَ نِعْمَةٍ فَإِنَّهُ لَا
يُرِضِيهِ إِلَّا زَوَالُهَا * لَا يَتَكَبَّرُ إِلَّا كُلُّ وَضِيعٍ وَلَا
يَتَوَاضِعُ إِلَّا كُلُّ رَفِيعٍ * مَا نُرْسِلُ الْمُرْسَلِينَ إِلَّا
مُبَشِّرِينَ² وَمُنذِرِينَ *

100. أَوْحَىٰ إِلَىٰ هَٰذَا الْقُرْآنُ لِأَنْذِرْكُمْ بِهِ * يَنْبَغِي
لِلْإِنْسَانِ أَنْ يَحْتَنِبَ مُعَاشَرَةَ الْأَشْرَارِ وَيَتْرَكَ مُصَاحَبَةَ
الْفُجَّارِ * لَا يَكُونُ الصَّدِيقُ صَدِيقًا حَتَّىٰ يَحْفَظَ
أَخَاهُ فِي ثَلَاثٍ فِي نَكَبَتِهِ وَغَيْبَتِهِ وَوَفَاتِهِ * نَهَى
رَسُولُ اللَّهِ أَنْ يُتَّبَعَ الرَّجُلُ بَصَرَهُ لِقَمَةِ أَخِيهِ *
إِنَّمَا يُرِيدُ الشَّيْطَانُ أَنْ يُوقِعَ بَيْنَكُمْ الْعَدَاوَةَ وَالْبَغْضَاءَ
فِي الْخَمْرِ وَالْمَيْسِرِ وَيَصُدَّكُمْ عَنْ ذِكْرِ اللَّهِ وَعَنِ
الصَّلَاةِ *

إِنَّ الْعَاقِلَ يَتَعِظُ بِالْآدَابِ وَالْبَهَائِمُ لَا تَتَعِظُ
إِلَّا بِالضَّرْبِ * قَالُوا آمَنَّا بِأَنْوَاعِهِمْ وَلَمْ تُؤْمِنْ
قُلُوبُهُمْ * أَوَامِنَ أَهْلُ الْقُرَىٰ أَنْ يَأْتِيَهُمْ بَأْسُنَا

1 § 151.

2 § 113 b.

3 § 157.

صَحَّى وَهُمْ يَلْعَبُونَ * سَوَاءٌ عَلَيْهِمْ أُنذِرْتَهُمْ أَمْ
لَمْ تُنذِرْهُمْ *

قَالُوا يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ هِيَ الدَّارُ الَّتِي كُنَّا 154 ff.
نَسْكُنُهَا مِنْ قَبْلُ * الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ
سَنُدْخِلُهُمْ جَنَّاتٍ تَجْرَى مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْأَنْهَارُ خَالِدِينَ
فِيهَا أَبَدًا * قَالَ اللَّهُ يَا عِيسَى ابْنَ مَرْيَمَ أَنْتَ
قُلْتَ لِلنَّاسِ اتَّخِذُونِي وَأُمِّي إِلَهَيْنِ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ *
قَاتَلَ جَيْشُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ الْأَعْدَاءَ حَتَّى أَنْهَرُمَا *

مَثَلُ الْمَلِكِ الَّذِي يُعْمَرُ خَزَائِنُهُ بِأَمْوَالِ الرِّعَايَا
كَمَثَلِ الَّذِي يُطَيَّنُ سَطْحَ بَيْتِهِ بِالتُّرَابِ الَّذِي
يَقْتُلُهُ مِنْ آسَاسِهِ * قِيلَ لَا يُحِبُّكَ مَنْ يُحِبُّ
عَدُوَّكَ * لَا تَسْتَخْفِرِ الرَّأْيَ الْجَلِيلَ يَأْتِيكَ بِهِ
الرَّجُلُ الْخَفِيرُ فَإِنَّ الدَّرَّةَ الْفَائِقَةَ لَا تُسْتَهَانُ لِهُوَ
غَايِصُهَا * كَذَّبَ الْقَوْمُ نُوحًا فَأَنْجَيْنَاهُ وَالَّذِينَ مَعَهُ
فِي الْفُلِكِ وَأَغْرَقْنَا الَّذِينَ كَذَّبُوا بِآيَاتِنَا * الصَّاحِبُ
رُقْعَةٍ فِي الثَّوبِ فَلْيَنْظُرِ الْإِنْسَانُ بِمَ يَرْتَعُ ثَوْبَهُ *
أَدْنَى أَخْلَاقِ الشَّرِيفِ كِتْمَانُ السِّرِّ وَأَعْلَى أَخْلَاقِهِ

نَسِيَانُ مَا أُسِرَ إِلَيْهِ * مَا نَدِمْتُ عَلَى مَا لَمْ أَفْعَلْ
 مَرَّةً وَنَدِمْتُ عَلَى مَا قُلْتُ مِرَارًا * سَوْفَ يُنَبِّئُهُمُ
 اللَّهُ بِمَا كَانُوا يَصْنَعُونَ * فَبَدَلْ لِرَاهِبٍ مِنْ آيِنَ
 تَأْكُلْ فَأَشَارَ إِلَى فِيهِ وَقَالَ أَلَدَى خَلَقَ هَذِهِ الرَّحَى
 يَأْتِيهَا بِالطَّحِيينَ * الْمَكْبَةُ شَجَرَةٌ أَصْلُهَا الزَّيَارَةُ *

158 ff. لَا تَسْتَقِلَّ عَدُوًّا وَاحِدًا وَلَا تَسْتَكْثِرُ أَلْفَ صَدِيقٍ
 وَلَا تَسْتَبْدِلُ بِأَخٍ قَدِيمٍ أَخًا مُسْتَحْدَثًا مَا أَسْتَقَامَ
 لَكَ * إِحْكَبِ النَّاسَ كَمَا تَحْكَبُ النَّارَ خُذْ مِنْ
 مَنَفْعَتِهَا وَاحْذَرْ أَنْ تُحْرِقَكَ * قَالَ الْإِسْكَندَرُ أَتَنْفَعْتُ
 بِأَعْدَائِي أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا أَتَنْفَعْتُ بِأَصْدِقَائِي * لَقَدْ
 كَذَّبَتْ رُسُلٌ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ فَصَبَرُوا عَلَى مَا كُذِّبُوا وَأَوْدُوا
 وَلَا مُبَدِّلَ لِكَلِمَاتِ اللَّهِ *

قَالَ عَلَى الرَّزْقِ رِزْقَانِ رِزْقٌ تَطْلُبُهُ وَرِزْقٌ يَطْلُبُكَ
 فَإِنْ لَمْ تَأْتِهِ أَتَاكَ * سِرُّكَ أَسِيرُكَ فَإِذَا تَكَلَّمْتَ بِهِ
 صِرْتَ أَسِيرَهُ * الْكَلَامُ كَالدَّوَاءِ إِنْ أَفْلَحْتَ مِنْهُ دَفَعَ
 وَإِنْ أَكْثَرْتَ مِنْهُ قَتَلَ * نَظَرَ الْإِسْكَندَرُ إِلَى شَيْخٍ

خَضِيبٌ فَقَالَ لَهُ إِنَّ كُنْتَ خَضَبْتَ الشَّيْبَ فَكَيْفَ
 تَصْنَعُ آثَارَ الْكِبَرِ * لِلْمُسْلِمِ عَلَى أَخِيهِ الْمُسْلِمِ مِنْ
 الْمَعْرُوفِ سِتٌّ يُسَلِّمُ عَلَيْهِ إِذَا لَقِيَهُ وَيَنْصَحُ لَهُ
 إِذَا غَابَ عَنْهُ وَيَعُودُهُ إِذَا مَرَضَ وَيُشَيِّعُ جَنَازَتَهُ
 إِذَا مَاتَ وَيُجِيبُهُ إِذَا دَعَاهُ وَيُشِمَّتُهُ إِذَا عَطَسَ *
 قَالَ الرَّسُولُ إِذَا أَكَلَ أَحَدُكُمْ فَلْيَأْكُلْ بِيَمِينِهِ وَإِذَا
 شَرِبَ فَلْيَشْرَبْ بِيَمِينِهِ فَإِنَّ الشَّيْطَانَ يَأْكُلُ بِشِمَالِهِ
 وَيَشْرَبُ بِشِمَالِهِ * لِكُلِّ مَقَامٍ مَقَالٌ وَخَيْرُ الْقَوْلِ
 مَا وَافَقَ الْحَالَ * قَالَ النَّبِيُّ إِذَا قُمْتُمْ إِلَى الصَّلَاةِ
 فَاغْسِلُوا وُجُوهَكُمْ وَأَيْدِيَكُمْ إِلَى الْمَرَافِقِ وَامْسِكُوا
 بِرُءُوسِكُمْ وَأَرْجُلَكُمْ إِلَى الْكَعْبَيْنِ * الْكَلِمَةُ إِذَا
 خَرَجَتْ مِنَ الْقَلْبِ وَقَعَتْ فِي الْقَلْبِ وَإِذَا خَرَجَتْ
 مِنَ اللِّسَانِ لَمْ تُجَاوِزِ الْآذَانَ * مَنْ قَتَلَ نَفْسًا
 بِغَيْرِ نَفْسٍ أَوْ فَسَادٍ فِي الْأَرْضِ فَكَأَنَّمَا قَتَلَ النَّاسَ
 جَمِيعًا * إِذَا دَخَلَ أَحَدُكُمْ الْمَسْجِدَ فَلْيَقُلِ اللَّهُمَّ
 افْتَحْ لِي أَبْوَابَ رَحْمَتِكَ وَإِذَا خَرَجَ فَلْيَقُلِ اللَّهُمَّ
 إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ فَضْلَكَ * إِذَا دَخَلَ رَمَضَانُ فَتَحَتْ

أَبْوَابُ السَّمَاءِ وَغُلِقَتْ أَبْوَابُ جَهَنَّمَ وَسَلِسَلَتْ
 الشَّيَاطِينُ * تَبَاعَدُوا فِي الدَّارِ تَقَارَبُوا فِي الْمَوَدَّةِ *
 اِرْحَمُوا تَرْحَمُوا وَآغْفِرُوا يُغْفَرَ لَكُمْ *
 إِذَا قَرَّبَكَ السُّلْطَانُ فَكُنْ مِنْهُ عَلَى حَذَرٍ وَآحْذِرِ
 أَنْقِلَابَهُ عَلَيْكَ وَكَلِمَهُ بِمَا يَشْتَهِي وَلَا يَحْمِلَنَّكَ لُطْفُهُ
 بِكَ عَلَى أَنْ تَدْخُلَ بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ أَهْلِهِ وَحَشِيهِ *
 مَثَلُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ فِي تَرَاخُمِهِمْ وَتَوَادِدِهِمْ وَتَوَاصُلِهِمْ كَمَثَلِ
 الْجَسَدِ إِذَا أَشْتَكَى عَضُو مِنْهُ تَدَاعَى لَهُ سَائِرُ الْجَسَدِ
 بِالْحَمَى وَالسَّهَرِ * إِنَّ اللَّهَ خَلَقَ الْجَنَّةَ لِمَنْ أَطَاعَهُ
 وَلَوْ كَانَ عَبْدًا حَبَشِيًّا وَخَلَقَ النَّارَ لِمَنْ عَصَاهُ وَلَوْ
 كَانَ حُرًّا فُرَشِيًّا * قَالَ النَّبِيُّ لَا تَرْفَعُونِي فَوْقَ قَدْرِي
 فَتَقُولُوا فِي مَا قَالَتِ النَّصَارَى فِي الْمَسِيحِ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ
 عَزَّ وَجَلَّ آخَذَنِي عَبْدًا قَبْلَ أَنْ يَتَّخِذَنِي رَسُولًا *
 قِيلَ لِرَجُلٍ بِمِ سَادَتِكُمْ أَلا حَنَفَ فَوَاللَّهِ مَا كَانَ بِأَكْبَرَكُمْ
 سِنًا وَلَا بِأَكْثَرِكُمْ مَالًا فَقَالَ بِقُوَّةِ سُلْطَانِهِ عَلَى
 لِسَانِهِ * لَا يَقُولَنَّ أَحَدُكُمْ عَبْدِي وَأَمَتِي كُلُّكُمْ
 عِبِيدُ اللَّهِ وَكُلُّ نِسَائِكُمْ إِمَاءُ اللَّهِ وَلَكِنْ لِيَقُلْ

غُلَامِي وَجَارِيَتِي وَفَتَايَ وَفَتَاتِي * مَنْ حَسَنَ
 خُلُقُهُ طَابَتْ عَيْشَتُهُ وَدَامَتْ سَلَامَتُهُ وَتَأَكَّدَتْ فِي
 النَّفْسِ مَحَبَّتُهُ وَمَنْ سَاءَ خُلُقُهُ تَنَكَّدَتْ عَيْشَتُهُ
 وَدَامَتْ بَغْضَتُهُ وَذَفَرَتِ النَّفْسُ مِنْهُ * لَمَّا فَرَعَ نُوحٌ
 مِنْ بَنَاءِ السَّفِينَةِ دَعَا النَّاسَ إِلَى الرُّكُوبِ فِيهَا
 وَأَعْلَمَهُمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ بَاعَثَ الطُّوفَانَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ
 كُلِّهَا حَتَّى يُطَهِّرَهَا مِنْ أَهْلِ الْمَعَاصِي فَلَمْ يُجِبْهُ
 أَحَدٌ مِنْهُمْ * قِيلَ لِعَلِيِّ بْنِ أَبِي طَالِبٍ عَلَيْهِ
 السَّلَامُ كَمْ بَيْنَ الْمَشْرِقِ وَالْمَغْرِبِ قَالَ مَسِيرَةُ يَوْمٍ
 لِلشَّمْسِ قِيلَ لَهُ كَمْ بَيْنَ السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ قَالَ
 مَسِيرَةُ سَاعَةٍ لِدَعْوَةٍ مُسْتَجَابَةٍ * قِيلَ لِبَعْضِ
 الْكُفَرَاءِ كَيْفَ أَكْتَسَبْتَ مَكَارِمَ الْأَخْلَاقِ وَالتَّوَادُّعِ
 مَعَ الْأَصْيَافِ فَقَالَ كَانَتْ الْأَسْفَارُ تُخَوِّجُنِي إِلَى أَنْ
 أَفِدَّ عَلَى النَّاسِ فَمَا اسْتَحْسَنْتُ مِنْ أَخْلَاقِهِمْ اتَّبَعْتُهُ
 وَمَا اسْتَقْبَحْتُهُ اجْتَنَبْتُهُ * حَضَرَ أَعْرَابِيٌّ عَلَى مَائِدَةٍ
 بَعْضُ الْخُلَفَاءِ فَقَدِمَ جَدِي مَشْوًى فَجَعَلَ الْأَعْرَابِيُّ
 يُسْرِعُ فِي أَكْلِهِ مِنْهُ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْخَلِيفَةُ تَأْكُلُهُ بِحَرِّ

كَانَ أُمُّهُ ذَطَحَتْكَ فَقَالَ أَرَاكَ تُشْفِقُ عَلَيْهِ كَانَ أُمُّهُ
أَرْضَعَتْكَ *

كَانَ مِنْ سُنَنِ الْعَرَبِ نِكَاحُ الْمَقْتِ وَهُوَ أَنَّ
الرَّجُلَ إِذَا مَاتَ قَامَ وَلَدُهُ الْأَكْبَرُ فَأَلْقَى ثَوْبَهُ عَلَى
أُمِّهِ أَبِيهِ فَوَرِثَ نِكَاحَهَا فَإِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ بِهَا
حَاجَةٌ زَوَّجَهَا لِبَعْضِ إِخْوَتِهِ بِمَهْرٍ جَدِيدٍ فَكَانُوا
يَرِثُونَ النِّكَاحَ كَمَا يَرِثُونَ الْمَالَ * كَانَ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ
أَبْنُ مَرْزُوقٍ مِنْ نُدَمَاءِ الْمُهَدِّيِّ فَسَكِرَ يَوْمًا فَفَاتَتْهُ
الْصَّلَاةُ فَجَاءَتْهُ جَارِيَةٌ لَهُ بِحُمْرَةٍ فَوَضَعَتْهَا عَلَى رِجْلِهِ
فَانْتَبَهَ مَدْعُورًا فَقَالَتْ لَهُ إِذَا لَمْ تَصْبِرْ عَلَى نَارِ
الدُّنْيَا فَكَيْفَ تَصْبِرُ عَلَى نَارِ الْآخِرَةِ * دَخَلَ عَامِلٌ
لِعُمَرَ بْنِ الْخَطَّابِ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ فَوَجَدَهُ مُسْتَلْقِيًا
عَلَى ظَهْرِهِ وَصَبِيَانُهُ يَلْعَبُونَ عَلَى بَطْنِهِ فَأَنْكَرَ ذَلِكَ
عَلَيْهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ عُمَرُ كَيْفَ أَنْتَ مَعَ أَهْلِكَ قَالَ إِذَا
دَخَلْتُ سَكَتَ النَّاطِقُ فَقَالَ لَهُ أَعْتَزِلْ فَإِنَّكَ لَا
تُرْفِقُ بِأَهْلِكَ وَوَلَدِكَ فَكَيْفَ تُرْفِقُ بِأُمِّهِ مُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّى
اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ *

قَالَ بَعْضُ الْمُلُوكِ لِبَعْضٍ وَزَرَائِيهِ وَأَرَادَ حِثَّتَهُ مَا
خَيْرُ مَا يُرْزَقُهُ الْعَبْدُ قَالَ عَقْلٌ يَعْيشُ بِهِ قَالَ فَإِنْ
عَدِمَهُ قَالَ فَادَّبٌ يَتَحَكَّى بِهِ قَالَ فَإِنْ عَدِمَهُ قَالَ
فَمَالٌ يَسْتُرُهُ قَالَ فَإِنْ عَدِمَهُ قَالَ فَصَاعِقَةٌ تَحْرِقُهُ
فَتَرْيِخٌ مِنْهُ الْعِبَادَ وَالْإِبِلَادَ *

نَزَلَ رَجُلٌ بِصَوْمَعَةِ رَاهِبٍ فَقَدَّمَ إِلَيْهِ الرَّاهِبُ أَرْبَعَةَ
أَرْغِفَةٍ وَذَهَبَ لِيُحْضِرَ إِلَيْهِ الْعَدَسَ فَحَمَلَهُ وَجَاءَ
فَوَجَدَهُ قَدْ أَكَلَ الْخُبْزَ فَذَهَبَ فَاتَى بِخُبْزٍ فَوَجَدَهُ قَدْ
أَكَلَ الْعَدَسَ فَفَعَلَ مَعَهُ ذَلِكَ عَشْرَ مَرَّاتٍ فَسَأَلَهُ
الرَّاهِبُ أَيَّنَ مَقْصِدُهُ قَالَ إِلَى الْأَرْدُنِّ قَالَ لِمَاذَا قَالَ
بَلَعْنِي أَنَّ بِهَا طَبِيبًا حَانِفًا أَسْأَلُهُ عَمَّا يُصْلِحُ
مَعِدَتِي فَإِنِّي قَلِيلُ الشَّهْوَةِ لِلطَّعَامِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الرَّاهِبُ
إِنَّ لِي إِلَيْكَ حَاجَةً قَالَ وَمَا هِيَ قَالَ إِذَا ذَهَبَتْ
وَأَصْلَحَتْ مَعِدَتَكَ فَلَا تَجْعَلْ رُجُوعَكَ عَلَيَّ *

II.

ARABIC PROSE EXTRACTS.

زَعَمُوا أَنَّ مَلِكًا يُقَالُ لَهُ الْهَدَهَادُ خَرَجَ لِلصَّيْدِ
 فِي جَمَاعَةٍ مِنْ خِدَمِهِ وَخَاصَّتِهِ فَرَأَى غَزَالًا يَطْرُدُهُ
 ذَنْبٌ وَقَدْ أَضَافَهُ إِلَى ضَيْقِ الْبَيْسِ الْغَزَالِ مِنْهُ مَخْلَصٌ
 فَحَمَلَ الْهَدَهَادُ عَلَى الذَّنْبِ حَتَّى طَرَدَهُ عَنِ الْغَزَالِ
 وَخَلَّصَ الْغَزَالِ مِنْهُ فَسَارَ فِي أَثَرِ الْغَزَالِ وَانْقَطَعَ عَنْهُ
 أَصْحَابُهُ فَبَيَّنَا هُوَ كَذَلِكَ إِذْ ظَهَرَتْ لَهُ مَدِينَةٌ عَظِيمَةٌ
 فِيهَا مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ مِنَ الْأَشْيَاءِ وَالنَّعِيمِ وَالنَّخْلِ
 وَالزَّرْعِ وَأَنْوَاعِ الْأَفْوَاجِ فَوَقَّفَ دُونَهَا مُتَجَبِّبًا مِمَّا
 ظَهَرَ لَهُ إِذْ أَقْبَلَ رَجُلٌ مِنْ أَهْلِ ذَلِكَ الْمَدِينَةِ الَّذِي
 ظَهَرَتْ لَهُ فَسَلَّمَ وَرَحَّبَ بِهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ لَهُ أَيُّهَا الْمَلِكُ
 إِنِّي أَرَاكَ مُتَجَبِّبًا مِمَّا ظَهَرَ لَكَ فِي يَوْمِكَ هَذَا فَقَالَ
 لَهُ الْهَدَهَادُ إِنِّي لَكَمَا قُلْتُ فَمَا هَذِهِ الْمَدِينَةُ وَمَنْ
 سَاكِنُهَا فَقَالَ هَذِهِ مَدِينَةُ مَارِبَ وَسَاكِنُهَا حَتَّى مِنْ
 الْحِمْيَرِ وَأَنَا مَلِكُهُمْ وَصَاحِبُ أَمْرِهِمْ فَهُوَ مَعَهُ فِي هَذَا
 الْكَلَامِ إِذْ مَرَّتْ بِهِمَا امْرَأَةٌ لَمْ يَرَ الرَّائُونَ أَحْسَنَ

مِنْهَا وَجْهًا وَلَا أَكْمَلَ مِنْهَا خَلْقًا وَلَا أَظْهَرَ مِنْهَا
 صَبَاحَةً وَلَا أَطْيَبَ رَائِحَةً فَأَتَتْهُنَّ بِهَا الْهَدَهَادُ وَعَلِمَ
 15 مَلِكُ الْجِنِّ أَنَّهُ قَدْ هَوِيَهَا وَشَغِفَ بِهَا فَقَالَ إِنْ كُنْتُ
 قَدْ هَوَيْتَهَا فِيهِ أَبْنَتِي فَأَنَا أَرْوِّجُكَهَا فَجَارَاهُ الْهَدَهَادُ
 20 خَيْرًا فَقَالَ لَهُ الْجِنِّي هَلْ عَرَفْتَهَا قَالَ الْهَدَهَادُ مَا
 رَأَيْتُهَا قَبْلَ يَوْمِي هَذَا قَالَ الْجِنِّي هِيَ الْغُرَالُ الَّتِي
 خَلَصْتَهَا مِنَ الدِّبِّ وَلَا نُكَافِئُكَ عَلَى جَمِيلٍ فِعْلِكَ
 25 أَبَدًا بِأَحْسَنَ مِنْ أَنْ تُحِبُّوكَ بِهَا فَتَأْهَبَ لِدُخُولِكَ
 عَلَيْهَا فَإِنِّي قَدْ زَوَّجْتُكَهَا بِشَهَادَةِ اللَّهِ تَعَالَى وَشَهَادَةِ
 30 مَلَائِكَتِهِ فَإِذَا أَرَدْتَ ذَلِكَ فَأَقْدِمُ إِلَيْنَا بِخَاصَّةٍ أَهْلِ
 بَيْتِكَ وَمُلُوكِ قَوْمِكَ لِيَشْهَدُوا مَلَائِكَتُهَا وَيَحْضُرُوا وَلِيَمْتَنَهَا
 وَمِيْعَادُكَ الشَّهْرُ الدَّاخِلُ فَأَنْصَرَفَ الْهَدَهَادُ عَلَى
 35 الْبَيْعَانِ وَغَابَتِ الْمَدِينَةُ عَنْهُ فَإِذَا أَصْحَابُهُ حَوْلَهُ
 يَدُورُونَ لَهُ فَقَالُوا أَيْنَ كُنْتَ فَتَحْنُ فِي طَلَبِكَ مِنْذُ
 40 فَارَقْتَنَا وَلَمْ نَتْرُكْ شَيْئًا مِنْ هَذِهِ الْفَلَوَاتِ إِلَّا طَلَبْنَاكَ
 فِيهِ فَرَعَمُوا أَنَّ الْهَدَهَادَ خَرَجَ عَلَى الْبَيْعَانِ إِلَى
 أَصْهَارِهِ مِنَ الْجِنِّ فِي خَاصَّةٍ قَوْمِهِ وَخَدَمِهِ حَتَّى وَافَقْتُمْ

فَوَجَدُوا قَصْرًا بَنَاهُ لَهُ الْجِنُّ فِي فَلَاحٍ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ كَحُفُونًا^{136c}
 بِالنَّخْلِ وَالْأَعْنَابِ وَالْوَانِ الزَّرْعِ وَأَنْوَاعِ الْفَوَاكِحِ تَحْتَرِقُ^{89, 224}
 فِيهَا الْمِيَاهُ الْجَارِيَةُ فَتَعْجَبُ الْقَوْمُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ تَعْجَبًا^{12, 908}
 شَدِيدًا وَرَأَوْا مَلِكًا عَظِيمًا فَنَزَلُوا فِي الْقَصْرِ مَعَهُ عَلَى^{89, 244}
 فُرُشٍ لَمْ يَرَوْا مِثْلَهَا وَقَرَّبَتْ لَهُمْ مَوَادَّ عَلَيْهَا مِنْ⁶³⁶
 طَيِّبَاتِ الْمَأْكُولِ وَالْوَانِيهِ الَّتِي لَمْ يَأْكُلُوا قَطُّ أَطْيَبَ⁹⁰
 مِنْهَا طَعَامًا وَلَا أَزْكَى مِنْهَا رَائِحَةً وَشَرَبُوا مِنَ الشَّرَابِ⁹⁰
 مَا لَمْ يَشْرَبُوا قَطُّ أَلَدَّ وَلَا أَحَفَ مِنْهُ فَمَكثُوا مَعَهُ^{90, 232}
 ثَلَاثَةَ أَيَّامٍ بِلَيَالِيهَا فِي ذَلِكَ وَزُفَّتْ إِلَى الْهَدَهَادِ⁶¹⁶
 أَمْرَاتُهُ بِنْتُ مَلِكِ الْجِنِّ وَأَذِنَ الْهَدَهَادُ لِبَنِي عَمِّهِ^{90, 232}
 وَخَاصَّتِهِ وَعَشِيرَتِهِ بِالْإِنْصِرَافِ إِلَى مَوَاضِعِهِمْ وَصَارَ⁹⁰
 ذَلِكَ الْقَصْرُ دَارَ مَمْلَكَتِهِ فَرَعَمُوا أَنَّهُ مَكَثَ زَمَانًا مَعَ⁹⁰
 أَمْرَاتِهِ وَأَوْلَدَهَا بِلْقَيْسَ *

أَجْمَعَتْ قُرَيْشٌ عَلَى قَتْلِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ وَقَالُوا لَيْسَ
 لَهُ الْيَوْمَ أَحَدٌ يَنْصُرُهُ وَقَدْ مَاتَ أَبُو طَالِبٍ فَاجْمَعُوا
 جَمِيعًا أَنْ يَأْتُوا مِنْ كُلِّ قَبِيلَةٍ بِغُلَامٍ نَهْدٍ فَيَجْتَبِعُوا
 عَلَيْهِ فَيَضْرِبُوهُ بِأَسْيَافِهِمْ ضَرْبَةً رَجُلٍ وَاحِدٍ فَلَا يَكُونَ

لِبَنِي هَاشِمٍ قُوَّةً بِمُعَادَاةِ جَمِيعِ قُرَيْشٍ فَبَلَغَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ
 ذَلِكَ وَلَمَّا اخْتَلَطَ الظَّلَامُ خَرَجَ وَمَعَهُ أَبُو بَكْرٍ وَخَلَفَ
 عَلِيًّا عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ لِرَدِّ الْوَدَائِعِ الَّتِي كَانَتْ عِنْدَهُ وَصَارَ
 إِلَى الْغَارِ الَّذِي كَانَ يَتَكَنَّتُ فِيهِ قَبْلَ النَّبُوَّةِ فَكَمِنَ
 فِيهِ وَأَتَتْ قُرَيْشٌ فِرَاشَهُ فَوَجَدُوا عَلِيًّا فَقَالُوا آيْنَ ابْنُ
 عَمِّكَ قَالَ ثَلُمْتُ لَهُ أَخْرَجَ عَنَّا فَخَرَجَ عَنْكُمْ فَطَلَبُوا
 الْأَثَرَ فَلَمْ يَقْعُوا عَلَيْهِ وَأَعْمَى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمُ الْمَوَاضِعَ
 فَوَقَفُوا عَلَى بَابِ الْغَارِ وَقَدْ عَشَّشَتْ عَلَيْهِ حَمَامَةٌ
 فَقَالُوا مَا فِي هَذَا الْغَارِ أَحَدٌ وَأَنْصَرَفُوا فَخَرَجَ رَسُولُ
 اللَّهِ مُتَوَجِّهًا إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ فَعَلِمَتْ قُرَيْشٌ أَنَّهُ قَدْ مَضَى
 إِلَى يَثْرِبَ وَاتَّبَعَهُ سُرَاقَةٌ فَلَمَّا لَحِقَهُ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ
 اللَّهُمَّ اكْفِنَا سُرَاقَةَ فَسَاحَتْ قَوَائِمُ فَرَسِهِ فَصَاحَ يَا بَنِي
 أَبِي قُحَافَةَ قُلْ لِصَاحِبِكَ أَنْ يَدْعُو اللَّهَ بِإِطْلَاقِ
 فَرَسِي فَلَعَمْرِي لَيْسَ لَمْ يُصِبهُ مِنِّي خَيْرٌ فَلَا يُصِبهُ
 مِنِّي شَرٌّ فَلَمَّا رَجَعَ إِلَى مَكَّةَ خَبَرَهُمُ الْخَبَرَ فَكَدَّبُوهُ *
 حُكِيَ عَنِ الرَّبِيعِ حَاجِبِ الْخَلِيفَةِ الْمَنْصُورِ قَالَ
 مَا رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا أَرْبَطَ جَأْشًا وَاثْبَتَ جَنَانًا مِنْ رَجُلٍ

^{31,3}
سَعَى بِهِ إِلَى الْمَنْصُورِ أَنَّ عِنْدَهُ وَدَائِعَ وَأَمْوَالًا لِبَنِي
أُمَيَّةَ فَأَمَرَنِي بِإِحْضَارِهِ فَأَحْضَرْتُهُ إِلَيْهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْمَنْصُورُ
قَدْ رُفِعَ إِلَيْنَا خَبَرُ الْوَدَائِعِ وَالْأَمْوَالِ الَّتِي عِنْدَكَ لِبَنِي
أُمَيَّةَ فَأَخْرِجْهَا لَنَا وَلَا تَكْتُمُ مِنْهَا شَيْئًا فَقَالَ يَا أَمِيرَ
الْمُؤْمِنِينَ أَنْتَ وَارِثُ لِبَنِي أُمَيَّةَ قَالَ لَا قَالَ فَوَصِّ
لَهُمْ فِي أَمْوَالِهِمْ وَرَبَاعِهِمْ قَالَ لَا قَالَ فَمَا مَسَأَلْتُكَ
عَمَّا فِي يَدَيَّ مِنْ ذَلِكَ قَالَ فَأَطْرَقَ الْمَنْصُورُ وَتَفَكَّرَ
سَاعَةً ثُمَّ رَفَعَ رَأْسَهُ وَقَالَ إِنَّ بَنِي أُمَيَّةَ ظَلَمُوا الْمُسْلِمِينَ
فِيهَا وَأَنَا وَكِيلُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ فِي حَقُوقِهِمْ وَارِيدُ أَنْ أَخْذَ
مَا ظَلَمُوا الْمُسْلِمِينَ فِيهِ فَأَجْعَلُهُ فِي بَيْتِ أَمْوَالِهِمْ
فَقَالَ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ فَتَحْتَاجُ إِلَى إِتَامَةٍ بَيْنَةَ عَادِلَةٍ
أَنَّ مَا فِي يَدَيَّ لِبَنِي أُمَيَّةَ هُوَ الَّذِي غَضَبُوهُ مِنَ النَّاسِ
فَإِنَّ بَنِي أُمَيَّةَ قَدْ كَانَتْ لَهُمْ أَمْوَالٌ غَيْرُ أَمْوَالِ
الْمُسْلِمِينَ قَالَ فَأَطْرَقَ الْمَنْصُورُ سَاعَةً ثُمَّ رَفَعَ رَأْسَهُ
وَقَالَ يَا رَبِيعُ مَا أَرَى الشَّيْخَ إِلَّا قَدْ صَدَقَ وَمَا
يَجِبُ عَلَيْهِ شَيْءٌ وَمَا يَسْعُنَا إِلَّا أَنْ نَعْفُوَ عَمَّا قِيلَ
عِنْدَهُ ثُمَّ قَالَ هَلْ لَكَ مِنْ حَاجَةٍ قَالَ نَعَمْ حَاجَتِي يَا

أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ أَنْ تَجْمَعَ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَ مَنْ سَعَى فِي
 إِلَيْكَ فَوَاللَّهِ الَّذِي لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ مَا فِي يَدَي لِبْنِي
 أُمِّيَّةٌ مَالٌ وَلَا وَدِيعَةٌ فَقَالَ الْخَلِيفَةُ يَا رَبِيعُ أَجْمَعُ
 بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ مَنْ سَعَى بِهِ فَجَمَعْتُ بَيْنَهُمَا فَلَمَّا رَأَاهُ
 قَالَ هَذَا غُلَامِي أَخْتَلَسَ لِي ثَلَاثَةَ آلَافٍ دِينَارٍ مِنْ
 مَالِي وَأَبَقَ مِنِّي وَخَافَ مِنْ طَلَبِي لَهُ فَسَعَى بِي عِنْدَ
 أَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ قَالَ فَشَدَّدَ الْمَنْصُورُ عَلَى الْغُلَامِ وَخَوَّفَهُ
 فَأَفَرَّ بِأَنَّهُ غُلَامُهُ وَأَنَّهُ أَخَذَ الْمَالَ الَّذِي ذَكَرَهُ وَسَعَى
 بِهِ كِذْبًا عَلَيْهِ وَخَوْفًا مِنْ أَنْ يَقَعَ فِي يَدِهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ
 الْمَنْصُورُ سَأَلْتُكَ أَيُّهَا الشَّيْخُ أَنْ تَعْفُو عَنْهُ فَقَالَ قَدْ
 عَفَوْتُ عَنْهُ وَاعْتَقْتُهُ وَوَهَبْتُهُ ثَلَاثَةَ آلَافٍ الَّتِي أَخَذَهَا
 وَثَلَاثَةَ آلَافٍ أُخْرَى أَدْفَعُهَا إِلَيْهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْمَنْصُورُ
 مَا عَلَى مَا فَعَلْتَ مِنْ مَزِيدٍ قَالَ بَلَى يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
 إِنَّ هَذَا كُلُّهُ لَقَلِيلٌ فِي مُقَابَلَةِ كَلَامِكَ لِي وَعَفْوِكَ
 عَنِّي ثُمَّ أَنْصَرَفَ قَالَ الرَّبِيعُ فَكَانَ الْمَنْصُورُ يَتَعَجَّبُ
 مِنْهُ وَكُلَّمَا ذَكَرَهُ يَقُولُ مَا رَأَيْتُ مِثْلَ هَذَا الشَّيْخِ
 يَا رَبِيعُ *

رَوَى أَنَّ أَلِإِسْكَندَرَ وَهُوَ الَّذِي يُقَالُ لَهُ ذُو
 الْقَرْنَيْنِ مَلَكَ بَعْدَ أَبِيهِ وَكَانَ مُعَلِّمُهُ أَرْسَطَاطَالِيسُ
 الْحَكِيمُ فَجَدَّ قَدْرُ أَلِإِسْكَندَرَ وَعَظَّمَ مُلْكُهُ وَأَشْتَدَّ
 سُلْطَانُهُ وَأَعَانَتْهُ الْحِكْمَةُ وَالْعَقْلُ وَالْمَعْرِفَةُ وَكَانَ مَعَهُ
 نَجْدَةٌ وَبَاسٌ وَهَمَّةٌ عَالِيَةٌ دَعَتْهُ إِلَى أَنْ كَتَبَ إِلَى
 مُلُوكِ الْأَقَالِيمِ وَالْأَفَاقِ يَدْعُوهُمْ إِلَى طَاعَتِهِ وَمَنْ
 كَانَ قَبْلَهُ مِنْ مُلُوكِ الْيُونَانِيِّينَ يُودَى إِلَى مُلُوكِ
 أَرْضِ بَابِلَ مِنْ الْفُرْسِ خَرَجًا لِحِلَالَةٍ تِلْكَ الْمَمْلَكَةِ
 وَعَظَّمَ قُدْرَهَا وَصَغَّرَ أَلْمَمَالِكِ فِي جَنْبِهَا فَلَمَّا كَتَبَ
 إِلَى مَلِكِ فَارِسَ يَدْعُوهُ إِلَى طَاعَتِهِ عَظَّمَ عَلَيْهِ فَسَارَ
 أَلِإِسْكَندَرُ حَتَّى أَتَى أَرْضَ بَابِلَ وَمَلَكَ الْفُرْسَ يَوْمَئِذٍ
 دَارًا فَحَارَبَهُ حَتَّى قَتَلَهُ وَحَوَى خَزَائِنَ مُلْكِهِ وَتَزَوَّجَ
 أَبْنَتَهُ ثُمَّ صَارَ إِلَى أَرْضِ فَارِسَ وَقَتَلَ مِنْ بَيْهَا مِنْ
 الْمَرَارِيَةِ وَالرُّوسَاءِ وَأَفْتَتَحَ الْبِلَادَ ثُمَّ صَارَ إِلَى أَرْضِ
 الْهِنْدِ فَزَحَفَ إِلَيْهِ مَلِكُ الْهِنْدِ فَحَارَبَهُ حَتَّى قَتَلَهُ
 ثُمَّ صَيَّرَ أَلِإِسْكَندَرُ عَلَى الْهِنْدِ مَلِكًا مِنْ قَبْلِهِ مِنْ
 أَهْلِ الْهِنْدِ ثُمَّ رَجَعَ إِلَى أَرْضِ بَابِلَ بَعْدَ أَنْ دَوَّخَ

المنطقة

مَا أَذَلِكَ أَيُّهَا الْقَائِضُ أَنِّي وَقَعْتُ مَوْضِعَ الصَّيْدِ فِي شَرِكِ
 الَّذِي يَقْنِصُكَ ثُمَّ قَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ هَذَا الْقَوِيُّ الَّذِي
 أَصْبَحَ الْيَوْمَ ضَعِيفًا وَالْعَزِيزُ الَّذِي أَصْبَحَ الْيَوْمَ ذَلِيلًا ¹¹⁰
 وَقَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ قَدْ كَانَتْ سَيُوفُكَ لَا تَحِيفُ وَنَقِمَاتُكَ
 لَا تُؤْمِنُ ^{89, 25-6} وَكَانَتْ مَدَائِنُكَ لَا تُرَامُ ^{89, 29} وَكَانَتْ عَطَايَاكَ لَا
 تَبْرَحُ وَكَانَ ضِيَاؤُكَ لَا يَكْشَفُ فَأَصْبَحَ ضَوْؤُكَ قَدْ
 خَمَدَ وَنَقِمَاتُكَ لَا تُخْشَى وَأَصْبَحَتْ عَطَايَاكَ لَا تُرْجَى
 وَأَصْبَحَتْ سَيُوفُكَ لَا تُنْتَصَى وَأَصْبَحَتْ مَدَائِنُكَ لَا تُمْنَعُ
 وَقَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ قَدْ كَانَ صَوْتُكَ مَرْهُوبًا وَكَانَ مُلْكُكَ ^{40 d}
 غَالِبًا فَأَصْبَحَ الصَّوْتُ قَدْ انْقَطَعَ وَالْمُلْكُ قَدْ أُنْضَعَ
 وَقَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ حَرَكْنَا الْإِسْكَندَرُ بِسُكُونِهِ وَأَنْطَقْنَا
 بِصُمُوتِهِ وَتَكَلَّمُوا بِهَذَا الْكَلَامِ ثُمَّ أُطِيقَ التَّنَابُوتُ
 وَحُمِلَ إِلَى الْإِسْكَندَرِيَّةِ *

III.

TRANSLATION INTO ARABIC.

NOTE. The order of the words in the following sentences has been adapted, so far as possible, to that required by the Arabic translation. In addition, however, the student must bear especially in mind the difference of order (§§ 135, 139—142) which marks the cardinal distinction between verbal and nominal sentences (§ 139 note). The square brackets enclose words which in translation should be omitted, while those in curved brackets give the form of the sentence required by the Arabic idiom. — Past and perfect tenses are generally to be rendered by the Arabic perfect, present and future tenses by the Arabic imperf. The extensive use of the (generic) article in Arabic is to be noted. All nouns not in the construct state should have the (definite) article prefixed unless qualified in English by an indefinite article. — So far as lexical the footnotes to the exercises are only *supplementary* to the Glossary. It is, for example, only in special or exceptional cases that “oh” is to be rendered by *أَيْهَا* instead of by *يَا*, and the notes draw attention to such cases. — The apology for violence done to the Queen’s English, in the interests of the learner, may be repeated from the first edition, from which the following is in the main reprinted.

A. Nominal Sentences.¹

1. The glory of the man [is] his sons, and the solicitude of the man [is] his dwelling and his neighbour.—2. The elegance of the man [lies] in his tongue, and the elegance of the woman in her understanding.—3. The liberal [man is] related to God.—4. The worst (of) repentance [is] at the day² of resurrection.—5. The love of the world [is] the beginning of every sin.—6. The promise of the king [is] a security.—7. The learned [men are] the heirs of the prophets.—8. Wisdom [is] for the character³ like medicine for the body.³—9. The world [is] the prison of the believer and the paradise of the unbeliever.—10. Contentment [is a part] of⁴ the nature³ of the domestic animals.—11. The malady of covetousness has no (not is⁵ for it a) cure; and the disease of ignorance has no (not is for it a) physician.—12. The nutriment of the body³ [is] (the) beverages and (the) viands, and the nutriment of the under-

¹ §§ 139 ff. ² § 113 a. ³ plur. ⁴ مِنْ ⁵ § 50.

standing [is] wisdom and learning.—13. Money has (to money [is]) a difficult entrance and an easy exit.—14. Verily¹ God [is] forgiving and² compassionate.—15. Verily ye³ [are] in a manifest error.—16. The nobles of⁴ Pharaoh's folk said⁵, “Verily this [is] surely⁶ a learned enchanter”.—17. Verily in that⁷ [lies] surely an example for the unbelievers.—18. Flight in its [proper] time [is] better than endurance in its wrong time (in another than its [proper] time).—19. There is no (not⁸ [is there]) strength and no (not⁸) power except with⁹ God, the High and¹⁰ Mighty [One].—20. The best of gifts [is] understanding, and the worst of misfortunes [is] ignorance.—

B. The Strong Verb.

21. Jonah went out from the whale's belly.—22. Zaid killed Muhammed.—23. They gave¹⁵ (beat) Omar a violent beating¹¹.—24. The direction of prayer was shifted¹² from Jerusalem to Mecca.—25. God knoweth (knowing) what¹³ ye are doing.—26. Verily⁷ God provides for every one his sufficiency.—27. Learning and money [they] cover up¹⁴ every fault, and poverty

¹ § 147 a. ² § 149. ³ suffix. ⁴ مِنْ. ⁵ perf. sing. § 136.
⁶ § 147 b. ⁷ § 147 a. ⁸ § 111. ⁹ ب. ¹⁰ § 122. ¹¹ § 109. ¹² § 136 b.
¹³ بِمَا, § 56 note a. ¹⁴ dual. § 136 d. ¹⁵ § 137 b.

and ignorance [they] uncover¹ every fault.—28. They took him away and put him in the bottom of the well.—29. The brothers of Joseph returned² to their father.—30. Why hast thou³ not⁴ washed thy shirt?—31. The most⁵ of mankind are not⁶ grateful².—32. They⁷ believe not⁸ in⁹ the future life.—33. We made heaven [to be] a [well-]preserved roof.—34. Do not do good out of¹⁰ hypocrisy, and do not leave off [doing] it out of¹⁰ modesty.—

35. Why do ye render waste the cultivated countries?—36. Thereupon we sent Moses and his brother Aaron with our signs to Pharaoh and his nobles; then they declared the two of them¹¹ to be liars.—37. The angels said¹², “O Mary! be obedient to thy Lord and “prostrate thyself; verily¹³ God giveth thee glad “tidings of a word from¹⁵ him; and he¹⁴ [is one] of¹⁵ “those¹⁶ who are placed near [to God], and he shall “talk to mankind in the cradle!”—38. It is not seemly to hurry (not is good the hurrying), except in the marrying of a¹⁷ daughter, and the burying of a¹⁷ dead [man], and the entertaining of a¹⁸ guest.—39. Glorify¹⁹ God in the early morning²⁰ and [late] in the evening²⁰.

¹ dual. § 136 *d*. ² plur. ³ fem. ⁴ لَمْ § 101 *c*. ⁵ sing. § 127. ⁶ لَا. ⁷ pronoun. ⁸ part. ⁹ ب. ¹⁰ § 113 *d*. ¹¹ suffix in the dual. ¹² § 136 *b*. ¹³ § 147 *a*. ¹⁴ pronoun. ¹⁵ مِنْ. ¹⁶ part. ¹⁷ § 118 *c*. ¹⁸ § 118 *c*. ¹⁹ plur. ²⁰ indetermin. accus. § 113 *a*.

40. Verily the hypocrite has (to the hyp. [belong]) three characteristics; his tongue contradicts his heart, and his speech his action, and his exterior his interior.—41. The men of his people used to sit with him¹ on account of his learning.—42. Verily the holy war [is] incumbent² on you.—43. The vehemence of a (the) man³ [is what] causes him to perish⁴.—44. The head of al-Husain the son of Alī was brought into the city⁵ of Damascus⁶ and was placed before Yazīd.—45. Verily we⁷ have become Muslims, so⁸ become Muslims ye⁹ [also]!—46. Do not talk to one another with disgraceful talk!—47. Every thing has (to every thing [belongs]) an indication; and the indication of understanding [is] reflection, and the indication of reflection [is] being silent.—48. We started off towards Bagdad to bring an action against one another¹⁰ before¹¹ its¹² governor.—49. The most excellent [kind] of praise [is], “[there is] no¹³ god except God!” and the most excellent of [good] works [are] the five¹⁴ prayers; and the most excellent [kind] of character [is] (the) being humble.—50. They fought with one another four days¹⁵, then the Byzantines

¹ كَانِ sing., then subject, then the verb in the plur. cf. §§ 89 note *e*; 136 *d*. ² part. ³ مَرءٍ. ⁴ nominal sent. § 139 *d a*. ⁵ § 107. ⁶ § 128. ⁷ § 96 *d*. ⁸ فَ. ⁹ pronoun. ¹⁰ part. § 113 *b*. ¹¹ إِلَى. ¹² § 72. ¹³ § 111. ¹⁴ masc. determ. after the noun, § 92 *a*. ¹⁵ § 113 *a*.

were routed¹.—51. What is disliked in² the king [is] the being devoted to (the) pleasures, and the hearing of (the) songs and the spending of (the) time therewith (with that).—52. They said, “O our father! verily we³ “went away, running races⁴, and left Joseph with⁵ “our baggage; then the wolf ate him”.—53. Observe what [is] in the heart of thy brother by means of his eye, for⁶ the eye [is] the title-page of the heart!—54. In the fourth year from the birth of Muhammed the [two] angels⁷ cut open⁸ his belly and extracted⁹ his heart; then they cut it⁹ [his heart] open and extracted⁹ from it a black clot of blood; thereupon they washed⁹ his heart and his belly with snow.—55. They conversed¹⁰ about the case of the Apostle.—

56. Verily God hath (to God [are])¹¹ servants whom¹² he distinguishes (he distinguishes them) with his favours.—57. Restrain thyself from meat¹³ which¹⁴ causes thee to acquire an indigestion, and [from] an action which¹⁴ occasions thee regret¹⁵.—58. Thou hast fallen in love¹⁶ with a girl, a possessor of beauty¹⁵ and elegance¹⁵.—59. Muhammed said, “Help thy brother, “[whether he be] doing wrong¹⁷ or wronged¹⁷!” They

¹ fem. sing. ² ل. ³ § 96 d. ⁴ imperf. merely, § 157 b. ⁵ عَنْكَ with gen. ⁶ ف. ⁷ dual. ⁸ sing. § 136 a. ⁹ dual § 136 d. ¹⁰ § 137 a. ¹¹ § 147 a. ¹² without relative particle § 155. ¹³ indetermin. ¹⁴ without relative particle § 155. ¹⁵ indetermin. ¹⁶ § 98 e. ¹⁷ § 113 b.

asked, "O Apostle of God! how shall we help him, "[if he be] doing wrong¹?" He said, "By restraining "him from doing wrong!"—60. Do not turn away² a beggar!—61. A man (servant) does not believe, until he love for his neighbour (brother) what³ he loves for himself.—

C. The Weak Verb.

62. A poor [man] begged of me, so I gave him [two] pieces of money⁴.—63. Be mindful of death, for he⁵ takes hold of your forelocks; if⁶ ye fly from him, he overtakes you, and if⁶ ye stay, he seizes you.—64. Music [is] like the spirit and wine [is] like the body; then through their⁷ coming together is born joy.—65. The Apostle used to⁸ preach to his companions and. to exhort them and to teach them the beauties of character⁹.—66. Verily¹⁰ our [true] friends will¹¹ entrust to us their secrets.—67. The lust¹² of the world entails care and sorrow, and abstinence with regard to it restores the heart and the body.—68. Moses said, "I have brought¹³ you an evidence from your "Lord; so let go¹⁴ along with me the Sons of Israel!"—69. Depend on the Living [one], who does not die!

¹ § 113 *b*. ² contracted § 36. ³ مَا § 156 and note *a*. ⁴ dual.

⁵ pronoun with foll. part. ⁶ § 159. ⁷ dual-suffix. ⁸ see p. 61* note 1. ⁹ pl. determ. ¹⁰ § 147 *a*. ¹¹ سَ § 99 *a*. ¹² فِي. ¹³ § 98 *e*. ¹⁴ sing.

—70. He pleases me, who makes poetry to ¹ show his education, not to ¹ make gain, and applies himself to singing to ¹ enjoy himself, not to ¹ seek for himself [reward].

—71. Demand help of the good (people² of the good), and of those that act well (and of the acting well).—

72. Choose³ whichever of the pages thou wilt!—

73. Supplicate much (make much the supplicating), for thou⁴ dost not know when⁵ answer⁶ will be given thee!—74. Restrain your tongues and lower your glances and guard your continence!—

75. A (the) kingdom is made flourishing through justice and is protected by courage and is ruled through [good] government.—76. [Good] government [is], that⁷ the gate of the chief be guarded⁸ in the [proper] time of being guarded⁹, and opened in the [proper] time of being open⁹, and the gatekeeper friendly.—77. Jalâl-al-dîn used not to go to sleep¹⁰ except drunk¹¹, nor (and not) to arise in the morning except seedy and tipsy¹¹.—78. It is not seemly for the wise [man], that¹² he address the fool, like as it is not seemly for the sober [man], that he address the drunken [man].—79. People¹³ of the world [are] like folk in a ship, who¹⁴ are carried onwards

¹ inf. § 113 *d.* ² § 133. ³ fem. ⁴ § 96 *d.* ⁵ مَتَّبِعِي. ⁶ impf. pass. impers. ⁷ § 148 *b.* ⁸ كَانَ with part. § 110. ⁹ 61 *c.* ¹⁰ see p. 61* note 1. ¹¹ § 113 *b.* ¹² § 148 *b.* ¹³ § 133. ¹⁴ §§ 155, 156.

whilst they are sleeping¹.—80. The evil-doer [he] does not consider² mankind except [as] evil, because he³ sees them with⁴ the eye of his nature.—81. God elected Abraham [as] an [intimate] friend.⁷—82. Every affair in the world [is] transitory.—83. Wickedness [is] to be feared⁵, and no one (not) fears it except the intelligent [man]; and good [is] to be hoped for, and every one⁶ seeks it.—84. [To] a man (servant) shall not⁸ be given [anything] more ample than endurance.—85. I looked into Paradise, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] the poor; and I looked into hell-fire, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] (the) women.—86. He⁹ whose counsel is asked [is] one¹⁰ in whom one confides; and he¹⁰ who asks counsel [is] one¹⁰ who is to be aided.—87. Do not put off¹¹ the work of to-day till to-morrow¹².—88. Thou dost not¹³ find (see) in the creation of God any¹⁴ imperfection.—89. Little which¹⁰ continues [is] better than much which¹⁰ is interrupted.—90. Pharaoh said, “We will¹⁵ kill¹⁶ their sons and spare their women.”—91. A Bedouin looked at a gold-piece; then he said, “How small¹⁷ is thy size and how great¹⁷ thy value!”—

¹ § 157 a. ² § 139 d α. ³ suff. ⁴ ب. ⁵ § 60 c. ⁶ أَحَدٌ.
⁷ حَلِيلًا. ⁸ لَنْ § 100 end. ⁹ part. ¹⁰ part. ¹¹ § 101 b.
¹² indetermin. ¹³ مَا. ¹⁴ مِنْ as used § 141. ¹⁵ سَ، § 99 a.
¹⁶ § 19. ¹⁷ § 52.

92. The envious [man] is not well-pleased with thee¹, until thou diest!—93. Be [the] tail and be not [the] head! for² the tail escapes whilst³ the head perishes.

D. Various subordinate Sentences.

94. Muhammed said, “Do not anticipate (begin)⁴ Jews and Christians by the greeting, but when ye meet one of them⁵, (then)⁶ force him towards the narrowest place (his narrowest)”.—95. When comes to thy knowledge concerning thy brother what is evil, then seek for him excuse; but if thou dost not⁷ find [one], then say, “Perhaps he has an excuse.”—96. If⁸ thou eat little, thou shalt live long.—97. If⁸ ye talk in a good manner (make ye good the talk), ye shall enter Paradise.—98. Alî said,—may⁹ God be well pleased with him¹⁰—“O¹¹ mankind! do not hope except for your Lord, and do not dread [anything] except your transgressions; and be not he ashamed, who¹² doth not know, to¹³ learn, and be not he ashamed, who¹² knoweth, to¹³ teach!”—99. The subsistence which thou seekest is like the shadow (the likeness of the subsistence... [is] the likeness of the shadow) which moves on along

¹ verbal sentence. ² فَإِنَّ. ³ § 157 nomin. sent.
⁴ plur. ⁵ أَحَدٌ with gen. § 133 end. ⁶ § 161 c. ⁷ §§ 159, 101 c.
⁸ § 160 b. ⁹ § 98 d. ¹⁰ after the subject. ¹¹ أَيُّهَا § 85. ¹² مَنْ.
¹³ أَنْ with subj.

with thee; thou¹ dost not overtake it in pursuing² [it], then when thou turnest³ away from it, it follows thee!⁴—100. A man said to the Apostle of God: “O Muhammed, give me thy cloak!”; then he threw it down to⁵ him; then he said: “I do not⁶ want it”; then he [Muh.] said, “May⁷ God combat thee! thou didst wish to⁸ declare me to be niggardly, but (and) God has not made⁹ me [to be] niggardly!”—101. Whoso¹⁰ longs for Paradise, he is unmindful of lusts¹¹.—102. That a man²² give in alms in his lifetime a drachma (the alms-giving¹² of a man—a drachma) [is] better for him than that¹³ he give in alms a hundred drachmæ at his death.

103. The Prophet—may God bless¹⁴ him and save him—said, “Whoso¹⁰ drinketh wine in this world, [and] thereupon do not¹⁵ repent, he shall be forbidden it¹⁶ in the future life.”—104. If anyone light a lamp in a mosque, then verily¹⁷ the angels [they] will beg forgiveness for him as long as¹⁸ that lamp continues¹⁹ kindled²⁰.—105. The reed-pen [is] a tree, whose²¹ fruit [is] the ideas, and thought [is] a sea, whose²¹

¹ pronoun. ² part. 113 *b*. ³ § 158 *a*. ⁴ perf. ⁵ إِلَى. مَا
with imperf. ⁷ § 98 *d*. ⁸ أَنْ with subj. ⁹ § 101 *c*.
¹⁰ § 159. ¹¹ determ. ¹² inf. ¹³ مِنْ أَنْ § 148 *b* with subj.
¹⁴ § 11 end. ¹⁵ لَمْ §§ 160 *c*, 101 *c*. ¹⁶ § 108. ¹⁷ § 161 *a*. ¹⁸ § 158 *b*.
¹⁹ § 110. ²⁰ part. pass. § 110. ²¹ § 155. ²² مَرَّةً.
E*

pearls [are] wisdom.—106. Verily the dead [man] and he who¹ has no religion (he who no² religion to him) [are] equal³; and there is no² trust in (to) him who¹ has no² piety.—107. Every woman that⁴ has no⁵ modesty [is] like a dish that has no⁵ salt.—108. If anyone's⁶ [whoso, his] tattle is much, his erring is much [also].—109. The anger of the noble [man], although his fire flare up⁷, [is] like smoke of wood⁸ in which [there is] no⁹ blackness.—110. To the ignorant [man] are forgiven¹⁰ seventy¹¹ transgressions, ere to the knowing [man] is forgiven one.

111. Be not¹² like the needle, which¹³ clothes mankind whilst¹⁴ it [is] naked, nor (and) like the wick, which¹⁴ gives light to mankind whilst it is consumed¹⁵.—112. The believer does not escape from the chastisement of God, until he leave off four things, lying, and pride, and niggardliness, and evil thinking (evil of the thinking).—113. It is seemly for the younger [ones] to¹⁶ precede the elders in three places; when¹⁷ they travel by night¹⁸, or wade through a stream, or encounter horsemen.—114. Do not drink (the) poison out of reliance¹⁹ on the antidote which thou hast

¹ مَنْ. ² § 111. ³ sing. ⁴ §§ 155, 156. ⁵ part.pass. § 110. ⁶ § 156. ⁷ § 159. ⁸ indetermin. § 155. ⁹ § 111. ¹⁰ § 136 a. ¹¹ § 92 b. ¹² لَا with energ. I. § 101 b. ¹³ § 155. ¹⁴ § 157 a. ¹⁵ § 157 a, pron. with imperf. ¹⁶ § 148. ¹⁷ § 158 a. ¹⁸ § 113 a. ¹⁹ § 113 d.

(that which [is] with¹ thee of² the antidote).—
 115. Paradise is desirous³ of four [kinds of] folk; the
 first⁴ of them⁵ [are] those who have fed⁶ a hungry
 [man], and the second [are] those who have clothed⁷
 a naked [man], and the third [are] those who fast⁷
 in⁸ the month of Ramadân⁹, and the fourth [are]
 those who read¹⁰ the Koran.—116. Socrates was asked,
 “Why hast thou not¹¹ mentioned in thy law-code the
 “punishment of him who kills¹² his brother?” He said,
 “I know not that this [is] a thing which exists.”—
 117. Every thing [it] begins small¹³, thereupon it be-
 comes great, except misfortune¹⁴; for it begins great,
 thereupon it becomes small; and every thing [it] becomes
 cheap, when¹⁵ it becomes abundant, excepting education;
 for¹⁶ when it becomes abundant, it rises in value.

118. After Moses had returned to the Sons of
 Israel with the Thora (and along with him [was] the
 Thora), they refused to¹⁷ accept it and to do according
 to what [was] in it.—119. God commanded Moses to¹⁸
 fast thirty¹⁸ days and to purify himself and to purify
 his garments, and to come to¹⁹ the mountain, that he
 might talk to him and give him the book.—120. After

¹ عِنْدَ. ² مِنْ. ³ part. ⁴ masc. ⁵ suffix in fem. sing.
⁶ perf. sing. ⁷ imperf. sing. ⁸ § 113 a. ⁹ § 128. ¹⁰ imperf.
 sing. ¹¹ § 101 c. ¹² § 159. ¹³ § 113 b. ¹⁴ accus. § 151. ¹⁵ § 158 a.
¹⁶ with suff. § 96 d. ¹⁷ أَعَزَّ with subj. ¹⁸ § 113 a. ¹⁹ إِلَى

Damascus was taken ¹, much folk ² of ³ its inhabitants joined Heraclius, whilst ⁴ he was in ⁵ Antioch.—121. A certain one of the wise men said, Nothing (not) repels the onslaught of the conquering enemy like ⁶ being submissive and giving way, like as ⁷ green plants are safe from the vehement wind through their pliancy, because they ⁸ turn along with it, as (how) ⁹ it turns.—122. They disagree ¹⁰ concerning Waraka; and of ¹¹ them [there are] those who assert ¹⁵ that ¹² he died a Christian ¹³ and did not ¹⁴ reach the appearance of the Prophet; and of ¹¹ them [there are] those who are of opinion ¹⁵ that ¹² he died a Muslim.—123. O [ye two] companions of the prison! as to the one of you ¹⁶, he shall serve to his lord wine ¹⁷, and as to the other, he shall be crucified, then shall ¹⁸ the birds eat of ¹² his head; the affair is decreed ¹⁹ concerning which ye inquire!—124. The Apostle wrote to chieftains ¹⁷ of ¹¹ the tribes, inviting ²⁰ them to become Muslims ²¹.—125. A wise [man] was asked, “What [is] the thing, which [it] is not good that it be said, although it be ²² right?” He said, “A man’s eulogizing himself ²³”.—126. Woe to

¹ fem. § 136 *b*. ² بَشَرٌ coll. ³ مِنْ. ⁴ § 157 *a*. ⁵ ب. ⁶ مِثْلٌ as subject, § 145 *b*. ⁷ كَمَا أَنَّ § 147 *a*. ⁸ sing. suff. ⁹ § 159. ¹⁰ § 98 *b* with قَدْ, § 137 *a*. ¹¹ مِنْ. ¹² § 147 *a*. ¹³ § 113 *b*. ¹⁴ § 101 *c*. ¹⁵ § 98 *b*. ¹⁶ أَحَدٌ w. dual suff. § 133. ¹⁷ indetermin. ¹⁸ fem. sing. § 136 *c*, 2. ¹⁹ § 98 *b*. ²⁰ § 99 *b*. ²¹ infin. determ. ²² كَانَ § 159. ²³ § 131 w. Acc.

[him] who converses with lying, that he may make the people laugh by it!—127. This (the) world and the future life [are] as the East and the West; when thou approachest one of them¹, thou dost recede from the other.—128. Fear ye God in secret² and do not enter into what is not lawful for you!—129. The devotee without learning [is] like the ass of the mill³, who⁴ goes around and does not⁵ get through (cut) the distance.—130. The eye of hate [it] draws forth every fault, and the eye of love [it] does not find the faults.

E. Anecdotes.

131. An astrologer was being crucified; then he was asked⁶, “Hast thou⁷ seen this in thy star?” Then he said, “I saw a raising up⁸, however I did not⁹ know that it [was to be] upon a piece of wood.”

132. A man knocked at the door of¹⁰ ‘Amr the son of ‘Ubaid; so he said “Who [is] this?” He said, “I.” He [‘Amr] said, “I do not know (I am not I know¹¹) among our friends (brothers)¹² [any] one¹³, whose name [is] I.”

133. (The) thieves came¹⁴ in upon Abû Bekr al-Rabbânî, seeking¹⁵ something (a thing), and he saw

¹ dual suffix. ² determ. ³ § 123, note. ⁴ § 155 note. ⁵ § 157*b* لا w. imperf. ⁶ 137 *a*. ⁷ with interrog. part. هَلْ. ⁸ 73 *c* end. ⁹ § 101 *c*. ¹⁰ عَلَى. ¹¹ لَيْسَ § 50 and imperf. ¹² order § 131 *b*. ¹³ أَحَدٌ. ¹⁴ § 136 *a*. ¹⁵ § 157 *b* imperf. alone.

them going around¹ in the house. Then he said, "O young men! This which ye are seeking² in the night³ we have⁴ already sought² in the day-time, but have not⁵ found it!" So they laughed and went out.

134. It is related⁶, that⁷ a certain one of the polite scholars eulogized a certain one of the princes; so he commanded [that] to him an [ass's] saddle and saddle-girth [should be given]. So he took them⁸ on⁹ his shoulder and went out from his presence¹⁰. Then a certain one of his companions saw him, then said, "What [is] this?" He said, "I eulogized the prince with the most beautiful of my poems, then he invested me with [something] of¹¹ the most glorious of his dresses".

135. Al-Mugîra, the son of Šu'ba said: No one (not)¹² has deceived me except (another than) a youth of¹³ the sons of al-Hârîṭ. For I mentioned a woman of theirs (of¹¹ them), that¹³ I should marry her; then he said, "O¹⁴ Prince! [There is] no good¹⁵ for thee in her." So I said, "And why [not]?" He said, "I saw a man kissing¹⁶ her." So I turned from her; then the young man married her. So I reproached him and said, "Didst thou not¹⁷ inform me that thou¹⁸ hadst

⁷ imperf. ² with suffix. ³ § 118 a. ⁴ § 98 e. ⁵ مَا § 150 a.
⁶ § 98 b. ⁷ أَنْ. ⁸ dual suffix. ⁹ عَلَى. ¹⁰ مِنْ عِنْدِهِ. ¹¹ مِنْ.
¹² 101 c. ¹³ ل. ¹⁴ أَتَيْتَهَا. ¹⁵ § 111. ¹⁶ imperf. ¹⁷ أَلَمْ § 101 c.
¹⁸ أَنْ with suff.

seen a man kissing her?" He said, "Yes, I saw her father kissing her."

136. Al-Dalḥāk the son of Muzāḥim said to a Christian, "[How would it be] if ¹ thou wert to become a Muslim?" He said, "I have not ² ceased loving ³ Islām ⁴, except that ⁵ my love for wine ⁶ prevents me from it." So he said, "Become a Muslim and drink it!" So after he had become a Muslim, he said to him, "Thou hast ⁷ become a Muslim, so if thou drink it ⁸, we shall chastise thee; and if thou apostatize, we shall have thee killed ⁹, so choose for thyself". Then he chose Islām and his Islām was good. So he had taken ¹⁰ him by stratagem.

137. A Bedouin stole a purse in which (it) [were] pieces of money ¹¹, thereupon he entered the mosque to pray ¹²; and his name was ¹³ Moses. Then the leader of prayer recited, "And what is that ¹⁴ in ¹⁵ thy right hand, Oh Moses ¹⁶?" So he said, "By God, verily thou [art] an enchanter!" Thereupon he threw away the purse and went out.

138. A man claimed the (a) gift of prophecy in the days ¹⁷ of al-Rašīd. So after he had appeared

¹ لَوْ § 102. ² مَا with perf. ³ § 110 with indetermin. part.
⁴ § 132 end. ⁵ §§ 147 c, 148 ⁶ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ with foll. verbal sentence.
⁶ § 131. ⁷ § 98c with ⁸ فَدُ. ⁸ § 159. ⁹ § 17, note b. ¹⁰ perf.
¹¹ indetermin. ¹² § 99 b. ¹³ كَانَ. ¹⁴ fem. ¹⁵ ب. ¹⁶ Surah 20, 18.
¹⁷ § 113 a.

before him [the Caliph], he asked him, "What [is that] which is said of thee?" He said, "that I¹ am a noble prophet." He asked, "But what² indicates the truth of thy claim?" He said, "Demand what³ thou wilt"⁴. He said, "I wish that⁵ thou make these⁶ beardless slaves, [who are] standing⁷ [there] this moment⁸ [to be furnished] with beards⁹" Then he looked down for a while¹⁰, thereupon he raised his head and said, "How is it lawful that I make these¹¹ beardless [ones to be furnished] with beards⁹ and alter these⁶ beautiful¹² forms? but¹³ I will make the bearded ones (owners of beards) beardless in one twinkling." So al-Rašid laughed at him and pardoned him and commanded a present [to be given] to him.

139. A person pretended to prophecy¹⁴; then they besought of him in¹⁵ the presence of al-Ma'mûn a miracle. So he said, "I will cast for you a pebble into the water, then it will dissolve". He [al-Ma'mûm] said, "We are¹⁶ content." So he brought out a pebble [which he had] along with him¹⁷, then cast it into the water; then it dissolved. So they said, "This¹⁸ is a

¹ § 96 *d*. ² أَيْ شَيْءٌ. ³ § 5, note *b*. ⁴ perf. § 159. ⁵ أَنْ.
⁶ § 120 *d*; the dem. in sing., the adj. in broken pl. ⁷ determ. § 120 *a*. ⁸ § 118 *a*. ⁹ indetermin. ¹⁰ § 113 *a*. ¹¹ plur. ¹² § 120 fem. sing. ¹³ وَإِنَّمَا. ¹⁴ § 22. ¹⁵ ب. ¹⁶ § 98 *c*. ¹⁷ مَعَهُ § 121 *a*.
¹⁸ § 143.

trick; however, we will give¹ thee a pebble of our own², and let³ it dissolve!" Then he said, "Ye are not⁴ more illustrious⁵ than Pharaoh and I am not (and not I⁶) mightier in wisdom⁷ than Moses, and Pharaoh did not⁸ say to Moses, 'I am not⁹ content with what thou doest¹⁰ with thy staff, so that¹¹ I will give thee a staff of my own¹², which¹³ thou shalt make [into] a serpent.'" So al-Ma'mûn laughed and let him pass on.

140. It is said¹⁴ that Abû Dulâma¹⁵ the poet was standing¹⁶ before al-Saffâh on¹⁷ a certain day (a certain one of the days). Then he said to him, "Ask of me what thou dost want (thy want)!" So Abû Dulâma said to him, "I want a hunting-dog". So he said, "Give ye it¹⁸ to him!" Then he said, "And I want a horse, on¹⁹ which I may go forth to hunt." He said, "Give ye it to him!" He said, "And a page²⁰, who²¹ will lead the dog and hunt with him." He said, "And give ye him a page!" He said, "And a slave-girl²², who²³ will prepare the game and give us to eat of it." He said, "Give ye him a slave-girl!" He said, "These,

¹ imperf. ² مِنْ عِنْدَنَا. ³ imper. of وَدَعَ w. suff.; then imperf. ⁴ كَيْسٌ § 110. ⁵ § 63 b. ⁶ وَلَا أَنَا. ⁷ § 113 c. ⁸ § 101 c. ⁹ كَمْ. ¹⁰ § 156. ¹¹ حَتَّى with subj. ¹² مِنْ عِنْدِي. ¹³ §§ 155—56. ¹⁴ § 98 c. ¹⁵ 147 a. ¹⁶ كَانَ with part. § 110. ¹⁷ فِي. ¹⁸ with إِبْرًا, which stands last, § 54 b. ¹⁹ عَلَى (after the verb) § 155. ²⁰ accus. ²¹ § 155. ²² accus. ²³ § 155.

O Prince of the Believers! have need of ([there is] no¹ escape for them from) a dwelling, which² they may inhabit." So he said, "Give ye him a dwelling, which² will contain them!" He said, "And if they have not (and if not is³ to them) an estate, then wherefrom shall they live?" He said, "I grant⁴ thee ten cultivated⁵ estates and ten waste estates⁵." He said, "And what [are] the waste⁵ [ones] O Prince of the Believers?" He said, "In which⁶ [there are] no plants⁷." He said, "I⁴ grant thee, O Prince of the Believers, a hundred⁸ waste estates of⁹ the deserts of the Sons of Asad." Then he laughed at him and said, "Make them¹⁰ all of them¹⁰ cultivated!¹⁰"

141. It is related¹¹, that Harûn al-Rašîd had (that to H. was¹²) a black slave-girl, of ugly mien¹³. Now he scattered one day gold-pieces¹⁴ among (between) the slave-girls; so the slave-girls set about¹⁵ gathering¹⁶ up the gold-pieces, whilst¹⁷ that slave-girl stood still, looking¹⁸ at the face of al-Rašîd. Some one asked (it was asked), "Dost thou¹⁹ not pick up the

¹ § 111. ² §§ 155—56. ³ لَمْ تَكُنْ. ⁴ § 98 c with قَدْ.
⁵ § 87 a. ⁶ مَا and prep. with pronoun at the end of the sentence.
⁷ § 111. ⁸ § 92 c. ⁹ مِنْ. ¹⁰ fem. sing. ¹¹ § 98 c. ¹² أَنَّهُ كَانَ لِ
¹³ § 147 c. ¹⁴ determ. § 134. ¹⁵ indeterm. ¹⁶ § 136 a. ¹⁷ §§ 152
note b, 136 d (impf. pl. fem.) ¹⁸ § 157 a with part. ¹⁹ § 157 b
impf. alone. ¹⁹ أَلَا w. impf. fem.

gold-pieces?" Then she said, "Verily what¹ they seek [is] the gold-pieces, but (and) what¹ I seek [is] the owner of the gold-pieces." Then her speech pleased him; so he placed her near [to him] and brought good upon her. Then the report got to the grandees, that² Harûn al-Rašîd was enamoured³ of a black slave-girl. So after that had come to his knowledge, he sent for the whole of the grandees, until he had assembled⁴ them in his presence⁵. Then after he had commanded the bringing in⁶ of the slave-girls, he gave every one of⁷ them a goblet of⁷ chrysolite⁸ and commanded it to be thrown down⁶. But they declined [doing it] in a body (as a whole⁹). Then the turn came to (the affair got to) the ugly slave-girl; but she threw down the goblet and broke it. So they said, "Look¹⁰ at this girl, her name [is] ugly, and her manner [is] ugly, and her action [is] ugly". Then said to her the Caliph, "Why then didst thou break¹¹ it"? Then she said, "Thou didst¹² command me to break it¹³; so I was of opinion that¹⁴ in¹⁵ its being broken [lay] a detriment¹⁶ with regard to the

¹ part. pass. with suffix. ² بَيَّنَّ. ³ imperf. ⁴ § 152, note c.
⁵ عِنْدَهُ. ⁶ ب with infinitive § 131. ⁷ مِنْ § 119 a.
⁸ determ. ⁹ § 113 b. ¹⁰ plur. ¹¹ 2nd. pers. fem. perf. w. suff.
 § 53 a. ¹² § 98 e. ¹³ ب with inf. ¹⁴ أَتَى. ¹⁵ فِي. ¹⁶ § 147 a.

treasure of the Caliph, and in its not being broken (in the lack of its being broken) a detriment ¹ with regard to his command; and the detriment with regard to the first is fitter to keep intact ² the inviolability of the command of the Caliph. And I was of opinion that in its being broken [lay] my being called (qualified ³ as ⁴) the crazy [one], and in keeping it intact my called being (qualified ³ as ⁴) the disobedient [one]; and the first [is] more agreeable to me than the second." Then the grandees found ⁵ that ⁶ to be beautiful of ⁷ her and praised her for ⁸ it and excused the Caliph for ⁹ loving her. And God knows best ([is] most knowing ¹⁰).

¹ § 147 a. ² § 113 d, indetermin. inf. with following ل § 131.
³ § 61 c. ⁴ ب. ⁵ § 136 a. ⁶ at the end. ⁷ مِنْ. ⁸ عَلَى.
⁹ فِي. ¹⁰ elative.

GLOSSARY A.

pl. = plural, see §§ 88—90. The numbers within parentheses after the broken plurals refer to the forms as numbered in these sections.

Aaron هَارُونُ.

Abraham إِبْرَاهِيمُ.

abstinence زُهْدٌ.

Abū Bekr al-Rabbāni أَبُو بَكْرٍ الرَّبَّانِيُّ.

Abū Dulāma أَبُو دُلَامَةَ.

abundant *see* much.

accept (to) قَبِلَ *impf. a.*

acquire (to cause to) كَسَبَ
IV with two accus.

act well (to) حَسَنَ *IV.*

action فِعْلٌ. *See also* bring.

address (to) خَطَبَ *III.*

affair أَمْرٌ.

after, after that *conj.* لَمَّا
§ 98 *f.*

after *prep.* خَلْفَ.

agreeable to *elat.* أَحَبُّ
with إِلَى.

aid (to) عَانَ *med. و IV*
with acc.

‘Alī عَلِيٌّ.

all كُلٌّ *with determ. noun*
or suffix § 119 *b.*

alms (to give in) صَدَقَ
V with ب of the gift.

along with *prep.* مَعَ.

already قَدْ § 98 *e.*

alter (to) غَارَ *med. ي II.*

although وَإِنَّ § 159.

among فِي.

ample وَاسِعٌ *elat.* § 63 *b.*

‘Amr ^{عَمْرُو} § 90 n.

and ^و.

angel ^{مَلَأَنَّ} pl. ^{مَفَاعِلَةٌ} (28).

anger ^{غَضَبٌ}.

animal (domestic) ^{بَهِيمَةٌ}

pl. ^{فَعَائِلٌ} (25).

another than ^{غَيْرٌ} with following gen.

answer (to give) to ^{جَابَ}

X med. ^و with ^{لِ}.

antidote ^{دِرْيَاقٌ}.

Antioch ^{أَنْطَاكِيَّةٌ}.

any ^{مِنْ} (*prep.*), cf. § 141.

apostatize ^{رَدَّ} VIII.

apostle ^{رَسُولٌ}.

appear (to) ^{مَثَلَ}.

appearance ^{ظُهُورٌ}.

apply oneself to (to) ^{عَاطَا}

VI with acc.

approach (to) ^{قَرُبَ} *impf.*

u, with ^{مِنْ}.

arise (to, in the morning)

^{صَبَحَ} *IV*.

as *see* like.

as to ^{أَمَّا} with *nom.* and *ف* in the apodosis.

Asad ^{أَسَدٌ}.

ashamed (to be) ^{حَيَّ} *X*
§ 49 c.

ask (to) ^{قَالَ} *med.* ^و with

^{لِ}. — to ask something

of ^{سَأَلَ} *impf. a*, with two
acc. § 38 b.

ass ^{حِمَارٌ}.

assemble (to) ^{جَمَعَ} *impf. a*.

assert (to) ^{زَعَمَ} *impf. u*.

astrologer ^{مُنَاجِمٌ}.

at (one's house) *prep.* ^{عِنْدَ}.

Bagdad ^{بَغْدَادٌ}.

baggage ^{مَتَاعٌ}.

be, exist (to) ^{كَانَ} *med.* ^و.

— not to be ^{لَيْسَ} § 50.

beard ^{لَحْيَةٌ} pl. ^{فِعْلٌ} (3); cf.

§ 71 b.

- beardless ^{فَعْلٌ} *pl.* ^{أَمْرُدٌ} (1).
 beat (to) ^{ضَرَبَ} *impf. i, inf.*
^{ضَرَبَ}.
 beauty ^{حُسْنٌ}. — beauties
^{مَحَاسِنُ}.
 beautiful ^{حَسَنٌ} *fem.* ^{سَةً};
elat. § 63 b. — to find
 to be beautiful ^{حَسَنٌ} *X*.
 because ^{لِأَنَّ} § 147 a.
 Bedouin ^{أَعْرَابِيٌّ}.
 before (of place) = be-
 tween the two hands
 of (dual stat. constr.).
 beg of (to) ^{سَأَلَ} *impf. a,*
with acc.
 beggar *part. act.* of ^{سَأَلَ}.
 begin, begin with (to) ^{بَدَأَ}
impf. a, with acc.
 beginning ^{رَأْسٌ} (lit. head).
 believe (to) ^{أَمِنَ} *IV*; —
 believer *id. part. act.*
 belly ^{بَطْنٌ}.
- beseech of (to) ^{طَلَبَ} *III*
with acc. of person and
b of thing.
 best *elat. of good.*
 better *elat. of good.*
 between ^{بَيْنَ}.
 beverage ^{مَشْرَبٌ} *pl.* ^{مَقَاعِلٌ}
 (23).
 birds *coll.* ^{طَيْرٌ}.
 birth ^{مَوْلَدٌ}.
 black ^{أَسْوَدٌ} *fem.* § 74 b.
 blackness ^{سَوَادٌ}.
 bless (to) ^{صَلَّى} *II* with ^{عَلَى}.
 body ^{جَسَدٌ} *pl.* ^{أَفْعَالٌ} (17).
^{بَدَنٌ} (no. 67).
 book ^{كِتَابٌ}.
 born (to be) ^{وُلِدَ} *V*.
 bottom ^{غَيَابَةٌ}.
 break (to) ^{كَسَرَ} *impf. i.*
 bring (to) ^{جَاءَ} *med.* ^{يَ}.
 — to bring an action
 against one another

- VI. — to bring in ^{حکم}
 IV. — to bring ^{حضر}
 into ^{دخل} IV. — to
 bring out ^{خر} IV. —
 to bring upon ^{أتى} IV
 with ^{على}.
 brother ^{أخ} § 90 a, c; pl.
 § 88, 5; pl. when =
 "friends" § 88, 21.
 bury (to) ^{دفن} ^{impf. i, inf.}
^{دفن}.
 but ^ف.
 by, by means of ^ب; in
 oaths = ^و *v. the gen.*
 § 95 i.
 Byzantines (the) ^{الروم} coll.
 Caliph ^{خليفة}.
 care ^{هم}.
 carry onwards (to) ^{سار}
med. ب, with ^ي.
 case ^{خبر}.
 cast (to) ^{طرح} *impf. a.*
 cease (to) ^{زال} *med. و* (for
^{زول} § 42 d, § 44).
 certain one (a) ^{بعض} with
pl. of follow. noun.
 character ^{خلق} *pl. افعال*
 (17).
 characteristic ^{علامة}.
 chastise (to) ^{حد} *impf. u.*
 chastisement ^{عذاب}.
 cheap (to become) ^{رخص}
impf. u.
 chief ^{رئيس} *pl. فعلاء* (20).
 choose (to) ^{خار} *med. ي*
VIII.
 chrysolite ^{يافوت}.
 Christian ^{نصراني} *pl. فعالى*
 (29); ^{نصارى}.
 claim (to) ^{دعا} *VIII* § 25,
note.
 claim ^{دعوى}.
 cloak ^{رداء}.
 clot of blood ^{عققة}.

clothe (to) كَسَا *impf. u.*

city مَدِينَةٌ ^s.

cognizant of عَلِيمٌ بِ ^s.

combat (to) قَتَلَ *III.*

come (to) أَتَى *impf. i.* —

to come to one's knowledge (concerning) بَلَغَ

impf. u, with acc. (and

عَنْ). — to come in

upon دَخَلَ *impf. u, with*

عَلَى. — to come out

from خَرَجَ *impf. u, with*

مِنْ.

come together جَمَعَ *VIII.*

command (to) أَمَرَ *impf. u.*

— to command anyone to do a thing, *id. with*

acc. and أَنْ with the

subj. — to command

anything to be given

to anyone, *id. with لِ*

of pers. and بِ of thing.

— to command any thing to be done, *id.*

with بِ and infin.

command أَمَرَ ^s.

companion صَاحِبٌ ^s *pl.*

أَفْعَالٌ (17).

compassionate رَحِيمٌ ^s.

concerning فِي.

confide in (to) أَمِنَ *VIII.*

conquering *part. act. of*

قَهَرَ.

consider as (to) ظَنَّ *impf.*

u, with acc.

consumed (to be) حَرَقَ *VIII.*

contain (to) جَمَعَ *impf. a.*

content (to be) رَضِيَ *impf.*

a. — to be content with,

id. with بِ.

contentment تَنَاعَى ^s.

continence فُرُوجٌ ^s (*pl. of*

فَرْجٌ).

- continue (to) دَامَ *med.* و
§ 110.
- contradict (to) خَلَفَ *III.*
- converse (to) حَدَّثَ *V.* —
to converse about, id.
with بِ.
- counsel (to ask) شَارَ *med.*
و *X.*
- country بَلَدٌ *pl.* فِعَالٌ (9).
- courage شَجَاعَةٌ.
- cover up (to) سَتَرَ *impf. u.*
- covetousness حَرَصَ.
- cradle مَهْدٌ.
- crazy *part pass. of* جَنَّ
fem. سَةٌ.
- creation خَلَقَ.
- crucify (to) صَلَبَ *impf. i.*
- cultivated *part. act. of*
عَمَرَ *fem.* سَةٌ.
- cure شَفَاءٌ.
- cut (to) قَطَعَ *impf. a.* —
to cut open شَقَّ *impf. u.*
- ad-Ḍahḥāk اَلْضَّحَّاكُ.
- Damascus دِمَشْقُ.
- daughter بِنْتُ § 90 *i.*
- day يَوْمٌ *pl.* أَيَّامٌ §§ 88, 17;
90 *s.* — one day يَوْمًا.
- to-day الْيَوْمَ.
- day-time نَهَارٌ.
- dead مَيِّتٌ.
- death مَوْتُ.
- deceive (to) خَدَعَ *impf. a.*
- decline (to) مَنَعَ *VIII.*
- decree (to) قَضَى *impf. i.*
- demand (to) a thing سَأَلَ
impf. a, with عَنْ § 38 *b.*
- depend on (to) وَكَلَ *V, with*
عَلَى.
- desert فَيْفَاءٌ *pl.* فَعَالٍ (26);
فَيَافٍ.
- desirous of (to be) شَاقَ
med. و VIII, with إِلَى or
عَلَى.
- detriment نَقَصٌ.

- devoted to (to be) هَمَكَ dog كَلَبٌ; hunting-dog
VIII with فِي. كَلَبٌ صَيِّدٌ.
- devotee *part. act. of* عَبْد domestic *see* animal.
V. door بَابٌ.
- die (to) مَاتَ *med. و.* drachma دِرْهَمٌ.
- difficult عَسِيرٌ. draw forth (to) بَرَزَ *IV.*
- disagree (to) خَلَفَ *VIII.* dread (to) خَشِيَ *impf. a.*
- disease دَاءٌ. dress فَعَالِلٌ *pl. مَلْبَسٌ* (23).
- disgraceful قَبِيحٌ. drink (to) شَرَبَ *impf. a.*
- dish طَعَامٌ. drunk, drunken سَكْرَانٌ.
- dislike (to) كَرِهَ *impf. a.* dwelling دَارٌ (*fem.*).
- disobedient *part. act. of* عَصَى early *see* morning.
- dissolve (to) ذَابَ *med. و.* East مَشْرِقٌ.
- distance مَسَافَةٌ. easy يَسِيرٌ.
- distinguish (to) خَصَّ eat (to) أَكَلَ *impf. u; imp.*
impf. u. § 38 b. — to give to
eat of طَعِمَ *IV with acc.*
- do (to) عَمِلَ *impf. a; فَعَلَ* pers. and مِّنْ.
- impf. a* (no. 139). — to education أَدَبٌ. — to show
do according to عَمِلَ one's education ادب *V.*
- with بِ.* elder أَفَاعِلٌ *pl. أَكْبَرُ* (23).

elect (to) صَفَى *VIII.*

elegance جَمَالٌ.

enamoured of (to be)

عَشِقَ *impf. a, with acc.*

enchanter سَاحِرٌ.

encounter (to) لَقِيَ *III.*

endurance صَبْرٌ.

enemy عَدُوٌّ.

enjoy oneself (to) طَرِبَ *V.*

entail (to) وَرَثَ *IV.*

enter (to) دَخَلَ *impf. u.*

see § 107 note.

entertain (to) قَرَى *impf. i.*

inf. قَرَأَ.

entrance مَدْخَلٌ.

entrust (to) anyone with

وَدَعَ *X with two accus.*

envious *part. act. of* حَسَدَ.

equal سَوَاءٌ.

ere, *conj.* قَبْلَ أَنْ § 100.

err (to) غَلَطَ *inf.* غَلَطَ.

error ضَلَالٌ.

escape (to) نَجَا *impf. u.*

escape بُدَّ.

estate ضَيْعَةٌ *pl.* نِعَالٌ (9).

eulogize (to) مَدَحَ *impf.*

a.; id. VIII (no. 134).

evening (late) عَشِيٌّ.

every كُلٌّ *with indeterm.*

noun. § 119 b.

evidence بَيِّنَةٌ.

evil (to be) سَاءَ *med.* وَ.

— to do evil *id. IV.* —

evil-doer *part act. of*

id. IV.

evil سُوءٌ.

example عِبْرَةٌ.

excellent فَاضِلٌ *elat.* § 63 b.

except إِلَّا (= إِنْ لَا) § 151.

— except that إِلَّا أَنَّهُ

§ 147 c.

excepting مَا خَلَا *with acc.*

excuse (to) عَذَرَ *impf. i.*

excuse عَذْرٌ.

- exhort (to) وَعَظَّ *impf. i*, § 40 *a*.
 exist (to) كَانَ *med.* و.
 exit مَخْرَجٌ.
 exterior عَلَانِيَةٌ.
 extract (to) خَرَجَ *X*.
 eye عَيْنٌ *fem.* § 72.
 face وَجْهٌ.
 fast (to) صَامَ *med.* و.
 father أَبٌ § 90 *a*.
 fault عَيْبٌ *pl.* (10).
 favour نِعْمَةٌ *pl.* (3).
 fear (to) خَافَ *med.* و *impf.* *a*, § 42 *d*.
 feed (to) طَعَمَ *IV*.
 fight (to) with one another قَاتَلَ *VI*.
 find (to) وَجَدَ *impf. i*, § 40 *a*.
 fire نَارٌ.
 first أَوَّلٌ.
 fit وَلِيَ *elat.* وَلِيَ.
- five خَمْسٌ §§ 91, 92 *a*.
 flare up (to) أَجَّ *I*.
 flight هَرَبٌ.
 flourishing (to make) عَمَّرَ *impf. u*.
 fly (to) from فَرَّ *impf. i*, with مِنْ.
 folk قَوْمٌ *pl.* § 88, 17; بَشَرٌ *coll.* (no. 120).
 follow (to) تَبَعَ *impf. a*.
 fool *part act of* جَهْلٌ.
 for *prep.* لِ § 95 *h*; *conj.* فَإِنَّ § 96 *d*.
 forbid (to) a thing to any one حَرَّمَ *impf. i*, with *two accus.*
 force (to) ضَرَّ *VIII.* § 25 *note*.
 forelock نَاصِيَةٌ *pl.* فَوَاعِلُ (24).
 forgive (to) غَفَرَ *impf. i*.
 forgiving غَفُورٌ.

forgiveness (to beg) غَفَرَ *X.*

form: ^سصُورَةٌ *pl.* فُعِلَ (4).

four ^سأَرْبَع §§ 91, 92 *a.*

fourth ^سرَابِع.

friend ^سصَاحِب (see p. 85*).

— of God = Abraham

^سخَلِيل.

— intimate ^سصَدِيق *pl.*

^سأَنْعِلَاء (18).

friendly ^سلَطِيف.

from *prep.* مِنْ.

fruit ^سثَمَرَةٌ.

future life *see* life.

gain (to make) ^سكَسَب *V.*

game ^سصَيْد.

garment ^سثَوْب *pl.* فِعَال (9).

gate ^سبَاب.

gate-keeper ^سبَوَّاب.

gather up (to) لَقَط *VIII.*

get to (to) نَهَى *VIII with*

إِلَى. — to get through

قَطَعَ *impf. a.*

gift ^سمَوْهَب *pl.* مَفَاعِل (23).

see also prophecy.

girl ^سجَارِيَّة.

give (to) عَطَا *IV with two*

acc. — to give way *inf.*

^سخَضُوع.

glad *see* tidings.

glance ^سبَصَر *pl.* أَنْعَال (17).

glorify (to) سَبَح *II.*

glorious ^سفَاخِر *elat.* § 63 *b.*

glory ^سشَرَف.

go round (to) دَارَ *med. و.*

— to go away دَهَبَ

impf. a. — to go on

مَشَى *impf. i.* — to go

out خَرَجَ *impf. u.* —

to let go رَسَلَ *IV.*

goblet ^سقَدَح.

god إِلَه; God اَللَّهُ, by God

وَاللَّهُ.

gold-piece دِينَار *pl.* § 90 *k.*

good *noun and adj.* خَيْر ^س.

- elat. id.* — to be good **بُغِضَ** hate
حَسَنَ *impf. u.* — to have (to), is expressed by
 make good **طَابَ** *med.* the subject in the dative
ي *IV.* (with **لِ**) followed by the
 government **رِئَاسَةً** or object in the nom. (as
رِئَاسَةً **لَهُ** he has money);
 governor **وَلِيٍّ** occasionally a form of
 grandee **مَلِكٍ** *pl.* § 88, 10. **كَانَ** to be stands before
 grant (to) **قَطَعَ** *IV* with the subject (as **كَانَ لَهُ**
 two accus. **مَالٌ** he had money). —
 grateful (to be) **شَكَرَ** *impf. u.* not to have either as in
 great **كَبِيرٌ**. — to be, be- the last example, but
 come great **كَبَرَ** *impf. u.* with **لَيْسَ** (§ 50) instead
 green (fresh) **زَطَبَ** of **كَانَ** (**لَيْسَ لَهُ مَالٌ**)
 greeting **سَلَامٌ** or **لَا** with following ob-
 guard (to) **صَانَ** *med.* **و** ject (§ 111) and dative
inf. **صَوَّنَ** of subject (**لَا مَالَ لَهُ**).
 guest **ضَيْفٌ** he **هُوَ** § 12 a. — he who
 hand **يَدٌ** § 90 r. **مَنْ** § 14 b.
 al-Hārīt **الْحَارِثُ** head **رَأْسٌ**
 Hārūn ar-Rāshid **هَارُونُ** hear (to) **سَمِعَ** *impf. a, inf.*
الرَّشِيدُ **سَمَاعٌ**
 heart **فُعُولٌ** *pl.* (10). **قَلْبٌ**

- heaven سَمَواتٌ *pl.* § 76 b.
 heir *part. act. of* وِث *pl.*
 (6). وَرَثَةٌ.
 hell-fire النَّارُ.
 help (to) نَصَرَ *impf. u.* —
 to demand help of عان
med. و. X with ب.
 Heraclius هِرَقْلُ.
 high عَلَى.
 holy see war.
 hope for (to) رَجَا *impf. u,*
with acc.
 horse دَابَّةٌ.
 horsemen coll. خَيْلٌ.
 house بَيْتٌ.
 how كَيْفَ.
 however وَلَٰكِنْ *with follg.*
verb.
 humble (to be) وَضَعَ *VI.*
 hungry *part. act. of* جَاعَ
med. و.
 hundred مِائَةٌ §§ 91, 92 c.
- hunt (to) صَادَ *med. ي.* —
 to go forth to hunt *id. V.*
 hunt, chase صَيْدٌ.
 hurry (to) عَجَلَ *II.*
 al-Husain الْحُسَيْنُ.
 hypocrisy (religious) رِيَاءٌ.
 hypocrite *part. act. of*
 نفق *III.*
 أَنَا *I.*
 ignorance جَهْلٌ.
 ignorant *part. act. of* جهل.
 idea مَفَاعِلُ *pl. مَعْنَى* (23).
 if إِنْ § 159; *in hypothe-*
tical clauses لَوْ *with the*
perf. — if anyone مَنْ
 § 159.
 illustrious جَلِيلٌ *elat.*
 § 63 b.
 imperfection *inf. of* فات
med. و. VI.
 in prep. فِي.
 incumbent on (to be) وَجَبَ
impf. i, with عَلَى § 40 a.

- indicate (to) دَلَّ *impf. u,* Islam اَلْإِسْلَامُ.
with عَلَى. Israel إِسْرَائِيلُ.
indication دَلِيلٌ.
indigestion بَشَمٌ.
inform (to) خَبَّرَ *IV.* Jalāl ad-dīn جَلَالُ الدِّينِ.
inhabit (to) سَكَنَ *impf. u.* Jerusalem اَلْقُدْسُ.
inhabitants أَهْلٌ.
inquire concerning (to) بَ.
في X with فتى. Jonah يُونُسُ.
intelligent *part. act. of* Joseph يُوسُفُ.
عقل.
interior سَرِيرَةٌ.
interrupted (to be) قَطَعَ
VII. joy سُرُورٌ.
justice عَدْلٌ.
keep from (to) مَنَعَ *impf.*
a, with acc. and مِنْ.
keep intact (to) بَقِيَ *IV.*
kill (to) قَتَلَ *impf. u.*
kindle (to) وَقَدَّ *impf. i.*
king مَلِكٌ.
kingdom مَمْلَكَةٌ.
kiss (to) قَبَلَ *II.*
knock (to) at the door of

- عَلَى *impf. u, with* دَقَّ *of pers. and acc. of door.* leave, leave off (to) تَرَكَ *impf. u.*
 know (to) عَلِمَ *impf. a;* let (to) وَدَعَ *impf. a § 40 a.*
 عَرَفَ *imp. i (no. 132),* liar (to declare anyone to be a) كَذَبَ *II.*
 دَرَى *impf. i (no. 73).* liberal سَخِيٌّ.
 knowing *part. act. of علم;* lie, tell a lie (to) كَذَبَ
elat. § 63 b. *impf. i; inf. كَذَبُ.*
 Koran الْقُرْآنُ. life (the future, next world)
 lack عَدَمٌ. *الْآخِرَةُ.*
 lamp سِرَاجٌ. life-time حَيَاةٌ.
 laugh (to) ضَحِكَ *impf. a. —* light (to) سَرَجَ *IV. — to*
to laugh at id. with مِنْ give light to ضَاءَ *med.*
— to make laugh id. *و IV, with ل.*
IV with بِ of means. like (like as) *prep. كَ; conj.*
 law-code شَرِيعَةٌ. كَمَا أَنْ, كَمَا *(with vb.sent.),*
 lawful (to be) حَلَّ *impf. i.* *(nom. sent.).*
 lead (to) قَادَ *med. و.* likeness مَثَلٌ.
 leader *see prayer.* little قَلِيلٌ.
 learn (to) عَلِمَ *V.* live (to) عَاشَ *med. ي.*
 learned عَلِيمٌ *pl. فُعَلَاءُ* living حَيٌّ.
 (20). long طَوِيلٌ.
 learning عِلْمٌ.

- long for (to) شَانِ *med.* و.
VIII, with عَلَى.
- look at (to) نَظَرَ *impf. u.*
with إِلَى.—to look down
طَرَق *IV.*—to look into
طَلَعَ *VIII, with* فِي § 25,
note.
- lord رَبٌّ.
- love, fall in love with (to)
حَبَّ *IV, with acc.*
- love حُبٌّ.
- loving *inf.* حَبَبَةٌ.
- lower (to) غَضَّ *impf. u.*
- lust رَغْبَةٌ.—lusts شَهَوَاتٌ.
- make, make to be (to) جَعَلَ
impf. a, (with two accus.).
—to make (poetry) قَالَ
med. و.
- malady سَقَامٌ.
- al-Ma'mūn الْمَأْمُونُ.
- man رَجُلٌ *pl.* (9); مَرءٍ
antith. to woman (nos.
2, 43, 102), § 90 e.
- manifest *part. act.* بَانَ
med. ي *IV.*
- mankind *coll.* النَّاسُ.
- manner وَضْعٌ.
- marry (to) زَاكَ *med.* و *V.*
- Mary مَرْيَمُ.
- meat لَحْمٌ.
- Mecca مَكَّةُ.
- medicine طِبٌّ.
- meet (to) لَقِيَ *impf. a.*
- mention (to) ذَكَرَ *impf. u.*
- mien مَنَظَرٌ.
- mighty عَظِيمٌ *elat.* § 63 b.
- mill طَاحُونَةٌ.
- mindful of (to be) ذَكَرَ
impf. u, with acc.
- miracle مُعْجَزَةٌ.
- misfortune مُصِيبَةٌ *pl.*
- (25). فَعَائِلُ

modesty حَيَاءٌ.

moment (this) السَّاعَةَ.

money مَالٌ. — piece of

money دِرْهَمٌ *pl.* فَعَالِلٌ

(23).

month شَهْرٌ.

morning (early) بُكْرَةٌ.

morrow, to-morrow غَدٌ.

Moses مُوسَى.

mosque مَسْجِدٌ.

most *elat.* of much.

mountain جَبَلٌ.

much كَثِيرٌ *elat.* § 63 b. —

to be much, abundant

كَثُرَ *impf. u.* — to make
much كَثُرَ *IV.*

al-Mugīra الْمُغِيرَةُ.

Muḥammed مُحَمَّدٌ.

music سَمَاعٌ.

Muslim (to become a) سَلِمَ

IV. — Muslim *id. part.*

act.

Muzāḥim مُزَاهِمٌ.

naked عُرْيَانٌ *fem.* عُرْيَانَةٌ.

name اسْمٌ.

narrow ضَيِّقٌ (= ضَيِّقٌ)

elat. أَضْيَقٌ.

nature طَبْعٌ *pl.* § 88, 9.

near (to place) قَرَبٌ *II.*

needle اِبْرَةٌ.

neighbour جَارٌ.

niggardly بَخِيلٌ. — to de-

clare anyone to be n.

بَخِلَ *II.*

niggardliness بُخْلٌ.

night لَيْلٌ.

noble كَرِيمٌ. — nobles *coll.*

مَلَأَ.

not see § 150.

now *conj.* فَ.

nutriment نُفُوتٌ.

O! يَا § 85; *also* أَيُّهَا.

obedient to (to be) قَنَتَ

impf. u. with لِ.

observe (to) *عبر* VIII.

occasion (as a consequence) (to) *عقب* IV,
with two accus.

Omar *عُمَرُ*.

on account of *prep.* *لِ*.

one as pronoun or adj.

وَاحِدٌ fem. *وَاحِدَةٌ*; with
pron. suffix *أَحَدٌ*.

only *أَيْ*.

onslaught *بَاسٌ*.

open (to) *فَتَحَ* *impf. a*;
inf. *فَتَحَ*.

opinion (to be of) *رَأَى*
impf. a, § 49 b.

or *أَوْ*.

other *آخَرُ*.

overtake (to) *دَرَكَ* IV.

owner *صَاحِبٌ* *pl.* *أَفْعَالٌ*
(17).

page boy *غُلَامٌ*.

Paradise *الْجَنَّةُ*.

pardon (to) *عَفَا* *impf. u*,
with *عَلَى*.

part (= some) *بَعْضٌ*
(§ 133).

pass on (to let) *جَازَ* *med.*
و IV.

pearls *coll.* *لُؤْلُؤٌ*.

pebble *حَصَاةٌ*.

people *أَهْلٌ*.

perhaps *لَعَلَّ* § 147 a.

perish (to) *هَلَكَ* *impf. i*;
— to cause to p. id. IV.

person (man) *إِنْسَانٌ*.

Pharao *فِرْعَوْنٌ*.

physician *طَبِيبٌ*.

pick up (to) *لَقَطَ* *impf. u*.

piece, *see* § 73 c.

piety *دِيَانَةٌ*.

place (occasion) *مَوْطِنٌ* *pl.*
مَفَاعِدُ (23).

place (to) *وَضَعَ* *impf. a*.
§ 40 a.

- plants *coll.* نَبَاتٌ (masc.).
 please (to) عَجِبَ IV. —
 to be well pleased with
 عَنْ رَضِيَ *impf. a. with*.
 pleasure لَذَّةٌ pl. § 76.
 pliancy لِينٌ.
 poem, poetry شِعْرٌ pl. أَفْعَالٌ
 (17).
 poet شَاعِرٌ.
 poison سُمٌّ.
 polite scholar ظَرِيفٌ pl.
 (20) فُعَلَاءٌ.
 poor فَقِيرٌ pl. (20) فُعَلَاءٌ.
 possessor ذَاتُ, fem. ذُو
 § 90 l.
 poverty فَقْرٌ.
 power قُوَّةٌ.
 praise (to) حَمَدَ *impf. a.*
 praise (God) ذَكَرَ.
 pray (to) صَلَا II.
 prayer صَلَاةٌ (= صَلَوةٌ
 § 43 note) pl. صَلَوَاتٌ
 (§ 83). direction of
 prayer قِبْلَةٌ.—leader of
 prayer إِمَامٌ.
 preach to (to) خَطَبَ *impf.*
u, with acc.
 precede (to) قَدَمَ V.
 prepare (to) صَلَحَ IV.
 presence حَضَرَةٌ.
 present (gift) صِلَةٌ (*inf. of*
 وصل).
 preserve (to) حَفِظَ *impf. a.*
 pride كِبَرٌ.
 prince أَمِيرٌ pl. (20) فُعَلَاءٌ.
 prison سِجْنٌ.
 promise وَعْدٌ.
 prophecy (gift of) نُبُوَّةٌ. —
 to pretend to prophecy
 نَبَأَ V.
 prophet نَبِيٌّ pl. (20) أَنْعِلَاءٌ.
 (18).
 prostrate oneself (to) سَجَدَ
impf. u.

- protect (to) حَرَسَ *impf. u, i.*
- provide for (to) رَزَقَ *impf. u, with two accus.*
- punishment عُقُوبَةٌ.
- purify (to) طَهَرَ *II. — to oneself id V.*
- purse صُرَّةٌ.
- pursue (to) تَبَعَ *VIII.*
- put (to) جَعَلَ *impf. a. — to put off till آخر II. with ل.*
- qualify (to) *inf. وَصَفَ.*
- raise, raise up (to) رَفَعَ *impf. a; inf. رَفَعَ.*
- Ramadhān رَمَضَانُ.
- ar-Rashid الرَّشِيدُ.
- reach (to) دَرَكَ *IV.*
- read (to) قَرَأَ *impf. a.*
- recede from (to) بَعَدَ *impf. a, with مِّن.*
- recite (to) قَرَأَ *impf. a.*
- reed-pen قَلَمٌ.
- reflection *inf. of فَكَرَ V.*
- refuse (to) أَبَى *impf. a. — to r. to do, id. with أَنْ and subj.*
- regard, with r. to فِي.
- regret نَدِمَ.
- relate (to) حَكَى *impf. i.*
- related to قَرِيبٌ *with مِّن.*
- reliance *inf. VIII, see rely.*
- religion دِينٌ.
- rely on (to) وَكَلَ *VIII, with عَلَى § 40 d.*
- repel (to) رَدَّ *impf. u.*
- repent (to) تَابَ *med. و.*
- repentance نَدَامَةٌ.
- report خَبَرَ.
- reproach (to) لَامَ *med. و.*
- restore (to) رَاحَ *med. و IV.*
- restrain from (to) كَفَّ *impf. u, with acc. and عَنْ. — to r. one's self from id. with عَنْ.*

- resurrection رَيْيَامَةٌ
 return to (to) رَجَعَ *impf. i.*
 with إِلَى.
 right (due) حَقٌّ.
 right, right hand يَمِينٌ.
 rise in value (to) غَلَا *impf. u.*
 roof سَقْفٌ.
 routed (to be) هَزَمَ *VII.*
 rule (to) سَاسَ *med. u.*
 run races (to) سَبَقَ *VIII.*
 saddle (of an ass) بَرْدَعَةٌ.
 — saddle-girth حِزَامٌ.
 safe (to be) سَلِمَ *impf. a.*
 as-Saffāh السَّفَّاحُ.
 salt مِلْحٌ.
 save (to) سَلِمَ *II.*
 say (to) قَالَ *med. u.* — to
 say of anyone, *id.* *with*
 عَنْ. — to s. to anyone,
 id. *with* لِ.
 scatter (to) نَشَرَ *impf. u. i.*
- sea بَحْرٌ.
 second ثَانٍ.
 secret سِرٌّ *pl.* أَفْعَالٌ (17).
 security ضَمَانٌ.
 see (to) رَأَى *impf. a.*, § 49 *b.*
 seedy *part. pass. of* خَمِرٌ.
 seek (to) طَلَبَ *impf. u.* —
 to seek for one's self, *id.* *V.*
 seemly (to be) بَغَى *VII.*
 seize (to) أَخَذَ *impf. u.*
 self نَفْسٌ § 12 *e.*
 send (to) رَسَلَ *IV.*: for
 خَلَفَ; *with* بِ.
 serpent ثُعْبَانٌ.
 servant (i. e. of God) عَبْدٌ
 pl. فِعَالٌ (9).
 serve wine to (to) سَقَى
 impf. i., *with two acc.*
 set about (to) صَارَ *med. u.*
 with impf. § 99 note *a.*
 seventy سَبْعُونَ.
 shadow ظِلٌّ.

- shift (to) ^سصَرَف *impf. i.*
 ship ^سسَفِينَة.
 shirt ^سقَمِيص.
 shoulder ^سكَتِف.
 sign ^سآيَة *pl.* § 76.
 silent (to be) *inf.* ^سصَمِت.
 sin ^سخَطِيئَة.
 singing (art of) ^سغِنَاء.
 sit with (to) ^سجَلَس *III*,
with acc.
 size ^سقَامَة.
 slave ^سمَمْلُوك *pl.* ^سمَفَاعِيْلُ
 (27). — slave-girl ^سجَارِيَة
pl. ^سفَوَاعِلُ (24).
 sleep, go to sleep (to) ^سنَام
med. و, impf. a; part. act.
pl. § 88, 9.
 small ^سصَغِير. — to become
s. ^سصَغِر *impf. a.*
 smoke ^سدُخَان.
 snow ^سثَلْج.
 so *conj.* ^سف.
 sober *part. act. of* ^سصَحَا.
 Socrates ^سسُقْرَاطُ.
 solicitude ^سهَمَة.
 son ^سابْن § 90 *b* (*pluralis*
sanus with names of
tribes).
 song ^ساَغْنِيَة *pl.* ^ساَغَانِ (أَفَاعِلُ).
 sorrow ^سحُزْن.
 spare (to) ^سحَى *X*, § 49 *c.*
 speech ^سقَوْل.
 spend (to) (*of time*) *inf.*
^سقَطَعَ.
 spirit ^سرُوح.
 staff ^سعَصَا.
 stand (to) ^سقَام *med. و; part.*
act. pl. § 88, 9. — to
 stand still ^سوَقَف *impf. i.*
 star ^سنَجْم.
 start off (to) ^سوَجِه *V. w.* ^سإِلَى.
 stay (to) ^سقَام *med. و IV.*
 steal (to) ^سسَرَق *impf. i.*
 stratagem ^سحِيلَة.

stream سَيْدٌ.

strength حَوْلٌ.

Šu'ba شُعْبَةٌ.

submissive (to be) ذَلَّ *V.*

subsistence رِزْقٌ.

sufficiency كِفَايَةٌ.

supplication دُعَاءٌ.

surely لَ (after إِنَّ).

tail ذَنْبٌ.

take (to) أَخَذَ *impf. u.* —(of a city) فَتَحَ *impf. a.*to t. away ذَهَبَ *impf. a.*

with بِ. — to t. hold of

أَخَذَ *impf. u.*, with بِ.talk to (to) كَلَّمَ *II*, with*acc.* — to t. to one an-other, *id. V.*

talk كَلَامٌ.

tattle لَفْظٌ.

teach (to) عَلَّمَ *II*, with two
*accus.*ten عَشْرٌ §§ 91, 92 *a.*than مِنْ § 63 *b.*that *pron.* ذَلِكَ § 13 *c.*that (in order that) لِ *with*
subj. § 100.that *conj.* أَنْ (*before a*
verb) § 148 *b.*; أَنْ (*before*
a noun) § 147 *a.*

that which مِمَّا.

then فَ.

thereupon ثُمَّ.

thief لِصٌّ *pl.* فُعُولٌ (10).thing أَفْعَالٌ *pl.* شَيْءٌ (17)
but without the nuna-
tion أَشْيَاءٌ.think (to) ظَنَّ *impf. u.*, with
two accus.; *inf.* ظَنْ.third ثَالِثٌ § 93 *a.*thirty ثَلَاثُونَ §§ 91, 92 *b.*this هَذَا § 13 *b.*

Thora (the) التَّوْرَةُ.

- those who مَنْ § 14 b.
 thou أَنْتَ.
 thought فِكْرٌ.
 three ثَلَاثٌ §§ 91, 92 a.
 through (by means of) prep. بِ.
 throw away (to) رَمَى *impf.*
i. — to throw down لَقَى
 II.
 tidings, to give glad tidings to anyone of a thing بَشْرٌ II, with acc. of pers. and بِ.
 time زَمَانٌ. — (proper) time وَقْتُ.
 tipsy نَشْوَانٌ.
 title-page عُنْوَانٌ.
 to (direction) prep. إِلَى;
 (sign of the dative) لِ.
 tongue لِسَانٌ pl. أَلْسِنَةٌ (16).
 towards prep. إِلَى.
 transgression ذَنْبٌ pl. فُجُورٌ (10).
 transitory *part. act. of* مُنْفِي.
 travel (to) سَارَ *med.* ي.
 treasure خَزِينَةٌ.
 tree شَجَرَةٌ.
 tribe قَبِيلَةٌ pl. نَعَائِلٌ (25).
 trick حِيلَةٌ.
 trust أَمَانَةٌ.
 truth صِدْقٌ.
 turn (to) مَالَ *med.* ي. —
 to turn from عَرَضَ II,
 with عَنْ. — to t. away
 (act.) رَدَّ *impf. u.* — to
 t. away from (*neut.*) وَلَى
 II, with مِنْ.
 twinkling لَحْظَةٌ.
 'Ubaid عُبَيْدٌ.
 ugly قَبِيحٌ *fem.* سَاءٌ.
 unbeliever *part. act. of* كَفَرٌ
 pl. § 76.
 uncover (to) كَشَفَ *impf. i.*
 understanding عَقْلٌ.

- unmindful of (to be) سَلَا. waste غَامِرٌ fem. غَمْرٌ. — to
V, with عَنْ. render waste خَرَب II.
 until conj. حَتَّى generally water مَاءٌ § 90 q.
with subj. (cf. § 152 c). well جُبٌّ.
 upon prep. فَوْق. well-pleased *see* please.
 used to كَانَ med. و *with* West مَغْرِبٌ.
follg. impf. § 99 c; *subj.* whale حُوتٌ.
gen. betw. كَانَ and *impf.* what rel. interr. مَا.
 value قِيَمَةٌ. when rel. interr. مَتَى; conj.
 vehemence جِدَّةٌ. إِذَا § 158.
 vehement عَاصِفٌ. where? أَيَّنَ — from
 verily إِنَّ §§ 147, 96 d. where, whence مِنْ أَيَّنَ.
 viand مَطْعَمٌ pl. مَفَاعِلَةٌ (28). which relat. الَّذِي.
 violent شَدِيدٌ. whichever أَيٌّ § 14 c.
 wade through (to) خَاض whilst (a) سَاعَةً.
med. و, *with acc.* whilst cf. § 157.
 want (to) رَاد med. و IV. who rel. الَّذِي; interr. مَنْ.
 want حَاجَةٌ. whoever, whoso مَنْ §§ 14 b,
 war (holy) inf. فِعَالٌ of 159.
 جهد III. whole جَمِيعٌ.
 Waraka وَرَقَةٌ. why? لِمَ; why then? لِمَاذَا.
 wash (to) غَسَلَ *impf. i.*

wick ذُبَالَةٌ.

wickedness شَرٌّ.

will (to) شَاءَ *med.* ي.

wind رِيحٌ *fem.* § 72.

wine خَمْرٌ.

wisdom حِكْمَةٌ.

wise حَكِيمٌ *pl.* نُعَلَاءٌ (20).

wish (to) رَادَ *med.* و. *IV.*

with مَعَ (in company w.);
بِ (in union w., by
means of).

without بَغَيْرِ (*with gen.*).

woe to! وَيْلٌ لِّ!

wolf ذَنْبٌ.

woman امْرَأَةٌ, امْرَأَةٌ. —
plur. نِسَاءٌ § 90 *f.*

wood عُودٌ. — piece of
wood خَشَبَةٌ.

word كَلِمَةٌ.

work عَمَلٌ *pl.* أَفْعَالٌ (17).

world (the, this) الدُّنْيَا. § 74 *a*, § 2

worst شَرٌّ § 63 note.

write to (to) كَتَبَ *impf.* u,
with إِلَى.

wrong (to, to do) ظَلَمَ
impf. i; *inf.* ظَلُمٌ.

Yazīd يَزِيدٌ.

ye أَنْتُمْ.

year سَنَةٌ *pl.* § 90 *m.*

yes نَعَمْ.

young صَغِيرٌ *elat.* § 63 *b.*

pl. أَفَاعِلُ (23).

young man فَتًى *pl.* فُعَلَانٌ
(21).

youth غُلَامٌ.

Zaid زَيْدٌ.

GLOSSARY B.

أ ^٤ *part. interr.* often before the first half of an alternative question.

أَب ^٤ *st. c.* أَبُو ^٤ (§ 90 a) father.

أَبَدَ ^٤ *impf. i* to stay, remain.

أَبَدًا ^٤ *adv.* always, for ever; with neg. never.

أَبَى ^٤ *impf. i* to run away.

أَبْنَى ^٤ *v.* بَنَى.

أَتَى ^٤ *impf. i; c. acc.* come, come to. *c. acc. p. et* بَرَّ ^٤ *r.* to bring, to give somethg. to some one.

أَثَرَ ^٤ *impf. u* to make an impression.

أَثَرًا ^٤ *pl.* أَثَارًا ^٤ trace, sign, mark.

أَجَرَ ^٤ wages, hire, reward.

أَحَدٌ ^٤ *fem.* أَحَدَى ^٤ one, some one.

أَخٌ ^٤ (§ 90 c) *pl.* إِخْوَةٌ ^٤ brother, neighbour.

أَخَذَ ^٤ *impf. u* to take, to sieze, catch hold of.

VIII to make; w. 2 Acc. to adopt, regard (as).

أَخَّرَ ^٤ II to put off, postpone.

آخِرُ ^٤ the last, second, end.

الْآخِرَةُ ^٤ the next world.

أُخْرَى ^٤ *fem.* آخَرُ ^٤ other.

أَدَبٌ ^٤ V to conduct one's self with propriety.

أَدَبٌ ^٤ good breeding, politeness, education, polite reproof.

إِدَاوَةٌ vessel for holding water, made of skins.

أَدَى *II* to pay (tribute).

إِذَا lo! see! when lo!

إِذَا *conj.* when, if; *adv.* lo! see!

أَذِنَ *impf. a; c. I pers. et rei* to allow, permit.

X to ask permission.

أَذَنٌ *pl.* آذَانٌ ear.

أَذِنَ *inf. I* permission.

أَذَى *IV* to injure, molest.

الْأَرْدُنُّ Jordan, the Jordan district.

أَرِسْطَاطَالِيْسُ Aristotle.

أَرْضٌ *fem.* earth, land, country, ground.

أَسَاسٌ foundation.

أَسَرَ *impf. i* to tie, bind, take captive.

أَسِيرٌ a captive.

الْأَلَسْكَندَرُ (the Arabs have treated the first two letters of the name as the article) Alexander.

الْأَلَسْكَندَرِيَّةُ Alexandria.

سَمَا *v.* اسْمٌ.

أَصْلٌ the root, the chief thing.

أَفَاقٌ *pl.* آفَاقٌ region, district.

أَفَالِيْمٌ *pl.* إِفَالِيْمٌ (χλῖμα) region, country.

أَكَدَ *V* to gather strength, become confirmed.

أَكَلَ *impf. u* to eat; to get to eat.

III to eat with some one.

أَكَلَ *inf. I* eating.

مَأْكُولٌ various kinds of food.

أَن لَّا *part.* composed of أَن and لَّا.

إِلَّا (= لَا إِنْ) except
(§ 151).

الَّذِي *fem.* (§ 14 a) he
that; whoso, who, which.

أَيْفَ *impf. a* to become
familiar with . . .

VIII to be on intimate
terms, familiarly ac-
quainted (with).

أَلْفُ *pl.* or أَلَفُ
thousand.

أَلُوفٌ intimate, familiar.

أَلِمَ *impf. a* to feel, suffer
pain.

أَلِيمٌ painful.

إِلَهٌ *pl.* أَلِهَةٌ a god.

إِلَهُ ex آل et إِلَه (the
true) God, Allah. عَبْدُ

إِلَهِ name of a man.

اللَّهُمَّ O God!

إِلَى *prep.* (§ 96 b) towards,
in the direction of, to,
till, as far as.

أَمْ *part. interr.* or.

أَمْ *impf. u*, to direct one's
course by something.

أُمَّهَاتُ *pl.* mother.

أُمَّة the people of a
(particular) religion,
nation, people.

أَمَرَ *impf. u, c. acc. p. et*
r. to order, command.

أَمْرٌ command, power;
affair, matter. صَاحِبُ

الأمر commander.

أَمِيرٌ commander,
prince.

أَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ the prince
of the (true) believers,
commander of the faith-
ful = the Caliph.

أَمِنَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to be
safe from . . .

IV to believe.

أَمَةٌ *pl.* أُمَّاءُ female slave.

أُمَيَّةُ Umayya (man's name).

أَنْ (§ 100, 148*b*) that.

أَنْ (§§ 147, 148*a*) that.

إِنْ (§§ 159, 160) if.

إِنْ (§ 147) lo! truly, verily
(often untranslatable).

أَنَا *pron.* (§ 12) I.

أَنْتَ *pron.*; *fem.* أَنْتِ, thou.

أَنْسَ *impf. a* to have fami-
liar intercourse with.

نَاسٌ *coll.* إِنْسَانٌ man.

أَنْفٌ *nose.*

أَنْمَا *part.* (composed of
أَنْ and مَا) only (refers
in this sense usually to
last word of sentence),
but.

أَنْفَى *part.* whence? how?

أَهْبَ *V c. لِي* *rei* to equip
one's self, to be prepar-
ed (for any thing).

أَهْلٌ *coll.* one's kinsfolk,
family, people (cf. § 133),
inhabitants.

أَوَّلُ *fem.* أَوَّلِي first (*determ.*
also beginning.)

أَوَّلُو *gen. and acc.* أَوَّلِي *v.* ذُو.

أَيْنَ *part.* where? whither?

إِلَى أَيْنَ whither? مِنْ

أَيْنَ (from) whence?
where?

آيَةٌ *sign, revelation.*

أَيَّهَا (§ 85) particle of ex-
clamation.

بِ *präp.* in, on, at; with, by
means of; for (of price),
by (in oaths). إِذَا هُوَ بِ
lo! there was . . .

بَابِلُ Babylon, Babylonia.

بَوَّسَ *impf. u* to be brave,
courageous.

بَاسٌ courage, strength,
power.

بَاحِرٌ sea, great river.

بَدَأَ *impf. a* to begin.

بدل *II c acc.* to exchange,
alter, change.

X c. acc. et ب to take
something in exchange
for (something else).

بَرَح *impf. a* to go away,
cease.

بَشَر *II. c acc. pers. et ب*
r. to tell some one
something as a piece of
good news.

بَصُر or بَصَرَ to glance,
perceive; to understand
something thoroughly.

بَصَر *pl. أَبْصَارٌ* glance,
intelligence.

بَطُو to come too late.

IV to delay.

X to find that sthg.
comes too late.

بَطْن belly; bottom (of a
valley).

بَطْنَةٌ repletion.

بَوَاطِن *pl.* بَوَاطِنُ the
lowest part; the heart
or secret thoughts of
a person.

بَعَث *impf. a* to arouse,
awaken; to send.

بَعَدَ *impf. u* or بَعِدَ *impf.*

a to be distant, far off.

VI to be far distant
from each other.

بَعْدَ *prep.* after, after
the departure, death
of . . . مِنْ بَعْدِ after
the death of.

بَعْضُ one (§ 133), part,
portion; some (of).

بَغَضَ *impf. a* to hate.

بُغْضُ hatred.

بِغْضَةٍ *id.*, state of
being hated.

بَغْضَاءُ hatred.

بَغَى *impf. i* to seek, strive.

III to be necessary,
meet, behoove.

هُقْرَاطُ Hippocrates.

بَقِيَ *impf. a* to remain, re-
main over, continue in
life.

بَقَاءٌ *inf.*

أَبُو بَكْرٍ Abū Bekr, name
of the first Caliph.

بَكَى *impf. i* to weep.

بَلَدٌ *pl.* بِلَادٌ country, vil-
lage(plur.coll.country).

بَلَغَ *impf. u, c. acc.* to reach,
attain to; to come to
one's ears.

بِلْقِيسُ Bilkīs, queen of
Sheba.

بَلَا *impf. u* to try, afflict.

بَلَى *part.* certainly; nay,
on the contrary.

بِمَا (*ex* بِمَا) wherewith? by
what means?

بَنَى *impf. i* to build.

بِنَاءٌ *inf.*

أَبْنٌ (§ 90 b, § 6 f. 2;

126) *pl.* أَبْنَاءٌ son.

بِنْتُ ابْنَةٍ (§ 90 i) daughter.

بَهَائِمٌ *pl.* بَهِيمَةٌ animal, a
brute beast.

أَبْوَابٌ *pl.* بَابٌ gate, door.

بُيُوتٌ, أَبْيَاتٌ *pl.* بَيْتٌ house,
family. أَلْمَالُ

treasury.

بَاعَ *impf. i* to sell, buy.

بَيْعٌ *inf.* I selling, sale.

بَانَ *med.* بَانَ *IV* to be evi-
dent.

بَيْنَ (§ 114) *prep.*

between. ... بَيْنَ يَدَيَّ
prop. bet. the hands of=
before, in presence of.

بَيْنَا *conj.* with a nom.
sentence: while, whilst.

بَيِّنَةٌ evidence, proof.

تَابُوتٌ *masc.* coffin.

تَبَّ *X* to be well arranged,
be in good order.

تَبِعَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to follow.

IV c. 2 acc. to make
sthg. follow, to attach
sthg. to, some one.

VIII to follow, en-
deavour to aquire.

تَحْتَ *prep.* under. مِنْ

تَحْتِ *id.*

تُرَابٌ *earth, morsel of*
earth.

تَرَكَ *impf. u* to aban-
don, leave, give up,
omit.

تَقْوَى (cf. وَقَى) *fem.* (or.

تَقْوَى *msc.*) piety.

تِلْكَ *fem.* (§ 13 c) that
(woman).

تَلْمِيذٌ *pl.* تَلَامِيذَةٌ *pupil,*
disciple.

تَمَّ *impf. i* to be finished.

تَمَامٌ *perfect.*

تَمْرَةٌ *nom. unit.* a date.

التَّوْرَةُ (§ 2 d note.) the
Torah (five books of
Moses).

تَأَرَّ *X* to ask help in se-
curing (blood) revenge.

تَثَبَّتَ *impf. u* to be or stand
firm, to be fixed.

IV to fix, establish.

أَثْبَتَ *Elat.* ثَابِتٌ con-
stant, fixed, firm.

تَكَلَّ *impf. a,* to lose a child
(*acc.*) by death (said of
a mother).

ثَلَاثَةٌ *fem.* ثَلَاثٌ three.

ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ thirteen.

ثُمَّ *adv.* thereupon, then.

ثَنَى *impf. i* to bend.

X to make an ex-
ception of.

ثَوْب garment.

جَاش strength of character.

جَدِيد new.

جَدَى kid.

جَدَب VIII to draw to oneself.

جَرَّ *impf. u* to drag, pull.

جَرَى *impf. i* to run, flow.

جَارِيَةٌ *pl. جَوَارٍ* (§ 89)
female slave, young girl.

جَزِيرَةٌ island; أَلْجَزِيرَةُ Mesopotamia.

جَزَى *impf. i* to reward, requite.

III to pray God to requite some one for sthg.

جَسَد the body.

جَعَلَ to place; make, prepare; *c. 2 acc.* to make to be sthg.; to begin (§ 99 note *a*).

جَفَّ *impf. i* to become dry.

جَفَا *impf. u* to be rude.

جَفَاءَ *inf.* tyranny.

جَلَّ *impf. i* to be great, powerful, exalted.

جَلِيلٌ great, illustrious, sound (in judgment).

جَلَالَةٌ might, majesty.

جَلَسَ *impf. i* to sit down; *c. l* to give an audience.

III *c. acc.* to sit down by some one, sit with.

جُلُوسٌ *inf.* sitting.

جُلَسَاءُ *pl. جَلِيسٌ*
companion one sits with.

جَمْرَةٌ a live coal.

جَمَعَ *impf. a* to bring together, gather, collect.

with 2 بَيْنَ to bring about a meeting of two parties, to have them both come into one's presence.

- IV أَجْمَعَ رَأْيَهُ عَلَى (also without رَأْيَهُ and with أَنْ) to decide upon, resolve to do sthg.
 VIII to come together, to assemble.
 جَمِيعٌ the whole, all (جَمِيعًا as acc. of condition: all together).
 جَمَاعَةٌ a number, party (of people).
 جَمِيلٌ to be beautiful.
 جَمِيلٌ beautiful, handsome, elegant, kind.
 جَنَّ *impf. u* to cover over, conceal.
 جَنَّاتٌ *pl.* جَنَّاتٌ garden of trees, Paradise.
 جَنَانٌ interior, heart, soul, character.
 جِنٌّ *coll.* demons, Jinn.
- جِنِّي belonging to the demons, a demon.
 جَنَّبَ VIII to avoid.
 فِي جَنْبٍ side. جَنْبٍ in comparison with.
 جَنَائِزُ *pl.* جَنَازَةٌ corpse, funeral bier.
 جَهَدَ *impf. a* to take trouble about sthg., exert one's self.
 III to fight, do battle, esp. w. unbelievers i. e. non-Moslems.
 جَهَلَ *impf. a* to be ignorant. جَهَالَةٌ *inf.*
 جُهْلٌ *pl.* جَاهِلٌ ignorant.
 جَاهِلِيَّةٌ the state of ignorance, i. e. (pre-islamic) heathenism.
 جَهَنَّمَ hell.
 جَابَ *med.* و IV c *acc.*

pers. et إِلَى *r.* to give or grant an answer, an audience to some one, listen to, promise, concede sthg. to one, comply with his request.

X to hear, in the sense of answer (a petition).

جَارٌ *med.* و. to be generous.

جَارٌ *med.* و. *c. acc.* to pass by.

III c. acc. to pass beyond, exceed, transgress.

جَاعٌ *med.* و. to be hungry.

جَوْعَةٌ (*nom. unit.* §

73 *c*) hunger.

جَاءَ *med.* ي. *c. acc.* to come.

c. ب. to bring.

جَيْءٌ *inf.*

جَيْشٌ *army.*

حَبَّ *IV* to love.

حُبٌ love.

حَبِيبٌ (*elat. c. أَدَبٌ*

pro dativ. pers.) *pl.*

أَحِبَّاءٌ dear to some one, beloved, friend.

حَبَّةٌ love, friendship.

حَبَشِيٌّ Abyssinian.

حَبَا *impf. u c. acc. pers. et*

بِ *rei* to present some one with sthg.

حَتَّى until; so that; for the purpose of; (*sometimes* = finally).

حَجَّ *impf. u* to make the pilgrimage to Mecca.

حَجَجٌ *pl. حَجَّةٌ* the pilgrimage to M.

حُجَجٌ *pl. حُجَّةٌ* good reason or excuse.

حَكَبَ *impf. a* to prevent, exclude.

حَكَابٌ curtain, veil.

حَاجِبٌ porter, gate-keeper, chamberlain.

حَدَثَ *impf. u* to be new.

II c. acc. pers. to inform, relate.

X to newly adopt, get sthg. new.

حَدِيثٌ a story, narrative (applied esp. to the traditions respecting Muhammed).

حَذَرَ *impf. a, c. acc. vel مِنْ* to be on one's guard against . . .

حَذَرَ *inf.*

حَذِقَ *impf. a* to be clever, skilled.

حَرَّرَ (*حَرَرْتُ*) *impf. a* to be free.

حَرَّارٌ *pl.* free, noble.

حَرَبَ *III* to make war upon, fight with some one.

VI to carry on war with each other.

حَرَدَ *impf. i* to strive eagerly after.

حَرْدٌ eagerness, zeal, anger.

حَرَضَ *II c. عَلَى r.* to incite (to), stir up (to).

حَرَقَ *IV* to burn, singe.

حَرَكَ *II* to move, to stir up, agitate.

حَرَّمَ *impf. u, c. عَلَى* to be forbidden to one, to be legally prohibited one.

II to pronounce unlawful, declare to be forbidden, to prohibit.

حَزَنَ to be troubled, sad.
IV to trouble, make sad.

حَسَبَ *impf. u* to reckon.

حِسَابٌ reckoning.

حَسَدَ *impf. u* to envy.

حَسُنَ *impf. u* to be beautiful, good.

IV to do good.

X to find to be good.

حُسْنٌ beauty, goodness.

أَحْسَنُ *elat.* حَسَنٌ beautiful, good.

حَشَمٌ *coll.* suite, servants, escort.

حَضَرَ *impf. u, c. acc. pers.* vel عَلَى to be present with or at.

IV to bring forward, esp. to bring before a sovereign or ruler.

VIII c. acc. to come upon one (said of death). Pass. to be near to death.

حَفَّ *impf. u* to surround.

حَفَرَ *impf. i* to dig.

VIII to dig for one's self.

حَفِظَ *impf. a* to take care of, to guard, to be attentive.

VIII c. ر. ب. to take care, give heed.

حَقَّ *impf. i* to be right.

حَقٌّ truth, certainty; right, claim.

حَقَرَ *impf. u* to be despised. *X* to despise.

حَقِيرٌ despised.

حَكَمَ *impf. u* to decide, give judgement.

حِكْمَةٌ wisdom.

حُكَمَاءُ *pl.* حَكِيمٌ wise, learned.

حُكَّامٌ *pl.* حَاكِمٌ governor, ruler, judge.

حَكَّى *impf. i* to relate.

حَلَّ *impf. u* to loosen, untie; *impf. i* to be allowed.

IV or *X* to pronounce sthg. allowed, declare lawful, to allow.

حَلَّى *V* to adorn one's self.

حَمَّ (1. pers. حَمَيْتُ) *impf. a.*
to be hot.

حُمَّى *fem.* fever.

حَمَامَةٌ pigeon.

حَمَدَ *impf. i* to praise.

مُحَمَّدٌ *Muhammed* (the
praised one).

حَمَقَ *impf. u* to be foolish.

أَحْمَقٌ foolish, stupid.

حَمَلَ *impf. i* to load, carry;

bring; transport. *c. عَلَى*

to attack; *c. acc. pers.*

et عَلَى r. to make s. o.

sit upon sthg.; to in-

cite to some action.

حَنِثَ to commit sin.

V to purify one's self
from sin.

حَنَطَ *II* to embalm.

أَلْأَحْنَفُ *al-Aḥnaf*, (a man's
name).

أَخْرَجَ *(§ 44)* *med.* *IV* *حَاجَ*
note b) *c. إِلَى* to compel.

VIII c. إِلَى to require,
be in need of.

حَاجَةٌ *c. ب.* need, want;

c. إِلَى request.

حَوْلَ *prep.* round, round
about.

حَالٌ state, condition,
situation.

حَوَى *impf. i*, to gather
together, take posses-
sion (of everything).

حَى *impf. § 49 c.* to live.

حَيٍّ tribe, clan.

حَيَوَةٌ life.

خَبِثَ *impf. u* to be bad,
wicked.

خَبِيثٌ bad, vile,
vicious, profligate.

خَبَرَ *II c. 2 acc.* to relate,
tell some one sthg.

VIII to test, try,
prove.

- خَبَرٌ *pl.* أَخْبَارٌ information, news, affair.
 خَبِيرٌ well informed, wise.
 خَبَزَ *impf. i* to make bread, to bake.
 خُبْزٌ a cake of bread, bread.
 خَتَمَ *impf. i* to seal up, put one's seal to.
 خَدِيجَةُ Ḥadīġa (Muḥammed's first wife).
 خَدَمَ *impf. u* to serve.
 خِدْمَةٌ *inf.*
 خَدَمٌ *coll.* (the staff of) servants.
 خَادِمٌ a servant.
 خَرَّ *impf. i* to prostrate one's self, to fall down.
 خَرَجَ *impf. u* to go out, come out, go out from, depart from.
 IV to bring forth or forward, to produce, to expel.
 X bring out, draw out.
 خَرَجَ tribute.
 خَرِسَ *impf. a* to be dumb.
 خَرَقَ *impf. i* to make a hole in, to pierce.
 VII to have a hole put through, be pierced.
 VIII to break through, flow through.
 خَزَنَ *impf. u* to store up.
 خَزَائِنٌ *pl.* خِزَانَةٌ treasure, treasure-house.
 خَشِيَ *impf. a, c. acc. r.* to fear sthg.
 خَصَّ *impf. u* to be some one's special property.
 خَاصٌّ, *coll.* خَاصَّةٌ an intimate friend; persons of distinction.
 خَضَبَ *impf. i* to dye (esp. the hair).

خَضِيبٌ dyed.

خَضِرَ IX to be or become green.

خَطِيءٌ *impf. a* to sin.

الْحَطَّابُ al-Haṭṭāb (a man's name).

خَفَّ *impf. i* to be light (opp. of heavy).

أَخَفَّ *el.* خَفِيفٌ light.

خَلَدَ *impf. u* to be everlasting, to remain.

خَلَسَ VIII to appropriate to oneself secretly.

خَلَصَ II *c. acc. pers. et* مِنْ to rescue, to free.

مَخْلَصٌ escape, way of escape.

خَلَطَ VIII *prop.* to become commingled; to come on (said of the darkness in which objects can no longer be distinguished).

خَلَفَ *impf. u* to be behind, to succeed.

II to leave behind.

خَلِيفَةٌ *pl.* خُلَفَاءُ Caliph.

خَلَقَ *impf. u* to create, form.

خَلَقَ 1) one's outward form; 2) *coll.* people.

خُلُقٌ *pl.* أَخْلَاقٌ one's (natural) disposition, character, mental and moral traits.

خَمَدَ *impf. u* to go out (of fire and light).

خَمِرَ to ferment.

خَمْرٌ *fem.* fermented drink, wine.

خَافَ *med.* و (§ 42 *d*; 44) *impf. a* to fear.

II to put in fear.

خَوْفٌ fear.

خَارَ *med.* يَ to be good.

*I*III to choose, select
for one's self.

خَيْرٌ (also as *elat.*) good
(adj. and noun), pro-
sperity.

خَالَ *med.* *II* to imagine
something.

دَارًا Darius.

دَبَّ *impf. i* to walk slowly.

دَابَّةٌ *pl.* دَوَابٌّ beast of
burden and for riding.

دَبَّرَ *IV* to turn one's back,
go away.

دَخَلَ *c. acc.* to enter, to
come; *c. عَلَى* to come to
see one, to consummate
marriage with (*coire*);
c. بَيْنَ to interfere.

IV to bring into, in-
troduce.

دُخُولٌ *inf. I.*

دَاخِلٌ entering, future,
next.

دُرٌّ *coll., nom. unit.* دُرَّةٌ,
pearl.

دَرَكَ *IV* to attain, reach,
comprehend.

دِرْهَمٌ *pl.* دَرَاهِمٌ a dirhem,
a silver coin.

دَرَى *impf. i* to know.

IV caus.

دَعَا *impf. u* to call, to call
upon, invoke, *c. ب* to
pray to God for some-
thing, to call to one's
aid, to name; *c. acc. et*

إِلَى to induce s. o. to do
sthg., invite, summon.

VI to call to one an-
other, *c. ب* to bring a
complaint against . . .

دَعْوَةٌ prayer.

دَفَعَ *impf. a* to push; hand
over, deliver up.

دَنَا *impf. u, c. مِنْ* to come
near.

- ^سدَنِي *elat.* اَدْنَى low,
 humble, trivial, near;
pl. اَدَانِ the nearest
 parts.
 دُنْيَا *fem.* world.
 دَاخ *med.* و II to subdue.
 دَار *med.* و c. ل to surround.
 دَار *pl.* دُور dwelling-
 place, house, abode,
 court.
 دَام *med.* و to remain, con-
 tinue, be durable.
 دُونَ *prep.* on this side of,
 below, beneath; other
 than, exclusively of, be-
 sides, before. مِنْ دُون id.
 دَوِيَ *impf. a* to be indis-
 posed.
 IV to treat medically.
 دَوَاء *med.* medicine.
 دَانَ *med.* ي to be in sub-
 jection.
- ^سدَيْن debt.
^سدِينَ *pl.* اَدْيَانِ re-
 ligion.
 دِينَار denar, a gold coin.
 ذَا *pron.* (§ 13 a) this.
 مَاذَا (§ 15) what (then)?
 ذئب *wolf.*
 ذَعَرَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to
 frighten.
 ذَكَرَ *impf. u, c. acc.* to think
 of, mention, name,
 speak of. Inf. ذَكَّرَ.
 ذَلَّ *impf. i* to be insignifi-
 cant, feeble.
 ذَلِيلٌ miserable,
 feeble.
 ذَلِكْ *fem.* ذَلِكَ *pron.* (§ 13 c)
 that.
 ذَهَبَ *impf. a* to go, go away.
 IV to cause to disap-
 pear.
 ذَهَبٌ gold.

رَبُّ the (man) of, possessor
of cf. §§ 907, 133.

رَاعَ *med.* رَاعَ to become
known, spread abroad.

IV to make public,
publish.

رَأْسٌ *pl.* رُؤُوسٌ head, the
chief thing.

رَئِيسٌ *pl.* رُؤَسَاءُ leader,
general.

رَأَى *impf.* يَرَى (§ 49 b)
to see, be of opinion,
think, believe, consider
advisable, *c. 2 acc.* to
regard or esteem a per-
son or thing as, hold
to be.

IV رَأَى *c. 2 acc.* to show.

رَأْيٌ insight, counsel,
advice.

رَبُّ lord, God.

رَبَطَ *impf. u* to tie, fasten.

رَبِطٌ *elat.* أَرَبَطُ se-
curely fastened, firm.

رَبَعَ *pl.* رِبَاعٌ house, *pl.* real
estate.

الرَّبِيعُ ar-Rabī', (a
man's name).

أَرْبَعَةٌ *fem.* أَرْبَعٌ four.

رَجَعَ *impf. i* to turn back,
return.

رُجِعَ *inf.*

أَرْجُلٌ *fem. pl.* رِجْلٌ foot,
leg.

رَجُلٌ *pl.* رِجَالٌ a man.

رَجَمَ *impf. u* to stone.

رَجِيمٌ stoned, accursed.

رَجَا *impf. u, c. acc.* to hope
for sthg.

رَحَبٌ to be wide, broad.

II c. ب to bid anyone
welcome (مَرْحَبًا).

رَجِمَ *impf. a, c. acc. pers.*
to have pity on, com-
passion for, some one.

II to take compassion
on each other.

رَحْمَةٌ loving kindness
(esp. of God), deed of
kindness.

رَحَى *fem.* mill.

رَخَوٌ *vel* رَخِيَ to be flaccid,
soft.

رَدَّ *impf.* *u* to bring back,
give back.

VIII to turn back.

رَدَّ *inf.* *I* giving back.

رَزَقَ *impf.* *u*, *c.* 2 *acc.* to
present, grant, furnish,
bless with, give food.

رَزَقٌ food (esp. as given
by Allah), sustenance.

مَرْزُوقٌ Marzūk, (man's
name).

رَسَلَ *IV* to send.

رَسُولٌ *pl.* رُسُلٌ mes-
senger, apostle (esp. of
God).

رَضَعَ *II* to set (of jewels),
inlay.

رَضِعَ *impf.* *a* to suck (at
the breast).

IV to give suck.

رَضِيَ *impf.* *a*, *c.* *acc.* to be
content with, acquiesce
in, take pleasure in.

رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ God be
gracious unto him!

IV to satisfy, render
content.

رَضَى *inf.* *I* pleasure,
delight (in sthg.).

رَعَدَ *VIII* to shake, tremble.

رَعَى *impf.* *a* to watch, tend.

رَاعٍ *pl.* رُعَاةٌ herdsman,
shepherd.

رَعِيَّةٌ *pl.* رَعَايَا subjects
(also *sing. coll.*).

مَرَاعٍ *pl.* مَرَاعٍ pasture-
ground.

رَغِبَ *impf. a* to have a strong craving for; *c.*

عَن to give up the craving for sthg., to shun, relinquish.

رَغِيفٌ *pl. أَرْغَفَةٌ* (flat) cake.

رَفَعَ *impf. a* to raise, lift up (the voice); *c. إِلَى* to bring sthg. before the judge. *bringing up*

رَفِيعٌ high, noble.

رَفَقَ *IV c. ب* to be kind, gentle with . . .

مَرَفَقٌ *pl. مَرَفِقٌ* elbow.

رَقَّ *impf. i* to be or become thin, abject, mean.

رَقٌّ bondage, slavery.

رَقَعَ *impf. a* to mend, patch.

رُقْعَةٌ patch.

رَكِبَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to mount on horse-, camel-back &c., to ride.

رَكُوبٌ *inf.* stepping into, aboard (a ship).

رَمَضَانُ name of a month.

رَمَى *impf. i, c. ب r.* to throw, pelt with.

رَهَبَ *impf. a, c. acc. rei* to be afraid of sthg.

رَاهِبٌ monk.

رَاحَ *IV med. و, c. acc. et* to rid . . . of.

رِيحٌ (for رَوْحٌ) *fem.,*

pl. رِيَّاحٌ wind.

رَائِحَةٌ smell, scent.

رَادَ *med. و IV c. acc.* to will, wish, intend, endeavour to.

رَامَ *med. و* to seek, desire, attack.

رَوَى *impf. i* to relate.

زَحَفَ *impf. a* to advance slowly.

زَرَعَ *impf. a* to sow.

زَرْعٌ ^s coll. seed, green
corn, green crop, differ-
ent sorts of grain.

زَعَزَعَ to shake violently.
II (reflexive).

زَعَمَ ^s impf. u to assert, re-
late.

زَفَّ ^s impf. u to conduct a
bride to her husband's
house.

زَكَ ^s ult. و to increase, to
be good, pure.

زَكِيٌّ ^s elat. أَزْكَى pure,
delicate, dainty.

زَلَزَلَ to shake (trans.). II
to shake (int.), tremble.

زَمَّ ^s impf. u to fasten securely.

زِمَامٌ ^s bridle (nose-rein).

زَمَانٌ ^s time, space of time.

زَهَا ^s impf. u to shoot up, to
flourish, prosper.

زَهْوٌ ^s inf.

زَاجٌ ^s med. و II c. 2 acc.
vel c. acc. et مِنْ vel لِ
to marry some one to,
join in wedlock; c. acc.
to take in marriage.

V c. acc. reflex.

زَارَ ^s med. و impf. u to visit.
زِيَارَةٌ ^s inf.

زَالَ ^s med. و impf. a to cease.
زَوَالٌ ^s inf. cessation. Noon
or afternoon.

زَوَى ^s impf. i to remove, clear
away.

زَوَايَا ^s pl. زَاوِيَةٌ corner.

زَادَ ^s med. ي impf. i, c. 2 acc.
to give more, to add to.

زَايِدٌ ^s inf.; increase,
addition.

زَا part. § 95 d; 99 a.

زَايَرَ ^s impf. a to be or remain
over.

- سَائِر remaining, the
 rest, all.
 سَأَلَ *impf. a, c. 2 acc.* to
 ask one for sthg. *c. acc.*
pers. et عَنْ to enquire
 for, ask respecting.
 سَائِل beggar.
 سَأَلَةٌ the asking, a
 question.
 سَبِيل *masc. or fem.* way,
 right way, road.
 سِتَّة *fem.* سِتَّة six.
 سَتَرَ *impf. u or i* to hide,
 shield (e. g. from the
 gossip of the people).
 سَجَدَ *impf. u, c. 1*, to
 prostrate one's self
 προσκυνεῖν.
 سَجُود *inf.*
 مَسْجِدٌ mosque.
 سَرَّ *IV c.* إِلَى *pers.* to tell
 s. o. sthg. as a secret.
 سِرٌّ *pl.* أَسْرَار secret.
- سَرْج *pl.* سُرُوج saddle.
 سَرَعَ *IV* to be in haste, *c.*
 فِي to make haste with...
 سَرِيع, *elat.* أَسْرَع,
 quick, swift, speedy.
 سُرَاقَةٌ Surāḳa, (a man's
 name).
 سَطَحَ *impf. a* to spread out.
 سَطْحٌ the flat roof of
 eastern houses.
 سَاعِدٌ *pl.* سَوَاعِدُ the fore-
 arm.
 سَعَى *impf. i, c.* فِي *vel* فِي
pers. to lodge informa-
 tion against, denounce.
 سَفَرٌ *pl.* أَسْفَار journey.
 سَفِينَةٌ ship.
 سَكَتَ *impf. u* to become
 or be silent.
 سَكَرَ *impf. a* to be or be-
 come drunk.

سَكَارَى *pl.* سَكَارُ
drunk.

سَكَنَ *impf. u* to dwell, inhabit, rest, be quiescent.

سُكُونُ rest, quiescence.

سَاكِنُ *pl.* سَكَانُ inhabitant.

سَلَسَلَ to put in chains.

سَلَطَ *impf. u* to be or become powerful.

II to make, install as ruler.

سُلْطَانُ *c.* عَلَى authority over, rule; ruler, sultan.

سَلِمَ *impf. a* to be whole, intact.

II to bestow health and prosperity; *c.* عَلَى to greet, salute.

IV c. لِلَّهِ to declare one's self resigned to to God; to become a Moslem.

سُلَّمُ ladder.

سَلَامُ immunity from ills, prosperity, welfare. عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ peace be with him! (parenthetically placed after the names of high religious personalities).

سَلَامَةٌ peace and prosperity.

إِسْلَامُ (*inf. IV*) Islām.

سَمَّ *impf. u* to put poison into anything, to poison.

سَمٌ poison.

سَمِعَ *impf. a* to hear.

سَمَكٌ *pl.* أَسْمَكَةٌ fish.

سَمَا *II c. 2 acc. vel c. acc*

et ب to call by name to give a name to.

إِسْمٌ (§ 56 a) name.

سَمَاءٌ heaven.

سَنَّ *impf. u* 1) to sharpen,
2) ordain, institute.

سِّن tooth, age.

سِنَّة *pl. سُنَن* regula-
tion, institution, tradi-
tion (of the Moslems).

سَنَد *IV* to support.

سَنَدَةٌ *pl. nom. سِنُون* (§ 76 b;
90 m) year.

سَهَرَ *impf. a* to keep awake.

سَهَر *inf.*

سَاءَ *med.* to be bad, wicked.

IV to spoil, corrupt,
to do ill.

سَاخَ *med.* و to sink into
the ground.

سَادَ *med.* و *c. acc.* to be-
come lord, ruler, over...

سَوْدَاءُ *fem. سَوْدَاءُ pl.*

سَوْدَانُ, سَوْدُ black.

سَيِّد *pl. سَادَة* lord,
ruler, chief.

سَاعَةً hour, short space
of time, moment.

سَوَّفَ *part.* § 95 d; 99 a.

سَانَ *med.* و to drive.

سُوق *pl. أسواق* mar-
ket, bazaar, lane.

سَوَّى *VIII* to be equal, alike,
simultaneous with.

سَوَاءً *c. عَلَى* (quite)
the same, indifferent to.

سَارَ *med.* سَ *impf. i* to jour-
ney, go along, go. فِي أَثَرِ
to follow one's track.

مَسِيرَةً distance travel-
led.

سَيْفٌ *pl. سَيْفٌ*, سَيْفٌ
sword, sabre.

شَآءَ *VI* to find a bad omen.

شَوْمٌ a bad omen.

شَبَعَ *impf. a* to be satiated.

IV to satiate, satisfy.

شَبَهَ *II* to compare.

شَجَرَ *impf. u* to be intricate, intertwined.

شَجَرَةٌ *nom. unit.* شَجَرٌ tree, shrub.

شَدَّ *impf. u* to bind, tie.

II c. عَلَى to press hard on one.

VIII to become strong, powerful, heavy.

شَدِيدٌ *elat.* أَشَدُّ strong, powerful; vehement.

شَرَّ (1. pers. شَرَرْتُ) *impf. a* to become bad.

أَشْرَارٌ (*elat. id.*) *pl.* شَرٌّ bad, wicked. Mischievous, woe, war.

شَرِبَ *impf. a* to drink.

شَرَابٌ wine, strong drink.

شَرَفَ *impf. u* to be high.

IV to be high, lofty.

شَرَفٌ height, fame, nobility.

أَشْرَافٌ *pl.* شَرِيفٌ noble, aristocratic, respected.

شَرَقَ *impf. u* to rise (of the sun).

مَشْرِقٌ place of the sun's rising = the East.

شَرِكَ *impf. a c. acc.* to be one's companion.

شَرِكٌ net.

شَرِيكَ companion, ally.

شَرَى *impf. i* to buy, sell.

VIII to buy, negotiate.

شَغِفَ *impf. a, c.* بِ pers. be deeply struck with.

شَفَاةٌ *pl.* شَفَاةٌ lip.

شَفَقَ *IV c.* عَلَى to be tenderly solicitous for . . .

شَكَرَ *impf. u* to thank, be thankful.

شَكَا *impf. u*, to complain.

VIII to complain.

شِمْتُ *II c. acc.* to say "God

bless you" to a person
(e. g. sneezing).

شَمْسٌ *fem. sun.*

شِمَالٌ left (hand or side).

شَهِدَ *impf. a c. acc. to be*
present at sthg., to wit-
ness, to give evidence.

III c. acc. to see, be
an eye-witness.

شَاهِدٌ *pl. شُهُودٌ wit-*
ness.

شَهَادَةٌ testimony,
guarantee, security, a
bearing testimony.

شَهْرٌ *pl. أَشْهُرٌ month.*

شَهِىَ *VIII to desire, wish.*

شَهْوَةٌ sensual desire,
appetite.

شَآءٌ *coll. nom. unit. شَآءٌ*
small cattle, sheep and
goats; *nom. unit. a single*
head of these.

شَارَ *med. و IV c. إِلَى to*
point to.

شَوَى *impf. i to roast.*

شَاءَ *med. ي impf. a to will,*
wish.

— شَيْءٌ a matter, thing,
something.

شَابَ *med. ي to become*
gray-haired.

شَيْبٌ gray hairs.

شَاخَ *med. ي to become*
an old man.

شَيْخٌ old man.

شَيْطَانٌ *pl. شَيَاطِينُ devil,*
Satan.

شَاعَ *med. ي to spread a-*
broad, become public.

II to accompany, to
follow.

صَبَّ *impf. u to pour, pour*
out.

صَبَحَ *impf. u to be attrac-*
tive, good-looking.

IV to enter the time of

early morning. *c. acc.* become sthg. early, soon.

صَبَاحَةٌ *ṣabāḥa* beauty, loveliness.

صَبَرَ *ṣabara* *impf. i, c.* عَلَى to have patience with, to put up with, endure.

صَبَغَ *ṣabaga* *impf. u or a* to dye.

صَبَا *ṣaba* *impf. u* to be foolish; youthful.

صَبِيٌّ *ṣabī* *pl.* صُبَيَّانٌ *ṣubayyān* little boy.

صَحَّ *ṣaḥḥa* *impf. i* to be in good health, sound.

صَحِيحٌ *ṣaḥiḥ* *pl.* صَحَاحٌ *ṣaḥāḥ* *elat.*

أَصَمُّ *aṣam* right, correct.

صَكَبَ *ṣakaba* *impf. a, c. acc.* to keep company with, have to do with.

III to take for companion.

X to take with one as an associate.

صَاحِبٌ *ṣāḥib* *pl.* أَصْحَابٌ *aṣḥāb*

associate; friend, companion; owner, inhabitant of (cf. § 133).

صَكِيفَةٌ *ṣakīfa* *pl.* صُكْفٌ *ṣukf* leaf.

صَدَّ *ṣadda* *impf. u* to turn away from, alienate.

صَدَقَ *ṣadaqa* *impf. u* to speak the truth, be truthful, sincere.

II to consider sthg. to be true, right, to believe one.

V *c.* عَلَى *pers. et rei* بَ *rei* to give one sthg. as alms.

أَصْدِقَاءُ *aṣdiqā* *pl.* صَدِيقٌ *ṣadiq* friend.

صَرَفَ *ṣarafa* *impf. i* to turn from.

VII to turn, go, away, return (home).

صَاعِقَةٌ *ṣāʿiqat* thunderbolt.

صَغُرَ *ṣaḡura* *impf. u*, to be small, little.

صَغَرٌ *inf.* littleness.

صَفَّ *impf. u* to place in a row, draw up.

VIII to arrange (themselves), to stand in a row.

صَفَرٌ *IX* to be yellow.

أَصْفَرٌ *pl. صُفْرٌ* yellow.

صَفَى *VIII* to choose.

مُصْطَفَى man's name.

صَلَّمَ *impf. a* to be good, be in order.

IV to put in order, set right.

صَالِحَةٌ a pious action, good deed.

صَلَا *II* to pray, perform divine service, to worship. صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ

وَسَلَّمَ contracted to

صَلَّعَ § 11.

صَلَاةٌ, صَلَوةٌ divine service, worship, prayer.

صَبَتَ *impf. u* to be quiet.

صُمُوتٌ silence.

صَنَعَ *impf. a* to make, prepare, to do.

صَهْرٌ *pl. أَصْهَارٌ* relation (by marriage).

صَابَ *med. و IV* to befall, fall to one's share.

مُصِيبَةٌ misfortune.

صَوْتٌ voice.

صُورَةٌ *pl. صُورٌ* figure, shape, form.

صَوْمَعَةٌ cell.

صَاحَ *med. ي* to cry out.

VI to shout at each other.

صَادَ *med. ي* to hunt.

صَيْدٌ *inf.* hunting, what is caught, game.

صَارَ *med. ي, c. acc.* to become or be sthg.; to repair to.

II to cause to become; to appoint, to place.

ضَجَعَ *VIII* to lie on one's side.

ضُكِّي forenoon.

ضَرَبَ *impf. i* to strike, beat.

VIII refl. to beat against each other.

ضَرَبَ *inf. I* striking, beating.

ضَرْبَةٌ a single blow, a beating.

ضَعُفَ *impf. u* to be weak.

ضَعِيفَ weak.

ضَلَّ *impf. i* to err.

ضَلَالَةٌ erring, error.

ضَمَّ *impf. u* to put close to, press against, to gather.

ضَاءَ *med. و* to be clear, bright, shining.

ضَوْءٌ light, brightness.

ضِيَاءٌ brightness.

ضَيْفٌ *pl. ضِيَافٌ* guest.

ضَاقَ *med. ي* *IV* to press hard, hem in.

ضَيْقٌ straits, distress.

طَاطَأَ to sink (trans.).

طَبَّ *impf. u or i* to treat medically.

طَبِيبٌ physician, doctor.

طَبَّقَ *IV* to cover with a lid.

VII to be covered up.

طَكَنَ *impf. a* to grind.

طَكِينٌ flour.

طَرَدَ *impf. u* to chase away, drive away, pursue.

طَرَقَ *IV* to cast down one's eyes.

طَعِمَ *impf. a* to eat.

IV to feed (trans.).

طَعَامٌ *inf. I* eating, taste, a meal, food, a (particular) dish.

طَلَبَ *impf. u* to seek, search
after; wish for.

طَلَبٌ *inf.* I seeking,
a search.

أَبُو طَالِبٍ Abū Tālib
(Muḥammed's uncle).

طَلَعَ *impf. u* to stand up,
get up, rise (of the sun).

VIII c. عَلَى to look
at, see.

طَلَّقَ II c. *acc.* to set free,
give divorce to.

IV to set free.

VII to go away,
depart.

طَبِعَ *impf. a* to strive to
obtain, to covet, sthg.

طَبَعٌ *inf.* covetousness,
greed.

طَهَّرَ *impf. u* to be clean,
pure.

II to cleanse, purify.

طَاعَ *med.* و to obey, be
compliant.

IV id.

طَاعَةٌ *inf.*, obedience.
subjection.

طَافَ *med.* و to go round.
طُوفَانٌ flood.

طَالَ *med.* و IV to lengthen,
protract; to be long
over sthg.

طَوِيلٌ long, lasting
long.

طَوَى *impf. i* to fold, fold
up or together.

طَابَ *med.* ي to be good,
pleasant, excellent.

طَيِّبٌ *Elat.* طَيِّبٌ good,
excellent, nice to the
taste, sweet (scent).

طَيِّبَةٌ something good,
a dainty.

طَارَ *med.* ي to fly.

طان *med.* *ى* II to plaster
with clay or mud (^سطين).

ظَلَمَ *impf.* *i* to treat unfairly,
injure, do wrong to.

IV to grow dark.

^سظلمة darkness.

^سظلام darkness, dusk.

^سظلام one that acts in-
juriously, oppressor.

ظَهَرَ *impf.* *a* to appear, to
come in sight.

IV to bring to sight.

^سظهر the back, upper
part, surface.

^سأظهر *elat.* أظهر prominent,
striking.

عَبَدَ *impf.* *u* to worship.

^سعبيد *coll.* عبيد slave,
servant; *pl.* عباد man
(as the servant of God).

عَبْدُ اللَّهِ 'Abdallāh (a
man's name).

^سعبادة adoration, wor-
ship.

عَبَرَ *impf.* *u* to cross, to
pass along (a certain
road).

^سعبرة an example (from
which to take warning).

عَبَسَ *impf.* *i* to look stern,
black-browed.

الْعَبَّاسُ al-'Abbās,
(man's name).

^سعباءة mantle, cloak.

عَتَقَ *impf.* *i* to be or be-
come free.

IV to free, liberate.

^سعتق nobility, high
rank.

^سعتيق free, noble, old.

عُثْمَانُ 'Uṭmān, (man's
name).

عَجِبَ *V c.* مِنْ to wonder
at sthg.

- عَجِيبَةٌ *pl.* عَجَائِبُ *coll.* the Arabs.
 a wonder, miracle.
- عَجَلَ *II* to expedite.
- عَدَّ *impf. u, c. 2 acc.* to
 count, reckon as . . .
- عَدَسٌ lentils.
- عَدَلَ *impf. i* to be just.
- عَادِلٌ just, impartial.
- عَدِمَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to be
 without sthg.
- عَدَا *V c. acc.* to cross over,
 go beyond.
- III c. acc.* to treat
 as an enemy, attack.
- عَدُوٌّ *pl.* أَعْدَاءُ enemy.
- عَدَاوَةٌ enmity.
- عَذَبَ *II* to torture, punish.
- عَذَابٌ torture, punish-
 ment.
- عَذَرَ *VIII* to excuse one's
 self.
- عُذْرٌ excuse (in the
 sense of a refusal).
- عَرَبٌ *coll.* the Arabs.
- أَعْرَابِيٌّ a Bedouin.
- عَرَضَ *impf. i* to interfere
 with, thwart, offer.
- V* to come in one's way.
- عَرَفَ *impf. i* to perceive,
 know, recognize.
- مَعْرِفَةٌ knowledge.
- مَعْرُوفٌ a favour, kind
 deed.
- الْعِرَاقُ name of the count-
 ry known to the an-
 cients as Babylonia.
- عَزَّ *impf. i* to be strong,
 powerful (often paren-
 thetically after الله:
 he is powerful).
- عَزِيزٌ *elat.* أَعَزُّ strong,
 powerful.
- عَزَلَ *impf. i* to depose.
- VIII* to take one's
 leave, be deposed.

عَزَى *c. acc. et عَنْ rei II*
to console, comfort.

عَسَاكِرُ *pl.* عَسَاكِرُ a body
of troops, army.

عَشَّ *II* to build a nest
(عُشَّ).

عَشَرَ *III* to associate with.

عَشْرَةٌ *fem.* عَشْرَةٌ ten.

عَشَائِرُ *pl.* عَشِيرَةٌ
tribe, tribesmen.

مَعَشَرٌ assembly, the
whole; those present.

عَصَى *impf. i, c. acc.* to
resist, not obey some
one.

مَعْصِيَةٌ *pl.* مَعْصِيَةٌ re-
sistance, revolt, sin.

عَضُوٌّ member.

عَطَسَ *impf. i or u* to
sneeze.

عَطا *IV c. acc. pers. et rei*
to give sthg. to some
one.

عَظِيَّةٌ *pl.* عَظَايَا gift,
present.

عَظُمَ *impf. u* to be or be-
come great, large; *c.* عَلَى
to appear to be great,
insolent.

عِظْمٌ *inf.* greatness.

عَظِيمٌ *elat.* عَظُمٌ great,
of great account, august.

عَفَارِيْتُ *pl.* عَفْرِيتٌ a
wicked, clever demon.

عَفَا *impf. u, c.* عَنْ to
pardon (a person), be
gracious to.

عَقْرَبٌ *pl.* عَقْرَابٌ scor-
pion, a bitter enemy.

عَقَلَ *impf. i. or* عَقِلَ *impf. a*
to be intelligent.

عَقْلٌ intellectual abi-
lity, intelligence; pru-
dence.

عَلَّ *I/III* to fall ill.

عِلَّةٌ illness, sickness.

عَلِمَ *III* to treat.

عَلِمَ *impf.* a perceive, know, learn (that). *c.* بِ to know something.

IV c. 2 acc. to acquaint, inform one of sthg.

عِلْمٌ *pl.* عُلُومٌ knowledge, science.

عَلَامَةٌ mark, sign.

عَالِمٌ *elat.* أَعْلَمُ *pl.*

عُلَمَاءُ possessing knowledge, a learned man, *savant*.

عَلَّامٌ very knowing.

مُعَلِّمٌ teacher.

عَلَا *impf.* u to be high.

VI to be highly exalted, esp. parenthetically after *Allah*: He is exalted (§ 23).

عَلَى *prep.* (§ 96 b) over, on the ground of, on,

upon, at; with verbs of entering: *chez*; against, in the direction of, towards. هُوَ عَلَى شَيْءٍ to be in a state of, to be accustomed to sthg.

أَعْلَى *elat.* عَلَى high; also man's name 'Ali.

عَالٍ *elat.* أَعْلَى high, prominent, excellent.

عَمَّ *impf.* u to be or become common; to increase.

عَمُّ uncle (on the father's side); ابْنُ الْعَمِّ cousin.

عَامَّةٌ the common people (plebs), large crowd.

عَمَرَ *II* to furnish, provide handsomely.

عُمْرٌ life; in the oath لَعْنَتِي by my life.

عُمَرُ 'Omar (man's name).

عَمْرُو (§ 90ⁿ pronounce 'Amrun) 'Amr (a man's name).

عَمِلَ *impf. a* to do, make, construct.

X to employ one for for some purpose, to apoint governor.

أَعْمَالُ *pl.* عَمَلٍ work, act, deeds of piety, province.

عَمَّالٌ *pl.* عَمَّالٌ a functionary, vicegerent, prefect.

عَمِيَ *impf. a* to be or become blind.

IV to disfigure, make unrecognisable.

أَعْمَى *pl.* عُمَى blind.

عَنْ *prep.* away from, from (hinderance); about, concerning; according to, on the authority of.

عِنَبٌ *pl.* أَعْنَابٌ vine, grape.

عِنْدَ *prep.* by the side of, near, with, by (one).

عَاجٌ *med.* و *IX* to be bent, crooked.

عَادَ *med.* و to return, *c.* *acc.* to visit.

عَاذَ *med.* و *c.* ب to take refuge in . . .

X to ask for protection; to say: أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ (Surah 114) "I take refuge in God", *c.* مِنْ from.

عَانَ *med.* و *IV c. acc.* to help, support.

X to help one's self, to help on, succour.

مُعَاوِيَةُ Mu'āwiyā, the first Omayyad Caliph (661—679).

عِيسَى Jesus.

- عَاش *med.* عِ to live.
 عِيشَةٌ *life, way of living, (§ 64 c).*
- غَدَا *ult.* و to come early.
 V to breakfast, to refresh oneself early.
- غَرَبَ *impf.* u to set (of the sun).
 مَغْرَبُ place where the sun sets, the West.
- غَرَقَ *IV* to make to sink, drown.
- غَزَالٌ *gazelle.*
- غَسَلَ *impf.* i to wash.
- غَشِيَ *impf.* a to cover.
 غَاشِيَةٌ *pl.* غَوَاشٍ saddle-cover, horse-cloth.
- غَضَبَ *impf.* i c. *acc. rei et* مِنْ *p.* to take sthg. from one unlawfully.
- غَضِبَ *impf.* a to get angry, be angry with.
- غَفَرَ *impf.* i c. لِ *pers.* to pardon, forgive.
 مَغْفِرَةٌ pardon, forgiveness.
- غَفَلَ *impf.* u to neglect.
 غَفْلَةٌ inattention, negligence.
- غَلَبَ *impf.* i to be all-powerful, victorious.
- غَلَقَ *II et IV* to bolt, bar, shut.
- غُلَامٌ *pl.* غِلْمَانُ a young man, lad, slave.
- غَنَى *impf.* a, c. عَنْ to be rich.
 أَغْنِيَاءُ *pl.* غِنًى rich.
- غَنَى *II* to sing.
- غَارَ *med.* و to penetrate far into, go down.
 غَارٌ a cave.
- غَاصَ *med.* و to dive.

غَاب *med.* ي to be absent,

c. عَن to disappear.

عَيْب *pl.* عُيُوب a secret.

عَيْبَة absence, stay among strangers.

مَغِيب *inf.* sunset.

غَار *med.* ي II to alter, change.

غَيْر (§ 133 with gen.) another, somethg. different from, no (with neg.), except; before substs., adjs. and parts. it renders the converse, like our prefix *un-* or *in-*; مِّنْ

غَيْر without.

ف *conj.* (§§ 95 e; 152; 161) and so, then, and.

فَتَح *impf.* ا to open. VII to open (intr.).

VIII to conquer, acquire for one's self.

فَتَح *inf.* I.

مَفَاتِيح *pl.* مُفْتَاَح key.

فَتَن VIII c. ب to be struck with emotion, bewitched, by.

فَتَى a young man.

فَتَاة a young woman, girl.

فَجَرَ *impf.* u to transgress, act viciously.

فَجَّار *pl.* فَجَّار evil-doer.

فَخَرَ *impf.* ا to boast of, glory in.

III to give oneself airs towards some one.

فَخَّر *inf.* I.

فَرَّ *impf.* i to flee.

أَلْفَرَس the Persians.

فَارَس Persia.

فَرَس a horse, esp. of a good breed.

فَرَش *impf.* u to spread out.

فِرَاشٌ *pl.* فرش carpet,
cushion, bed.

فَرَضَ *impf. i, c.* على *pers.*
to impose sthg. on one
as a duty.

فَرَّغَ *imp. u, c.* مِنْ to be
empty, disengaged,
finished with sthg.

فَرَّقَ *impf. u,* to separate,
part.

III to leave.

VIII to become separated,
to disperse.

فَزِعَ *impf. a* to get a fright,
be afraid.

فَسَدَ *impf. u* to become
bad, wicked.

فَسَادَ *inf.* the doing
of mischief, evil, wrong.

فَشَا *IV* to divulge, publish,
betray.

فَضَلَ *impf. u* to be or
remain over, to be excellent.

فَضْلٌ bounty, kindness,
favour.

فَظِنَ *impf. a* to be clever.

فُطْنَةٌ intelligence.

فَعَلَ *impf. a* to do.

أَفْعَالٌ *pl.* فِعْعَلٌ deed,
act, mode of action.

فَقَدَ *V* to miss, enquire
for, some one.

فَقِيرٌ *pl.* فَقَرَاءٌ poor.

فَكَ *VII* to free oneself,
to become disattached.

فَكَرَ *V* to reflect.

فَوَاكِهُ *pl.* فَاكِهَةٌ fruit.

فَلَحَ *IV* to become happy,
successful, to prosper.

فُلُكُ, فُلُّكُ a (large) ship.

فُلَانٌ so and so, Mr. Such-
and- Such.

فَلَاةٌ *pl.* فَلَوَاتٌ desert.

فَمٌ mouth (§ 90 o).

فَاتَ *med. و. c. acc.* to pass

by, to expire (of the time for some one to do sthg.).

فَاق *med.* و to excel, be excellent.

فَوْق *prep.* above, higher than.

فُوه (أَفْوَاهُ § 90 *pl.*) mouth.

فِي *prep.* in, into, at, on, among, accompanied by, by; with (before a quality), in relation to, with regard to.

فَلَاسِفَةٌ *pl.* فَيَلَسُوفٌ philosopher.

قَبَحَ *X* to find detestable.

قُبُورٌ *pl.* قَبْرٌ grave.

قَبَضَ *impf. i* to take hold of, take into one's hand.

قَبِلَ *impf. a* to accept.

IV to approach, come nearer; be susceptible to.

V to receive.

X to be opposite.

قَبْلُ *adv. vel* مِنْ قَبْلُ

before.

قَبْلَ *prep.* before.

قَبْلَ *prep.* in the presence of, in the sphere of . . . مِنْ قَبْلِهِ on his side, of his party.

قَبُولُ *inf.* *I* acceptance.

قَبِيلَةٌ tribe, family (in wide sense).

مُقَابَلَةٌ comparison, relation.

قَتَلَ *impf. u* to kill, make away with.

III c. acc., to fight with, fight.

قَتْلُ *inf.* *I* killing, execution.

قَتَلَى *pl.* قَتِيلٌ killed.

أَبُو قُحَافَةَ Abū Qūhāfa, the father of Abū Bekr.

قَدْ (§ 98 e, 99 d) *particle*.

قَدْ *impf. i* to be able to, can, could (also with folg. *impf.*). *c.* عَلَى to have power over.

IV c. عَلَى to make one more powerful than . . .

قَدْرٌ worth, value, due, power. بِقَدْرٍ in relation to, in proportion to . . .

قَدِمَ *impf. a*, to advance, approach.

II to place before, set sthg. before s. o.

IV to approach.

ص to go before, precede.

قَدِيمٌ *pl.* قَدَمَاءُ ancient, old, of a past time.

قَرَّ *impf. i* to stay, persevere.

IV to render stable, *c.*

رَبَّ *rei* to confess to sthg.

X to stand fast, hold good.

قَرَارٌ continuance, rest.

قَرَأَ *impf. a* to read.

قُرْآنٌ *Kur'ān* or a passage therefrom.

قَرُبَ *impf. u* to be near at hand.

II to place near, to take as intimate friend, to offer, set before one.

VI to be close together.

قَرِيبٌ *pl.* أَقْرَبَاءُ; *elat.*

pl. أَقَارِبُ (subst.). *c.* مِنْ near, close(to); related.

قُرَيْشٌ the tribe of the *Kuraish*, the *Kurai-shites*.

قُرَشِيٌّ *nom. rel. a* *Kuraishite*.

قَرْنٌ horn; ذُو الْقَرْنَيْنِ the two horned (Alexander *bicornis*).

قَرِيَّةٌ *pl.* قَرَى place, village.

قَسَا *ult.* و to be hard.

قَسَمَ *IV* to swear.

قَصَدَ *impf. i,* to make for, repair to, some one.

مَقْصِدٌ the end of a journey.

قَصَرَ to be short.

VI to shorten one's self, to shrink.

قُصُورٌ *pl.* قَصْرٌ castle, fortress.

قَضَّ *VII* to let one's self down, dart down (of a bird).

قَضَى *impf. i* to decide judicially; to accomplish, finish; to discharge a claim.

VII to be finished, brought to an end.

قَضَاءٌ *inf.* *I* payment.

قَطَّ *adv.* ever, with negat. never.

قَطَعَ *impf. a* to cut off.

VII c. عَن to become parted from; to cease.

قَعَدَ *impf. u* to seat one's self, sit down.

قُفْلٌ *pl.* أَقْفَالٌ lock, padlock.

قَلَّ *impf. i* to be small, few.

IV to make small, take little of.

X to deem small, think little of, despise.

قَلِيلٌ small, few, scant.

قَلَبَ *impf. i* to turn round, to change.

VII to alter (intr.), to change one's mind.

قُلُوبٌ *pl.* قَلْبٌ heart.

قَلَعَ *VIII* to tear away, take away.

قَنَّصَ *impf. i* to hunt, catch.

قَنَّا *VIII* to procure, purchase.

قَاد *med.* و to lead, guide.

VII to let one's self
be guided.

قَالَ *med.* و to say, tell;
often = ask. *c.* ل to
name.

قَوْلٌ *pl.* أَقْوَالٌ speech,
utterance, apothegm.

مَقَالٌ speech.

قَامَ *med.* و to stand up,
proceed (to).

IV to fix, set up, estab-
lish; halt, stop, stay.

X to be upright, faith-
ful.

قَوْمٌ *coll.* people, one's
dependants, nation,
subjects.

قِيَامَةٌ resurrection.

قَوَائِمٌ *pl.* قَائِمَةٌ foot.

مَقَامٌ place, occasion.

قَوِيٌّ *impf. a* to be strong.

قُوَّةٌ strength, force;

c. بِ the means to do
sthg.

قَوِيٌّ (*c.* عَلَى) strong,
powerful.

كَ (§§95*f*; 145*b* prop. subj.)
as, like as.

كَأَنَّ (it is) as if . . .

كَبُرَ *impf. u* to be great, large.

V to vaunt oneself,
be proud.

كَبُرَ *inf. I* to be advanc-
ed in years.

كَبِيرٌ *elat.* أَكْبَرُ great,
old.

كَتَبَ *impf. u* to write.

III *c. acc.* to corre-
spond with.

كُتُبٌ *pl.* كِتَابٌ a writ-
ing, scripture (= writ-
ten revelation), letter,
book.

كَتَمَ *impf. u* to conceal.

- ^س كَتَمَانَ *inf.* concealing, keeping close.
 كَثُرَ *to be much or many.*
IV to make many, take much of.
X to consider much or many.
^س أَكْثَرُ *elat.* كثيرُ much, many (often rather as a subst. in apposition).
 كَذَبَ *impf. i* to lie, tell lies.
II c. acc. pers. vel rei to charge one with falsehood, discredit.
^س كَذِبَ *inf. I,* lying, a lie, falsehood.
 كَرَبَ *impf. u,* to cause one trouble, pain.
^س كَرْبَةٌ grief, distress, anxiety.
^س كَرَادِيسُ *pl.* كَرْدُوسُ division (of cavalry), squadron.
^س كَرَمَ *impf. u* to be noble, generous.
^س كَرَمَاءُ *pl.* كَرِيمٌ noble, high-souled, highly esteemed.
^س مَكْرَمَةٌ *pl.* مَكْرَامٌ a noble quality, generous action.
 كَرِهَ *impf. a* to dislike.
 كَسَبَ *VIII* to acquire, to attain to sthg.
 كَسَفَ *impf. i* to eclipse.
 كَشَفَ *impf. i, c.* عَنْ to uncover.
VII to be uncovered, be carried off.
^س كَعْبٌ ankle-bone, a die (*pl.* dice).
 كَفَأَ *III c. acc. pers. et rei* to requite, recompense one for sthg.
 كَفَرَ *impf. u* to be unthankful, to deny.

كَافِرٌ ^س *pl.* كُفَّارٌ unbeliev-
ing.

كَفَّنَ ^س *impf. u* to wrap in a
shroud.

كَفَى ^س *impf. i, c. acc. pers. et*
r. to do sthg. in some
one's place; to protect
s. o. from sthg.

كُلُّ ^س (§ 119 *b*) totality; be-
fore determ. subst., all;
before indetermin., every.

كَلَّمَا as often as . . .

كَلَّمَ ^س *II c. acc. pers.* to
speak with, address one.

V to speak, talk, make
speeches. *c.* ب to pro-
nounce, utter.

كَلِمَةً ^س word.

كَلَامٌ ^س speech, talk, con-
versation.

كَمْ ^س (§ 15) how much?

كَمَا (مَا + كَ) as.

كَمِيلٌ ^س perfect.

كَمِنَ ^س *impf. a* to hide one's
self.

كَنْزٌ ^س *pl.* كُنُوزٌ treasure.

كَنَّا ^س *impf. u* to give one a
surname contg. أَب ^س.

كَانَ ^س *med. و* to be, exist.
(Sometimes the perf. of
this verb is to be trans-
lated by our present).
c. acc. (§§ 110, 149) to
be something. *c.* لِي to
be translated by "to
have".

أَمْكِنَةً ^س *pl.* مَكَانٌ place.

كَيْفَ how?

لَ (§§ 95 *g*; 147 *b*) a corrobo-
rative particle.

لِ *prep.* (§§ 95 *h*; 117;
130; 131; 132) for; is
sign of the dative; on
account of, for . . . sake
(giving purpose, mo-
tive); at (the time of).

لِ *conj. c. subj.* (§ 100)

- in order that; *c. mod.*
apoc. § 101 *a.* لَانَ (§ 147)
 because.
 لَا (§§ 101 *b*; 111; 150 *c*)
 not, no. بِلا *prep. c. gen.*
 without. By means of
 لَا a preceding negation
 is very frequently re-
 sumed.
 وَلَكِنْ (often لَكِنْ, لَا كِنْ)
 nevertheless, but.
 مَلَائِكَةٌ (also مَلَكٌ) *pl.* مَلَائِكَةٌ
 angel.
 لَيْث *impf. a* to tarry,
 delay.
 لَبَسَ *impf. a* to put on.
IV c. 2 acc. to clothe.
 مَلْبَسٌ *pl.* مَلَابِسُ cloth-
 ing, dress.
 لَحِقَ *impf. a c.* ب or *c. acc.* to
 overtake.
 لَذِذٌ, 1. *pers.* لَذِذْتُ, *impf. a*
 to be tasty, sweet.
 لَذِيذٌ *elat.* لَذٌّ tasty,
 delicious, sweet.
 لَزِمَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to
 remain in . . .
 لِسَانٌ *pl.* لِسَانٌ tongue.
 لَصِقَ *VIII* to cling to.
 لَطَفَ *impf. u* to be fine,
 slender, kind.
 لُطْفٌ *c.* بِ kindness,
 graciousness, towards...
 لَطِيفٌ kind.
 لَعِبَ *impf. a* to play, sport.
 لَعَلَّ (§ 147) may be, perhaps.
 لَعَنَ *impf. a* to curse.
 لَعْنَةٌ a curse.
 لَقِبَ *II c. acc. pers. et* بِ
 to surname, give a nick-
 name to.
 لَقِمَ *impf. a* to swallow,
 gulp down.
 لُقْمَةٌ a morsel.

لَقِيَ *impf. a* to meet, meet
with.

IV c. acc. to throw.

X to throw one's self,
to lie.

لَمْ (§ 101 *c*) not.

لَمَّا *conj.* after, when.

لَوْ *part.* if, introduces a
condition, which is not
likely to be fulfilled.

لَامَ *med.* و to blame.

لَوْنٌ *pl.* لَوَانٌ colour, sort,
kind.

لَيْسَ (§§ 50; 110; 144) not
to be, to be non-exis-
tent.

لَيْلَةٌ, لَيْلٌ *pl.* لَيَالٍ (§ 90 *p*)
night.

مَاذَا *pron.* (§ 15) what?
(§ 14) that which, what,
somethg. that.

مَا *conj.* (§ 158 *b*) so
long as.

مَا not (cf. § 150).

مَارِبٌ Ma'rib, a town in
South Arabia.

مِثْلٌ resemblance, like-
ness; the like, same; one
(pers. or thing) like, cf.
§ 145 *b*.

مَثَلٌ resemblance, na-
ture, quality (of a thing).

فَعَنَ *impf. a* to put to the
test.

حِنَّةٌ *inf.*

مَدَائِنُ, مَدَنٌ *pl.* مَدِينَةٌ
town. مَدِينَةٌ = أَلْمَدِينَةُ
النَّبِيِّ Medina.

مَرَّ *impf. u c.* بِ to pass by.

مَرَّةٌ "time". مَرَّةً once.

pl. مَرَارًا often.

مَرَارَةٌ bitterness.

أَمْرٌ (§ 90 *e*) man.

أَمْرًا woman, wife.

مُرُوَّةٌ manliness, vir-
tues, manly virtue.

مَرَزَبَانٌ *pl.* مَرَاذِبَةٌ mar-
grave, prefect.

مَرَضٌ *impf. a* to be or be-
come sick.

مَرِيضٌ sick.

مَرِغٌ *V* to roll (in the dust).

مَرْيَمٌ Miriam, Mary.

مَسَحٌ *impf. a c.* بِ to wipe,
wipe off, away.

الْمَسِيحُ Christ, the
Messiah.

مَسَكَ *I* to take hold of,
seize.

V to hold on by sthg.

مَسَا *IV* to enter on the
eventide; to do some-
thing late.

مَشَى *impf. i* to go, walk;
مَشَى *inf.*

مَضَى *impf. i* to go, betake
one's self to.

مُضَى (§ 71 e) *inf I.*

مَطَرٌ *pl.* اَمْطَارٌ rain, shower
of rain.

مَطَلَ *impf. u* to defer (a
payment).

مَطْلٌ *inf.*

مَعَ *prep.* with; besides;
alongside of.

مَعِدَةٌ stomach.

مَقَتٌ *impf. u* to hate.

مَقْتٌ hatred.

مَكَّةٌ Mecca.

مَكَثٌ *impf. u* to tarry, stay.

مَلَأٌ *impf. a, c. acc. et* مِنْ
to fill sthg. with . . .

VIII to become filled.

مَلَكَ *impf. i, c. acc.* to
rule, govern, possess.

II to appoint as king.

مُلْكٌ dominion, sover-
eignty, reign, riches.

مِلْكٌ possessions,
riches.

مَلِكٌ *pl.* مُلُوكٌ king.

مِلَاقٌ ceremony of marriage.

مَمْلَكَةٌ *pl.* مَمَالِكٌ kingdom, sovereignty.

مَلَكٌ for مَلَّأَكَ *v.* under لَأَكَ.

مَنْ + مَنْ (§ 5 note b).

مَنْ who? (§ 15); he who, they that; one that, whoso, whoever (§§ 14, 154, 159).

مِنْ *prep.* of (= some of, in partitive sense § 114), belonging to; with the negation it has a strengthening effect, § 141; consisting of; away from, from (separation, point of departure); hence in comparison = than; through (passage).

مِنْذُ (from مِنْ ذُو) since.

مَنَعَ *impf. a, c. 2 acc.* to debar one from sthg., refuse, prevent one doing sthg.; *c. acc. et مِنْ* to defend one from or against sthg.

VIII to protect one's self.

مَهَرٌ *impf. a, c. ب* to be skilled, clever, expert, wellversed.

مَهْرٌ wedding-present, price of the bride (paid to her father).

مَاتَ *med. و* to die.

II to put to death.

مَوْتُ *inf.* death.

مَيِّتٌ dead.

مُوسَى Moses.

مَالٌ *pl.* أَمْوَالٌ goods and chattels, property, flocks.

مَاءٌ (§ 90 q) *pl.* مِيَاءٌ

water.

مَائِدَةٌ *pl.* مَوَائِدُ table,
tray.

مَازَ *med.* يَ *II c.* بَيَّنَّ to
distinguish.

بَ *II c. acc. pers. et rei* to give one informa-
tion regarding.

V to give one's self out
for a prophet.

نَبَاٌ *VIII* to awake up.

نَبِيٌّ *pl.* أَنْبِيَاءٌ *vel* نَبِيُّونَ
prophet.

نُبُوَّةٌ the office, rank,
of prophet.

نَجَدَ *impf. u* to be brave,
courageous.

نَجْدَةٌ courage, magna-
nimity.

نَجْمٌ *pl.* نَجُومٌ constellation.

نَجَاَ *impf. u* to become free,
to save one's self.

IV causative.

نَحْنُ *pron.* we.

نَحَاَ *V* to turn aside, to draw
back, retire.

نَخْلٌ *coll., nom. unit.* فَخْلَةٌ
palm.

نَدِمَ *impf. a, c.* عَلَى to re-
pent of sthg., feel sorry.

نَدِمَ *III* to be one's boon
companion.

نَدَمَاءٌ *pl.* نَدِيمٌ boon
companion, mess-mate.

نَدَاَ *III* call out, *c. acc.*
to call to some one.

نَذَرَ *IV* to warn.

نَزَعَ *impf. i* to remove.

VIII to strip off, dis-
place.

نَزَلَ *impf. i* to descend,
alight, stop, lodge,
encamp. *c.* عَلَى to alight
at, lodge, stay with...

IV to send down (in

particular, a revelation).

مَنْزِلٌ *pl.* مَنَازِلُ dwell-
ing-place, abode, halt-
ing-place.

نَسَخَ *impf.* *a* to copy.

نُسْخَةٌ *pl.* نُسُخٌ *a* copy.

نَسِيَ *impf.* *a* to forget.

نِسْيَانٌ *inf.* forgetting.

نِسَاءٌ (§ 90 *f*) women.

نَشَدَ *III c. 2 acc.* to ad-
jure by God.

نَشِطٌ *impf.* *a* to be lively,
in good spirits.

نَشَاطٌ *inf.*

نَضَبَ *impf.* *u* to set up.

نَصِيبٌ share, portion.

نَصَحَ *impf.* *a* to be a true
friend.

نَصَرَ *impf.* *u, c. acc.* to
help, succour.

V (denom.) to become

a Christian, to live as
a Christian.

نَصَارَى *pl.* نَصْرَانِيٌّ
a Christian.

الْمَنْصُورُ al-Manṣūr,
the second Abbaside
Caliph 754—775.

نَضَا *VIII* to draw (the
sword).

نَطَحَ *impf.* *a* to butt with
the horns.

نَطَقَ *impf.* *i* to talk.

IV to make, compel
to talk.

نَظَرَ *impf.* *u* to see, look
at, examine, reflect.

نَعَمَ *impf.* *a* to be soft, well
off, affluent.

نَعَمٌ *coll.* a herd of
camels.

نَعْمَةٌ affluence, welfare.

نَعَمْ *part.* yes, yes in-
deed.

فَرَّ *impf. u vel i c.* مِنْ to
flee from, avoid.

نَفَس *II* to cheer, relieve.

نَفْس *fem., pl.* أَنْفُسُ,

نَفْسُ soul (anima appetens), self (§ 12e);

life. قَتَلَ نَفْسٍ بِغَيْرِ

نَفْسٍ the taking of a
life not for a life, i. e.
without a murder hav-
ing been committed.

نَفَعَ *impf. a* to be of use.

VIII c. بِ make use
of, profit by . . .

مَنْفَعَةٌ *pl.* مَنَافِعُ use,
useful qualities, benefit.

نَفَقَ *III* to play the hypo-
crite.

نَقَمَ *impf. i, c.* مِنْ *pers.*
to reproach one with
sthg.

VIII to avenge one's
self.

نَقِمَةٌ an act of revenge.

نَكَبَ *impf. u* to afflict,
hurt, injure.

نَكَبَةٌ affliction, trouble.

نَكَحَ *impf. i* to marry.

III id.

Xid., to wish to marry.

نِكَاحُ الْمَمْتِ marriage
with one's stepmother.

نَكَدَ *V* to be hard, strait,
troublesome.

نَكَرَ *IV* to deny. *c. acc. r.*
et عَلَى to find strange,
to take offence at sthg.

نَهَدَ *impf. u* to be fat, large.

نَهْدٌ large, aspiring,
generous.

نَهَرَ *pl.* أَنْهَارٌ stream.

نَهَى *impf. a* to forbid.

VIII to arrive at, come
to an end.

نُوحٌ Noah.

نَارٌ *fem. pl.* نِيرَانٌ fire, hell-fire.

نُورٌ light.

نَوْعٌ *pl.* أَنْوَاعٌ kind, species, different (sort of).

نَوْفَلٌ a man's name.

نَاقَةٌ *pl.* ذُوقٌ female camel.

نَامَ *med.* و, *impf. a* to lie down, sleep.

هَجَرَ *impf. u* to part from some one.

الْحِجْرَةُ, هِجْرَةُ the removal of Muḥammed from Mecca to Medina.

أَلْهَدَاهُ Hadhād, name of a king.

هَدَى *impf. i* to lead by the right way, to guide aright.

أَلْمَهْدِيُّ al-Mahdī, name of the third Abbaside Caliph, 775—785.

هَذَا, *fem.* هَذِهِ (§ 13 b), this, here.

هَرَبَ *impf. u* to flee.

هَزَمَ *impf. i* to put to flight. VII to turn and flee.

هَاشِمٌ Hāšim, man's name; بَنُو هَاشِمٍ Muḥammed's clan.

هَلْ *part. interrog.*

هُمْ, هُمُ *pron. 3. pers. plur. msc.* they (§ 12 a).

هَمَّ *impf. u* to intend to do sthg.

هَمَّةٌ energy.

أَلْهِنْدُ India, the Hindus.

هُوَ *pron.* he.

هَارَ *med.* و, VII to collapse.

هَانَ *med.* و, to be easy.

X c. ب to despise.

هَوَانٌ insignificance.

هَوِيَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to fall in love with.

- هَوَاءٌ air, sky.
 هِيَ pron. III fem. she.
 وَ conj. and, also, even.
 Asseverative particle
 w. the genit.: وَاللَّهِ by
 God (be it sworn). c.
 acc. with (§ 112).
 وَثَنٌ pl. أَوْثَانٌ an idol.
 وَجَبَ impf. i to be neces-
 sary; to be legally in-
 cumbent on one.
 IV to necessitate.
 مُوجِبٌ vel مُوجِبَةٌ
 (part. act. IV) pl.
 مُوَاجِبٌ that which
 brings about sthg., occa-
 sion, cause.
 وَجَدَ impf. i to find.
 وَجِهَ V to take the direc-
 tion of . . ., set out.
 وَجْهٌ pl. وُجُوهُ face,
 countenance.
 وَاحِدٌ one, single.
 وَحَى IV c. إِلَى pers. to
 reveal to one, inspire.
 وَدَّ impf. a to love.
 VI to love mutually.
 مَوَدَّةٌ love, inclination.
 وَدَعَ impf. يَدَعُ to set, place,
 leave, let.
 II to deposit.
 IV c. acc. rei et إِلَى
 pers. to intrust sthg.
 to some one.
 وَدِيعَةٌ pl. وَدَائِعُ pro-
 perty given in trust, a
 deposit (of money or
 its equivalent).
 وَرَثَ impf. يَرِثُ to inherit.
 VI to receive as one's
 portion.
 وَارِثٌ heir.
 وَرَدَ impf. i to go down,
 arrive.
 وَرَقَّةٌ Waraka, man's name.

^sوَزِيرٌ *pl.* وَزَرَآءُ vizier, minister.

وَسَّحَ *impf. a* to be dirty.

وَسَّحَ *inf.*

وَسَّعَ *impf.* يَسَّعُ to be possible, be open (to one).

IV to bring one into a comfortable position; to get riches for s. o.

وَسَّيَنَ *impf. a* to be sleepy.

وَصَفَ *impf. i* to describe.

وَصْفَةٌ description.

وَصَلَ *impf. i* to connect, arrive at.

VI to be mutually attached to each other.

وَصَّى *IV* to bequeath by will.

وَصِيٌّ executor (of a will).

وَضَعَ *impf.* يَضَعُ to lay.

VI c. لِي to be humble,

to appear humbly before . . .

VIII to be humbled, powerless.

وَضِيعٌ low, ignoble, mean.

مَوَاضِعُ *pl.* مَوَاضِعُ place, position, dwelling-place.

وَعَدَ *impf. i* to make an agreement, promise.

VIII to accept a promise, to promise one another.

مِيعَادٌ rendezvous, appointed time.

وَعَّظَ *impf. i* to warn, exhort.

VIII to suffer oneself to be corrected.

وَعَاءٌ *pl.* أَوْعِيَةٌ vessel, receptacle.

وَفَدَ *impf. i* to go forth

to a prince. *c.* عَلَى to come to.

وَقَفَّ *III c. acc.* to agree with, correspond to.

وَفَّى *impf. i* to be complete.

III c. acc. to come to, arrive at.

V تَرَفَّاهُ اللَّهُ، تَرَفَّى God has taken him (the Moslem) to himself, has brought him to a blessed end. *Pass.* to die a blessed death.

وَفَاةٌ *dying; a blessed end.*

وَقْتُ *time.*

وَقَعَ *impf.* يَقَعُ to fall, fall upon, light upon; *c.* عَلَى to find some one.

IV to excite.

وَقَفَّ *impf. i* to stop, stand;

c. عَلَى to go up to one.

وَقَّى *V c. acc.* to beware, be afraid, of sthg.

VIII to be afraid.

وَكَّلَ *II* to appoint as overseer. *V* to trust (in).

وَكِيلٌ representative, vice-gerent, agent.

وَلَدَ *impf. i* to bring forth.

IV c. acc. to beget. *بِ*

X c. acc. to beget (a son) by a woman.

وَلَدٌ *pl. أَوْلَادٌ* child, son, lad. (In the sing. also *collect.*).

وَلِيمَةٌ feast, marriage feast.

وَلِيَ *impf. i, c. acc.* to be near.

II to turn one's back, to turn round; *c.* عَنْ to turn away from.

وَلِيٌّ *pl. أَوْلِيَاءُ* near; esp. 'near to God' = saint, helper.

مَوْلَى *pl. مَوَالٍ* client, slave.

وَهَبَ *impf.* يَهَبُ *c. 2 acc.*
to present some one
with sthg.).

يَا *part. of exclam.* (§ 85)
O!

يَسَّ *impf. a, c.* مِنْ to
despair of . . .

يَتِيمٌ *pl.* أَيَتَامٌ orphan.

يَثْرِبُ Yathrib, name of Me-
dina before Islam.

يَدٌ *fem., pl.* أَيَدٍ (§ 90 *r*)
hand, power, possession.

يَسَرَ *impf. i* to play (either
with arrows, by wh. lots
were cast, or with dice).

مَيْسَرٌ play, game, game
of chance.

يَقْظُ *impf. a* to be awake.
IV to wake.

X to have one's self
waked, to awake.

يَمِينٌ on the right, the
right side, right hand.

أَلْيَهُودُ *coll.* the Jews.

يُوسُفُ Joseph.

يَوْمٌ *pl.* أَيَّامٌ (§ 90 *s*) day,
pl. length of reign. يَوْمٌ
on the day that... (§ 129).

يَوْمًا one day; *with suff.*

e. g. يَوْمُكَ thy day
(§ 125). أَلْيَوْمِ (§ 118 *a*)

to-day. يَوْمِي (= يَوْمٌ

إِنِ) in that day, then.

يُونَانِي a Greek.

CORRIGENDA.

pp. 56, 57 for headings as printed read: § 65 Nomina Relativa;
§ 66 Nomina Deminutiva.

p. 68 heading read: § 78 Nom. Diptota.

p. 93 l. 4, for 'you' read 'them'.

p. 40* 4, read **وَمُنْذِرِينَ**.

p. 42*, 7 read **بِأَخٍ**.

p. 42*, 15 read **صِرَتْ**.

p. 54*, 2 read **أَرْسَطًا طَالِيْسُ**.

p. 55*, 7 read **أَمْرَتَهُمْ**.

REUTHER & REICHARD, PUBLISHERS, BERLIN.

PORTA LINGUARUM ORIENTALIU

sive

ELEMENTA LINGUARUM

Hebraicae, Phoeniciae, Biblico-Aramaicae,
Samaritanae, Targumicae, Syriacae, Arabicae, Aethiopi-
cae, Assyriacae, Aegyptiacae, Copticae, Armeniacae,
Persicae, Turcicae, aliarum

studiis academicis accommodata ediderunt

J. H. Petermann, H. L. Strack, E. Nestle, A. Socin, F. Prätorius,
Ad. Merx, Aug. Müller, Frdr. Delitzsch, C. Salemann, V. Shukovski,
Th. Nöldeke, Ad. Erman, G. Steindorff, R. Brünnow, Dav. Heinr.
Müller, K. Marti, H. Zimmern, G. Jacob, alii.

“*Porta Linguarum Orientalium*” is a Library of Oriental Grammars edited by the most eminent German Scholars, adapted for self-study and text-books in Colleges.

Their most commendable characteristic is that they offer to the beginner in one book:

1. A concise but complete Grammar, as far as possible modelled on the same plan for all Languages. For the Semitic languages differences and conformities are specially pointed out. All volumes published since 1885 contain a chapter on Syntax also.

2. A Chrestomathy. For the purposes of comparative philology and to avoid an otherwise necessary interlinear version in seven grammars the first four chapters of Genesis according to the old translations form the initial chapter. In some volumes reading exercises precede the Chrestomathy proper.

3. A Dictionary, explanatory of the words found in the Grammar and Chrestomathy.

4. A Bibliography, carefully selected, suggestive of advanced work.

Where necessary special and separately published Chrestomathies are included in the plan of the “Porta.”

The following volumes are now ready in English, French, German or Latin Editions:

LONDON: WILLIAMS & NORGATE, 14, Henrietta Street.

NEW YORK: B. WESTERMANN & Co., 812, Broadway.

REUTHER & REICHARD, PUBLISHERS, BERLIN.

Arabic: Arabic Grammar, Paradigms, Literature, Chrestomathy and Glossary by *A. Socin*. 2nd edition. 1895. Cloth. 86.

Arabische Grammatik, mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *A. Socin*. (Vol. IVa). Dritte Auflage. 1894. Paper. 6/— net.

Arabic (Prose) Chrestomathy, with Glossary by *R. Brinnor*. 1894. Cloth. 86

Belectus veterum carminum arabicorum, carmina selegit et edidit *Th. Noeldeke* Glossarium confecit *A. Mueller*. 1890. Cloth. 76.

Arabic Bible-Chrestomathy, with a Glossary, edited by *George Jacob*. 1888 Cloth. 26.

Ethiopic: Aethiopische Grammatik, mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *Franz Prätorius*. 1886. Paper. 6 — net.

Grammatica aethiopica cum Paradigm., Litteratura, Chrestomathia et Glossario scripsit *Franz Prätorius*. 1886. Paper. 6/— net.

Hebrew: Hebraische Grammatik, mit Übungsbuch von *H. L. Strack*. Fünfte durchges. Auflage. 1893. Cloth. 4/— net.

Hebrew Grammar with Reading book, Exercises, Literat. and Vocabulary by *H. L. Strack*, second enl. ed. 1889. Cloth. 4/6.

Grammaire hébraïque avec Paradigmes, Exercices de lecture, Chrestomathie et Bibliogr. par *H. L. Strack*. 1886. Paper. 3/6 net.

Samaritan: Grammatica samaritana, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit *J. H. Petermann*. Editio secunda emendata. Paper. 4/ net.

Aramaic (Chaldee): Grammatica chaldaica, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit *J. H. Petermann*. Editio secunda emendata. Paper. 4/— net.
Grammatik des Biblisch-Aramäischen mit Chrestomathie von *Karl Mart.* (In preparation).

Targumic: Chrestomathia targumica edidit adnot. critica et glossario instructa *Ad. Merx*. 1888. Paper. 7/6 net.

Syriac: Syriac Grammar with Bibliography, Chrestomathy and Glossary by *Eb. Nestle*. 1889. Cloth. 9/—.

Syrische Grammatik mit Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *Eb. Nestle* Zweite verm. und verbess. Auflage. 1888. Paper. 7/— net.

Assyrian: Assyrian Grammar with Paradigms, Chrestomathy, Glossary and Literature by *Friedr. Delitzsch*. 1889. Cloth. 15/—.

Assyrische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Übungsstücken. Glossar und Litteratur von *Friedr. Delitzsch*. 1889. Paper. 12/— net.

Egyptian: Egyptian Grammar with Paradigms, Chrestomathy, Glossary and Literature. 1894. Cloth. 18/—.

Altaegyptische Grammatik mit Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *Ed. Erman*. 1894. Paper. 16/— net.

Coptic: Koptische Grammatik mit Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *G. Steindorff*. 1894. Cloth. 14/— net.

Armenian: Grammatica armenica, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit. *J. H. Petermann*. Paper. 4 — net.

Persian: Persische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *C. Salemann* und *V. Shukovski*. 1889. Paper. 7/ net.

Turkish: Türkische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Litteratur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *August Müller*. 1889. Paper. 8/— net.

Supplement: Lehrbuch der Neuhebräischen Sprache und Litteratur von *H. L. Strack* und *C. Siegfried*. Paper. 3/— net.

LONDON: WILLIAMS & NORGATE, 14, Henrietta Street.

NEW YORK: B. WESTERMANN & Co., 812, Broadway.

REUTHER & REICHARD, PUBLISHERS, BERLIN.

SĪBAWAIHI'S
BUCH ÜBER DIE GRAMMATIK
nach der Ausgabe von H. Dérenbourg
und dem Commentar des Sirâfi

übersetzt und erklärt
und

mit Auszügen aus Sirâfi und anderen Commentaren versehen
von

Dr. G. Jahn,

Professor in Königsberg.

Mit Unterstützung der Königl. Preuss. Akademie der Wissenschaften
und der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft.

In zwei Bänden. Lex.-8o.

Bis jetzt erschienen: I. Band 1. u. 2. Hälfte, Uebersetzung § 1—145
Erklärungen § 1—145.

Subscriptions-Preis: Mark 32.—

ORIENTALISCHE BIBLIOGRAPHIE

begründet von August Müller.

Unter Mitwirkung von

Th. Gleiniger-Berlin, G. Grotenfelt-Helsingfors, G. Kalemkiar-Wien,
J. V. Prašek-Kolín, C. Salemann-Petersburg, H. L. Strack-Berlin,
K. V. Zettersteen-Upsala

bearbeitet
von

Dr. Lucian Scherman,

Privatdoc. an der Universität in München,

herausgegeben
von

Dr. Ernst Kuhn,

Professor in München.

Mit Unterstützung der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft.

Preis pro Jahrgang (Band) M. 10.—.

Erschienen sind bis jetzt Band I—VIII. (1887—1894).

„Man kann fest behaupten, dass etwas Ähnliches an umfassender und erschöpfender Sorgfalt auf dem Gebiete der oriental. Literatur noch niemals geboten worden ist.“

Prof. C. SIEGFRIED (Jena) im Theol. Jahresbericht VIII.

LONDON: WILLIAMS & NORGATE, 14, Henrietta Street.

NEW YORK: B. WESTERMANN & Co., 512, Broadway.

REUTHER & REICHARD, PUBLISHERS, BERLIN.

BIBLIOTHECA GEOGRAPHICA PALAESTINAE.

Chronologisches Verzeichniss

der

auf die Geographie des heiligen Landes bezüglich. Litteratur

von 333 bis 1878

und

Versuch einer Cartographie.

Herausgegeben von

Reinhold Röhricht.

Mit Unterstützung der Gesellschaft für Erdkunde zu Berlin.

gr. 8. XX. 744 S. M. 24.—.

Ein Werk von geradezu einzigartiger Bedeutung. Die gesammte wissenschaftliche Kritik (*Berliner Zeitschr. für Erdkunde* — *Studien aus d. Benedictiner-Orden* — *Theol. Lit. Blatt* — *Theol. Lit. Zeit.* — *Theol. Jahresbericht* — *Theol. prakt. Quart. Schrift* — *Zeitschr. d. Deutsch. Pal. Ver.* — *Schweizer Blätter f. Wissenschaft u. Kunst* — *Lit. Rundschau f. d. Kath. Deutschl.* — *Lit. Centralbl.* — *Oest. Lit. Centralbl.* — *Görres Hist. Jahrb.* — *Centralbl. f. Bibliothekwesen* — *Götting. Gel.-Anzeigen* — *Lit. Handweiser* — *Wiener Zeitschr. f. Kunde d. Morgenl.* — *Sunday School Times* — *Palestine Explor. Fund* — *Jewish Review* — *Athenaeum* — *Church Quart-Review* — *Scottish Geogr. Magazine* — *Proceedings of the Royal Geogr. Soc.* — *Revue Bénédictine* — *Archives Israélites* — *Revue d. quest. histor.* — *Revue histor.* — *Revue critique* — *Biblioth. de l'école de chartes* — *Université cathol.* — *Archivio storico italiano* — *Fourn. d. Russ. Minist. für Volksaufklärung* — *Hist. Quart.*) ist darin übereinstimmend, dass die Vollständigkeit sowie die Treue und Gewissenhaftigkeit der ganzen Arbeit eine durchgängig vollendete ist und dass ein ähnliches Werk von gleichhervorragendem wissenschaftlichen Werth nicht existirt. Es dürfte für alle, welche sich mit der Erforschung Palästina's beschäftigen, in welcher Richtung es auch sein möge, ein geradezu unentbehrliches Nachschlagebuch bilden, jede grössere Bibliothek müsste dasselbe besitzen.

LONDON: WILLIAMS & NORGATE, 14, Henrietta Street.

NEW YORK: B. WESTERMANN & Co., 812, Broadway.

LaArab.Gr
S6785a
.Ek.2

521598

Socin, Albert

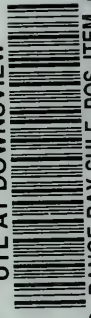
Arabic grammar, paradigms, literature,
... tr. by Kennedy.
2d ed.

**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C
39 11 15 06 04 005 4